

*A Course in Spoken Tamazight*

*Berber Dialects of Ayt Ayache and Ayt Seghrouchen*

*(Middle Atlas)*

*Morocco*

*Ernest T. Abdel-Massih*

*MPublishing*

*University of Michigan Library*

*and*

*Center for Near Eastern and North African Studies*

*University of Michigan*

*Ann Arbor*

*2011*

Published in 2011 by MPublishing  
University of Michigan Library

© Ernest T. Abdel-Massih

This volume is reprinted from the 1971 edition by arrangement with the Center for Near Eastern and North African Studies, University of Michigan

Permission is required to reproduce material from this title in other publications, coursepacks, electronic products, and other media.

Please send permission requests to:

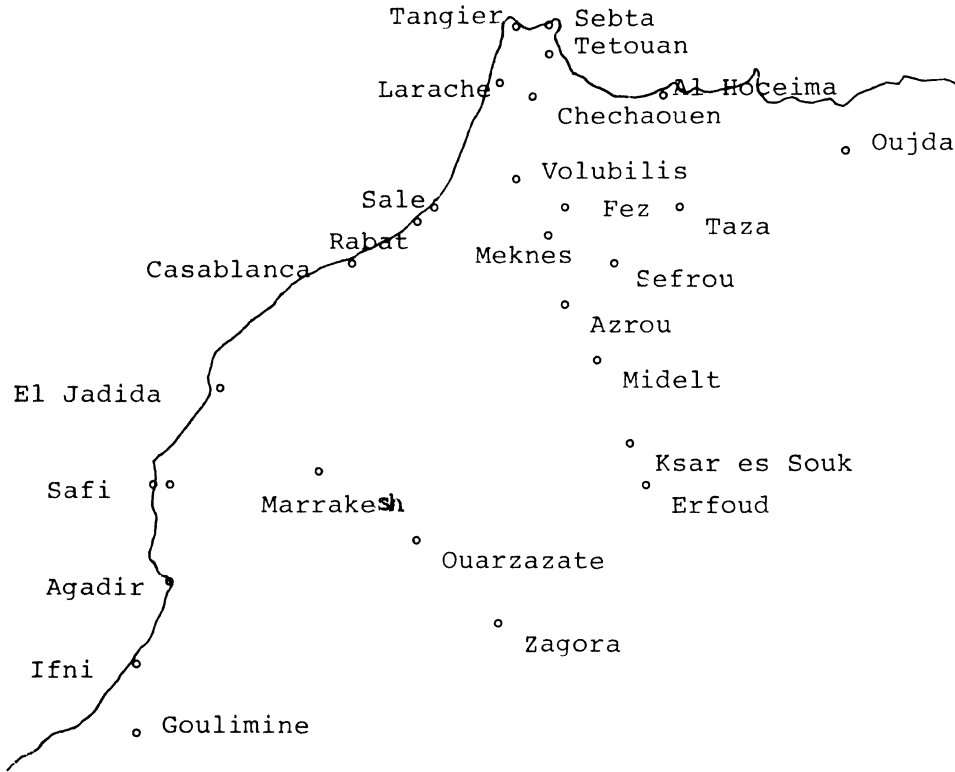
MPublishing  
4186 Shapiro  
919 South University  
Ann Arbor, MI 48109  
lib.pod@umich.edu

ISBN 978-1-60785-226-1

Tapes accompanying this textbook may be ordered from the  
University of Michigan Language Resource Center  
1195 North Quad  
105 S. State Street  
Ann Arbor, MI 48109-1285  
(734) 764-0424  
flacs@umich.edu



Map of Morocco



DISTANCES FROM CASABLANCA IN MILES

Al Hoceima .....	338	Marrakesh .....	149
Agadir .....	330	Meknes .....	146
Azrou .....	189	Midelt .....	267
Chechaouen .....	205	Ouarzazate .....	273
El Jadida .....	62	Oujda .....	403
Erfoud .....	403	Rabat .....	58
Fez .....	183	Safi .....	158
Goulimine .....	453	Tangier .....	236
Larache .....	180	Taza .....	257
		Tetuan .....	248

## Foreword

The preparation of this volume and the accompanying one, A Reference Grammar of Tamazight, was initiated and supported by the University of Michigan Center for Near Eastern and North African Studies as a part of its general program of research and training on the languages and cultures of North Africa. A series of studies in anthropology, history, and political science are in preparation, as well as instructional materials on Moroccan Arabic.

We are indebted to the Ford Foundation, which is in no way responsible for the specific consequences, for the grants to the Center that have made this work possible. We are most grateful for the tolerance of the people and government of Morocco in accommodating, and often actively assisting, the work of our faculty and students.

W. D. Schorger  
Director

## Acknowledgements

This book and its companion, A Reference Grammar of Tamazight, were made possible by the cooperation of a number of individuals. In particular, I would like to express my appreciation for the great assistance provided by Mr. Mohammed Raamouch who, as the first informant for the project that led to the existence of this book, helped in many ways. Mr. Raamouch participated in the composition of the dialogues of the Ayt Ayache texts and it is due to his many constructive suggestions that the units are in their present form. The tape recordings for the units were done by Mr. Raamouch and he was particularly helpful in the field, when the supplementary materials were recorded.

Thanks are due as well to Mr. Mohammed Guerssel who, as the second principal informant, provided the basic material for the Ayt Seghrouchen texts. He composed the first three units according to the format originally set up for Ayt Ayache and recorded the Ayt Seghrouchen texts for language laboratory use. He was also a very competent assistant in the field when the Ayt Seghrouchen variants were being recorded. His insightful observations and remarks helped me to formulate the most important part of this book, the comparative analysis of the two affiliated dialects: Ayt Ayache and Ayt Seghrouchen.

In addition, I would like to express my thanks to Professor William D. Schorger, who, as Director of the Center for Near Eastern and North African Studies at the University of Michigan, initiated the program of research on North African languages and linguistics.

The Center defrayed the costs of research assistants, field trips, typists, tapes and tape recordings, as well as providing me with the time and opportunity to carry out the field research and the analysis.

I owe an especial debt to my colleagues Professor Ernest N. McCarus and Professor Gene M. Schramm who gave their time freely for linguistic discussions during the early stages of the research that led to the formulation of this present work; I am grateful to them for their many creative suggestions.

Also, I wish to extend thanks to Professor Lionel Galand of L'Ecole Nationale des Langues Orientales Vivantes, Paris, for his helpful comments on an earlier draft of the units, particularly the Ayt Ayache materials.

And I am also grateful to Professor J. Bynon of the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London for his enlightening discussions on the problems of Tamazight phonology and word boundary.

I am deeply grateful to my wife, Cecile, whose patience, constant encouragement, and deep understanding have sustained my efforts throughout the work on this book.

Again, I would like to express my deep appreciation to Professor William D. Schorger, who introduced me to the field of Berber studies and to whom I present this work.

Ann Arbor, Michigan  
January, 1971

E.T.A.

## Introduction

This book grew out of the lack of any text designed for the teaching of an introductory course in the Berber language in general and the Tamazight dialect in particular to college students. An earlier version of some of the units of this book were used in an experimental class organized by the Center for Near Eastern and North African Studies at the University of Michigan in 1966 and were rewritten in 1967 when the course was first offered for University credit. The first stage of this research (1966-1968) concentrated on the dialect of Ayt Ayache Tamazight. Work on the dialect of Ayt Seghrouchen Tamazight began in the field in 1969.

The language of this book is Tamazight, a dialect of Berber, spoken in the Middle Atlas Mountains of Morocco. Berber is spoken mainly in North Africa (Libya, Tunisia, Algeria and Morocco) and in Siwa (UAR). It is also spoken by the Tuareg groups in Mauritania and the countries of the Sahara (Mali, Niger and Chad). Berber, a branch of the Afro-Asiatic family of languages is exclusively an unwritten language. It is divided into some three hundred or more distinct local dialects. The number of the speakers of



Berber have been estimated to be 5,000,000<sup>1</sup> to 7,000,000<sup>2</sup> and over 10,000,000<sup>3</sup>. Berber speakers are discontinuously distributed from the Siwa Oasis in Egypt to the Atlantic Ocean and from the Niger River to the Mediterranean Sea. (See the map on p. vii for the distribution of the Berber dialects in general and the map on p. viii for the distribution of the Berber dialects particularly in Morocco.) It is possible to distinguish four basic dialect groups of Berber:

I. Tamazight, a dialect of the Middle Atlas Mountains in Central Morocco. Among the speakers of Tamazight (which number approximately 2,000,000) are the following groups (tribes, subtribes):

Beni Ouarain, Ait Morghi, Ait Alaham, Ait Youb, Marmoucha, Ait Seghrouchen, Ait Youssi, Beni Mguild, Zaiane, Zemmour, Ait Rbaa, Ait Seri, Beni Mtir, Guerouane, Ait Segougou, Ait Morghad, Ait Ayache, Ait Hadiddou, Ait Izdeg, Ait Sikhmane, Ait Atta.

II. Tachelhit (or Shilha), dialect of the High and Anti-Atlas and the Sous Valley in Southern Morocco; There are approximately 2,000,000 speakers of this

---

<sup>1</sup> Encyclopedia of Islam, vol. I, Fasciulus 19, Leiden, Netherlands, 1959, p. 1177.

<sup>2</sup> Ju. N. Zavadovskij, Berberski jazyk (The Berber Language), Moscow, 1967, p. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Encyclopedia Britannica, vol. 3, Encyclopedia Britannica Inc., Wm. Benton, Chicago, 1970, p. 496.

dialect.

III. Zenatiya, a dialect of about 2,000,000 speakers.

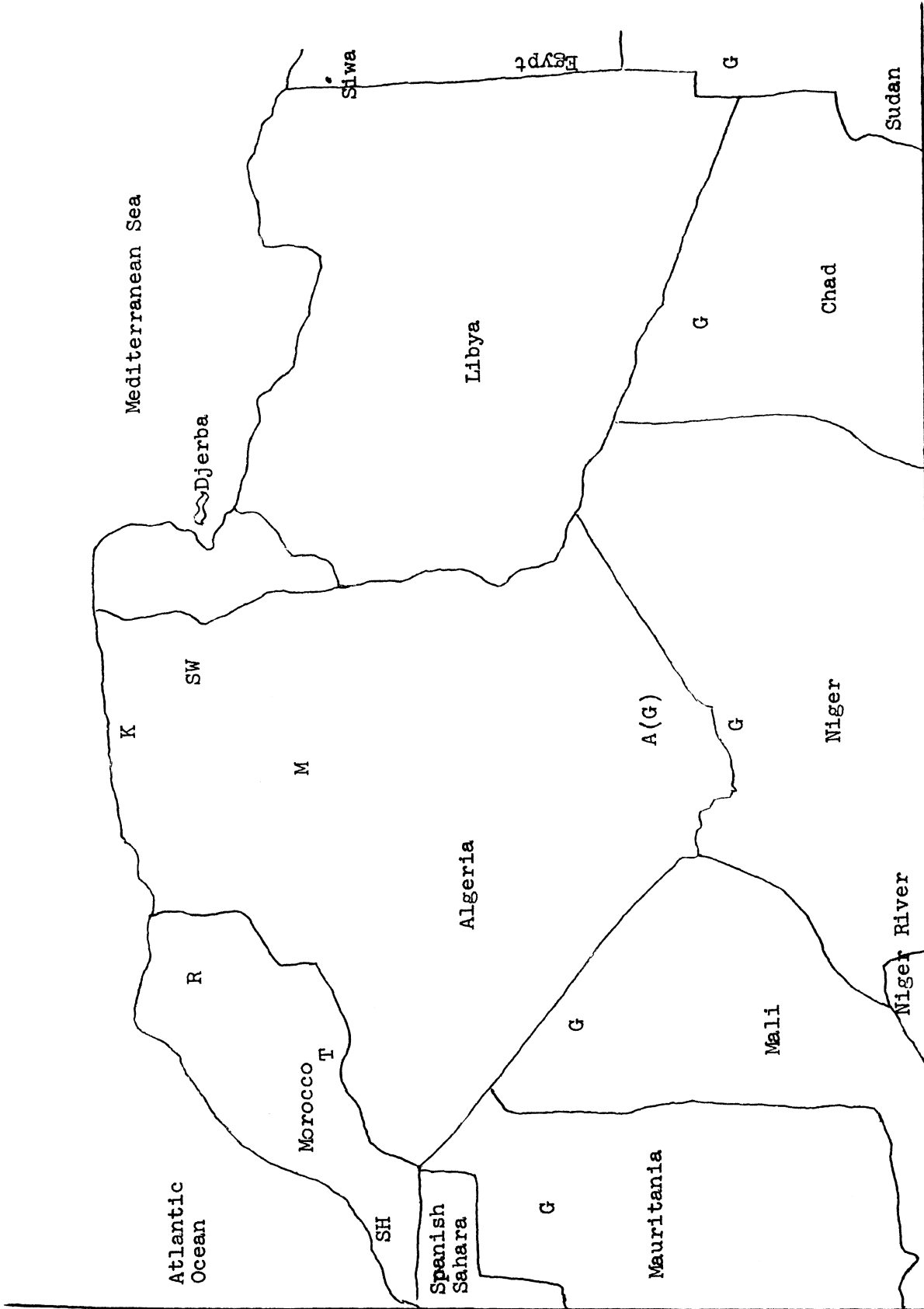
Zenatiya distinguishes the following sub-groupings:

- a) Rifian or Tarifit (spoken by about 0.5 million Rifians in Northern and Northeastern Morocco)
- b) Kabyli (spoken by about 1,300,000 speakers), dialect of the Kabyle tribes in the Kabyle Mountains of Algeria
- c) Zenatiya Mzabian (spoken by about 25,000 speakers in Mzab by the Mzabites of Ghardaia)
- d) Shawia or Tashawit (spoken by about 150,000 speakers in the Aures Mountains of Algeria)

IV. Tamashek , dialect of the Tuareg groups in Mauritania and the open Sahara.

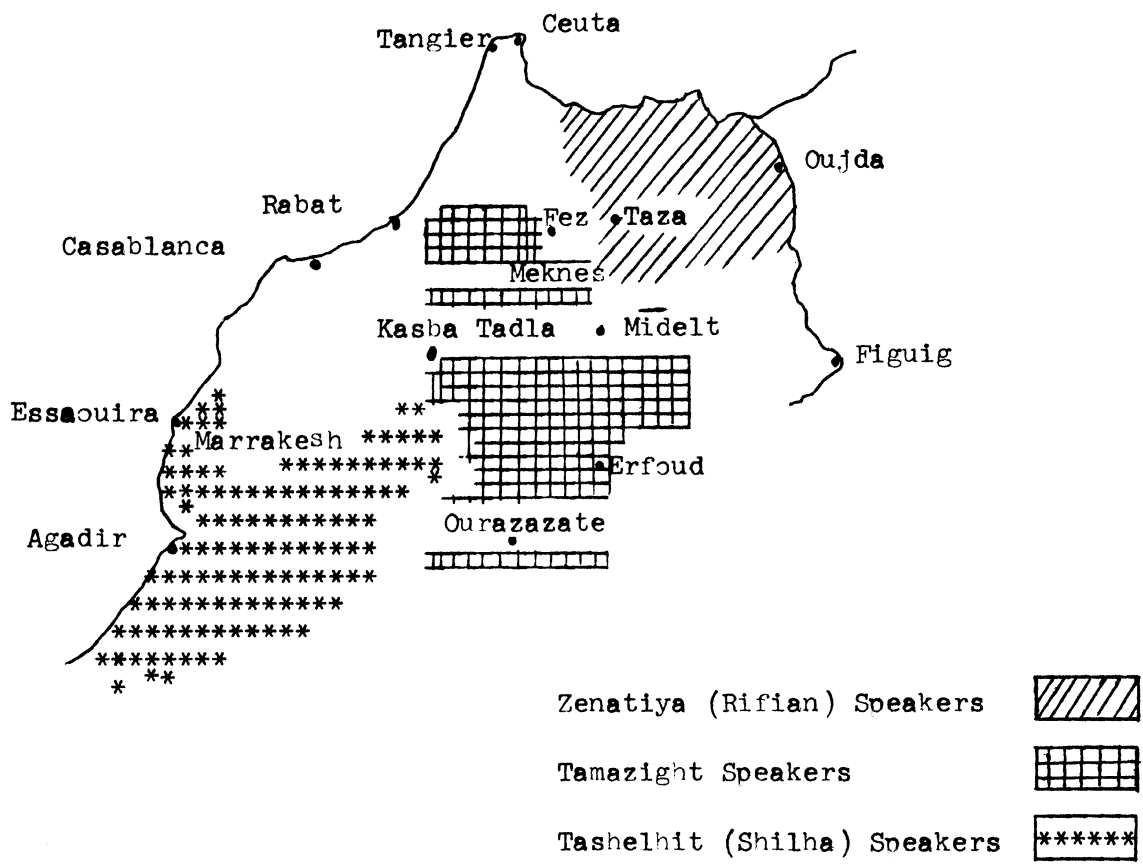
Many speakers of Berber in North Africa are bilingual, with Arabic being their second language. Many of the men speak Berber, Arabic and French, while the women are more conservative.

The main focus of the language of this book is the Tamazight dialects of Ayt Ayache and Ayt Seghrouchen. Ayt Ayache is a tribe composed of twenty-two villages along the Ansegmir River, at the foot of Ayachi Mountain, about thirty kilometers west of the town of Midelt. The limit on the east is National Highway No. 21, on the south the Ayt Yahya tribe at Road No. 3420,



R = Rifian  
 T = Tamazight  
 SH = Shilha  
 K = Kabyle  
 SW = Shawia  
 M = Mzabidn  
 A(G) = Aheggar  
 (Tourage)  
 G = Touareg

Geographic Distribution of the Major Berber Dialects.



Geographic Distribution of Berber Dialects in Morocco

and on the north and west the Beni Mguild tribe at Road No. 3422. Ayt Ayache Tamazight is mutually intelligible with the speech of neighboring tribes. Ayt Seghrouchen is a much larger tribe than Ayt Ayache. It is divided into three major sub-tribes: (1) Ayt Seghrouchen of Sidi Ali, known as Ayt Seghrouchen of Tichikout, (2) Ayt Seghrouchen of Imouzzer and (3) Ayt Seghrouchen of Talesinnt. The limits of the Ayt Seghrouchen of Sidi Ali are the Beni Ouarain to the north, Ayt Youssi to the south, Ayt Seghrouchen of Imouzzer and Beni Mguild to the west and southwest and Oulad El-Haj to the east. Ayt Seghrouchen of Imouzzer lies about 30 kilometers south of Fez, surrounded by Ayt Youssi, Beni Mtir and the town of Sefrou. The limits of Ayt Seghrouchen of Talesinnt are Oulad El-Haj, Ayt Yafelmane, the town of Midelt and Beni Guil. Both Ayt Ayache and Ayt Seghrouchen live by farming and by tending and rearing sheep. The main handicraft industry is tapestry.

Berber literature is, of course, mainly oral. It is this lack of written documents that makes the tracing of the history of the language somewhat difficult. However, attempts were made very early to record the language, using various writing systems. The oldest inscriptions come to us from Tunisia and Algeria and are over 2,000 years old. They are written in a consonantal system which resembles that of contemporary Tuareg. The national Berber alphabet is that of the Tuareg tribes, known as Tifinagh; it is composed of strokes, arcs,

and dots as well as combinations of these. In this system, individual words are not separated and one can write from left to right or from right to left, from top to bottom or from bottom to top. The Tuaregs call the symbols Tafineqq (singular) and Tifinagh (plural). The Tuaregs have no manuscripts, strictly speaking, only short notes on pots, bracelets, shields, etc. The only Berber texts we have are written in Arabic script. These are mainly religious texts used for instruction in Islam.

Following is a simplified table with samples of the Libyan inscriptions and Tuareg (Tifinagh), both ancient and contemporary inscriptions, with the corresponding Arabic script and phonetic equivalents.

Phonetic Equiv.	Libyan	Tuareg (Tifinagh)		Corresponding Arabic Script
		ancient	contemp.	
b	⊙	⊙ ⊠	⊙ ⊠ ⊙ ⊠	ب
t	+ ⊙	x +	+	ت
m	⌋	⌋ ⌋	⌋ ⌋	م
z	-	⌋	* *	ز
k	⇐ ⇐	↑ ↑	:: ::	ك
ʒ			H Y X I X	ج
y	⌋ Z ~	Z ~ S ~	3 P 6 2 4	ي
d	⌋	⌋ ⌋	^ ⌋ v u	د

Table 1

This book is intended to be used for the study of either the dialect of Ayt Ayache alone or for the study of the two dialects in the order Ayt Ayache first, followed by Ayt Seghrouchen. It is planned to serve as a comparative source for the study of these two affiliated dialects.

The goal of this text is to achieve fluency in one or both dialects presented in the book and to master the basic grammatical structures of Tamazight. Ayt Ayache texts begin with dialogues ranging from simple to complex sentences. Unit One consists of greetings and common expressions which, in many cases, can be a single word or an utterance. Conversations contained in Units Two - Five vary in length and structural difficulty and are composed to encompass most of the constructions of the dialect of Ayt Ayache Tamazight. Units 7 - 10 follow the same format as the preceding ones, which is basically conversational. They contain, however, shorter texts that were tape recorded in the field in Summer 1967. These are inserted in the conversations in their appropriate places. This gives the student the privilege of listening to native speakers other than Mr. Raamouch who is the main informant for the Ayt Ayache Tamazight and who is an educated speaker (college senior). The field tapes were transcribed in the units with minimal editing. In listening to the tapes that accompany this text, the student will be aware of the field tapes as they always occur in the third reading of the units of this

book. Unit Eleven is a review unit. Units 12 and 13 are longer texts tape recorded in the field.

Because of the importance of greetings and common expressions in everyday Tamazight, these items are repeated for Ayt Seghrouchen dialect with a format similar to that used for Ayt Ayache. Not only does this make such important utterances available to the student in a different dialect, but it also supplies him with comparative notes on the phonology, morphology and lexicon of the two dialects at the end of Unit 14. Units 15 and 16 consist of ten short texts that have much ethnological information which is of great interest to a college student. Unit 17 (15 short texts) was tape recorded in the field in Summer 1969 to supplement Units 15 and 16. The speakers, educated speakers of Ayt Seghrouchen Tamazight, were kind enough to tape record this particular unit for me in the field. I consider this to be a very important text in terms of content and subject matter. Units 18 and 19 are texts tape recorded in the field. Unit 20.1, "Lexical Differences", was originally a text tape recorded in the field by a fifty-year old speaker of Ayt Seghrouchen. Mr. Guerssel, the main informant for the Ayt Seghrouchen dialect, who is an educated speaker of Tamazight (college senior), helped put it in its present form. The riddles (20.2) were tape recorded in the field. The poetry (20.3) is by speakers of Ayt Seghrouchen. It is



worth mentioning, however, that the wandering poets of the Middle Atlas region of Morocco use a kind of intermediate language or dialect for their compositions that is common to all Tamazight speakers. Thus, the vocabulary cannot be claimed as exclusively Ayt Seghrouchen. The vocabulary from the poems is listed in the Ayt Seghrouchen glossary simply because the poems were recorded in the field by speakers of this dialect.

In using this book, there are many things that should be noted. First and foremost, this book has very few grammatical explanations. Therefore, it is suggested that the student seek grammatical information contained in A Short Reference Grammar of Tamazight (by Ernest T. Abdel-Massih, Center for Near East and North African Studies, the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan 48104, 1971). Also, it is of vital importance to note that since this book is intended for use by college students as an introductory text, much leeway is allowed the individual instructor in terms of explanations of particular grammatical points. The Reference Grammar referred to above will be of help in this. The exclusion of items presented in a repetitive manner is due to a consideration of the intelligence of the potential users of this book and to prevent the loss of interest due to the triviality of the presentation of the subject matter.

With reference to the matter of transcription, it is advisable that the student master the phonological system by going through the drills several times before beginning the

units of the book. A set of tapes for the phonology as well as for the units of the book is available from the Center for Near Eastern and North African Studies, the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan 48104.

Also, a point of clarification is necessary with reference to word boundaries and morphophonemic changes. For example, the automatic change of i to y after a vowel is sometimes transcribed here as i and sometimes as y, depending upon the rapidity of the speech of the informant, or, in other words, depending upon the occurrence of the words upon the field tape, from which they were transcribed. Examples:

iwa	in:aš	he tells you
~		
iwa	yn:aš	

In relation to this, the structure (ša + n + noun) 'some of...' can be transcribed in very slightly different ways, all of which are acceptable to a native speaker.

Examples:

ša nlħašt ~ šan lħašt ~ šal lħašt ~ ša l:ħašt 'something'

These variances are, again, all dependent upon the particular informant as recorded upon the field tape.

Of a similar nature are constructions with the moveable affixes, i.e. pronominal affixes and the particles of proximity and remoteness, which can show variable forms depending upon speech pauses which appear on the field tape.

Examples:

- (1) ḍyi ṛb:i aḍyifšif̣r:ẓ̌ . God will make it easy for  
ḍyi ṛb:i aḍyifṣ̌ if̣r:ẓ̌ . you now (Ayt Ayache).
- (2) alḍisnṭt:ẓal:aṇ . and they started to pray  
alḍisnṭ t:ẓal:aṇ . in them (f) (Ayt Seghrouchen)
- (3) iwa ayn:a axf aṣyrf̣y tadw:arṭ . That is why I threw the  
iwa ayn:a axfaṣ ỵrf̣y tadw:arṭ . tripe at him (Ayt Ayache).  
iwa ayn:a axfaṣỵrf̣y tadw:arṭ .
- (4) ayu ay dis t:g:ṇ . This is what they do in it  
ayu aydis t:g:ṇ . (Ayt Seghrouchen).  
ayu aydist:g:ṇ .

It is hoped that this text will serve both as a linguistic source for mastering Tamazight and also as an introduction to the culture and ethnology of the speakers of Tamazight.

Ann Arbor, Michigan  
January, 1971

E.T.A.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword.....	v
Acknowledgements .....	vi
Introduction .....	viii
 PART ONE - PHONOLOGY (AYT AYACHE) .....	 1
1 Consonants and semi-vowels .....	2
2 Vowels .....	24
3 Phonological Structure of Words in Tamazight .....	31
4 Stress .....	34
5 Review drill .....	35
6 Laboratory exercises .....	37
 PART TWO - TEXTS (AYT AYACHE) .....	 40
1.1 Greetings .....	41
1.2 Grammar, Drills, Additional Phrases and Expressions .....	51
1.3 Review Conversations .....	57
1.4 Drills .....	58
2.1 The Market Place of Boumia .....	61
2.2 Additional Sentences, Phrases, and Vocabulary .....	64
2.3 Practice Drills .....	70
3.1 William Visits Ayt Ayache .....	73
3.2 Grammatical Notes .....	80
3.3 Drills .....	84
4.1 Berber Traditions .....	89
4.2 Story .....	94
4.3 Grammatical Notes and Drill .....	95
5.1 Kinship Terms .....	99
5.2 Conversations .....	100
5.3 Stories .....	104
5.4 Telling Time .....	107
5.5 Months of Year .....	109
5.6 Drills .....	109

6.1	Sofa Talk after Dinner I .....	113
6.2	Grammar Notes and Drills .....	119
6.3	"I have a headache" .....	120
6.4	Drill .....	122
6.5	Drill .....	122
7.1	Sofa Talk after Dinner II .....	123
7.2	Drill .....	128
7.3	Drill .....	128
7.4	Drill .....	129
8.1	Sofa Talk after Dinner III .....	131
8.2	Drill .....	138
8.3	Drill .....	139
9.1	William Goes to the Market in Ayt Ayache .	141
9.2	William Goes to a "hidus" Dance .....	142
9.3	Exercises .....	146
10	William leaves Ayt Ayache .....	149
10.2	Exercises .....	161
11	Review .....	165
11.1	A Story of Jeha .....	165
11.1.1	Questions .....	166
11.2	Berber food .....	167
11.3	Borrowing from the Neighbor .....	168
11.4	Review Exercises .....	169
11.5	Exercises .....	171
11.6	Exercises .....	173
11.7	Exercises .....	174
12.1	A Fairy Tale .....	175
12.2	Exercises .....	181
12.3	Exercises .....	181
13.1	The Story of Saint Joseph .....	183
13.2	Exercises .....	192
13.3	Exercises .....	192
PART THREE - PHONOLOGY (AYT SEGHTROUCHEN) .....		195
PART FOUR - TEXTS FROM AYT SEGHTROUCHEN .....		204
14.1	Greetings .....	205
14.2	Grammar, Drills, Additional Phrases and Expressions.....	212
14.3	Review Conversations .....	215
14.4	Exercises .....	217
14.5	Conversation .....	218
14.6	Additional Sentences .....	220
14.7	Interrogation .....	225
	Notes .....	227
15.1	The Market .....	237
15.2	Tea .....	241
15.3	The Month of Ramadan .....	244
15.4	Fields .....	247
15.5	Village Shop .....	250

16.1	Berber Dance .....	253
16.2	Men's Clothing .....	255
16.3	What People do after Dinner .....	257
16.4	Women's Work .....	259
16.5	The Tribe of Ayt Seghrouchen .....	262
17.1	The Tribe of Ayt Seghrouchen .....	273
17.2	Life of Ayt Seghrouchen .....	282
17.3	Markets .....	286
17.4	Mosques .....	291
17.5	Schools .....	292
17.6	The Village Council .....	293
17.7	The Public Bath .....	295
17.8	The Coffee Shop .....	295
17.9	The Roads .....	296
17.10	Weddings .....	299
17.11	Berber Dance .....	304
17.12	Shops .....	306
17.13	Tea .....	309
17.14	What People do after Dinner .....	310
17.15	The Month of Ramadan .....	310
18.1	The Story of the Peaceful Man and His Mule	313
18.2	The Lark and the Bird .....	327
18.3	Jeha of the West and Jeha of the East ....	331
19.1	The Story of the Greyhound .....	333
19.2	Hdidan .....	348
19.3	The Goat and the Jackal .....	355
20.1	Lexical Differences .....	361
20.2	Riddles .....	364
20.3	Songs .....	369
PART FIVE - GLOSSARIES .....		381

## I. Phonology (Ayt Ayache)

I. Phonology

1. Consonants and Semi-Vowels

Tamazight, Ayt Ayache Dialect, has the following consonants: /b t d k g q f s z š ž x γ m n l r h ʕ h / and two semi-vowels / w y /. Table 2 shows the place and manner of articulation of the above-mentioned segments.

The diacritics /:/ and/or ./ may be added to most of the above-mentioned segments. /:/ marks tenseness. A tense segment in general is produced with more force than its lax counterpart. The intensity and aspiration which are characteristic of the tense segments give them a syllabic quality so that /b:/, for example, is heard as [əbb] (except when preceded by a vowel / a i u/). All lax segments have tense counterparts except for /ʕ/ and /h/.

Flatness ./ is manifested in two ways:

(a) as velarization for the front segments /ṭ ḍ ṣ ẓ  
ḷ ṇ ṛ /

and (b) as labialization for the back segments /g̣ ḳ q̣/  
and rarely /x̣ γ̣/ (phonetically [g̣̠ ḳ̠ q̣̠] or [g̣<sup>w</sup> ḳ<sup>w</sup> q̣<sup>w</sup> x̣<sup>w</sup> γ̣<sup>w</sup>]).

The following is an inventory of all the above-mentioned segments and their modified counterparts: / b b: t t: ṭ ṭ:  
d d: ḍ ḍ: k k: ḳ ḳ: g g: g̣ g̣: q q: q̣ q̣: f f: s s: ṣ ṣ: z z:  
ẓ ẓ: š š: ž ž: x x: x̣ x̣: γ γ: m m: n n: l l: ḷ ḷ: r r: ṛ ṛ: h h:  
ʕ h w w: y y: / and rarely /x̣ γ̣/.

The terms used in Table 2 are here explained in terms of the articulators that help produce the different sounds. These are followed by explanations of the terms voiced and voiceless, lax, and flat.

Bilabial: lower lip and upper lip

Labio-dental: lower lip and upper teeth

Dental: apex of tongue and upper teeth

Alveolar: apex of tongue and alveolar ridge

Alveo-palatal: apex of tongue and front part of palate.



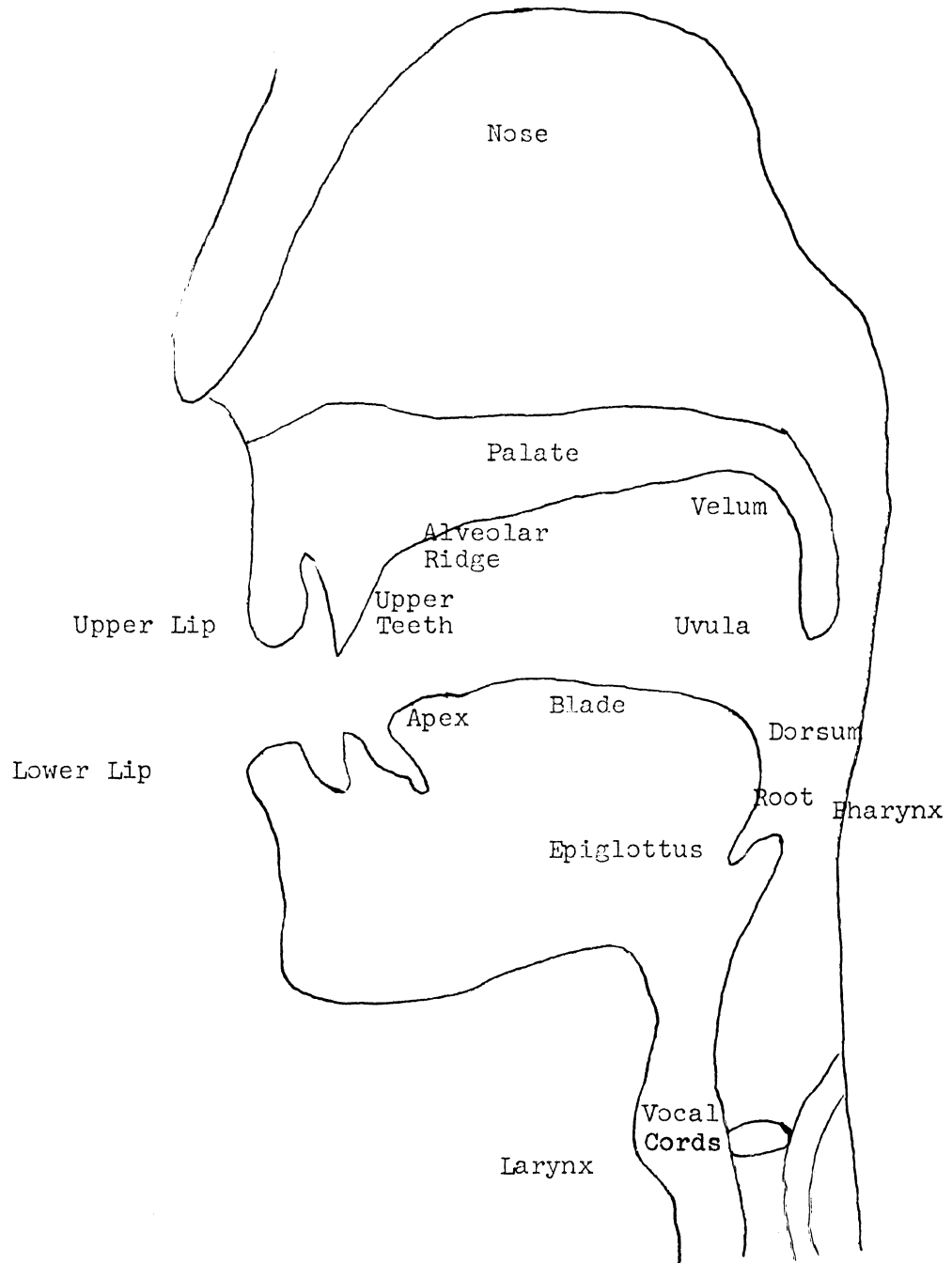


Diagram of the Organs of Speech

	Bilabial	Labio-dental	Dental	Alveolar	Alveo-palatal	Palatal	Post-palatal	Velar	Uvular	Pharyngeal	Glottal
Stop vl.			t				k	q			
Stop vd.	b		d				g				
Fric. vl.		f	s		ʃ			x	ħ	h	
Fric. vd.			z		ʒ			ʁ	ʕ		
Nasal	m			n							
Lateral			l								
Flap				r							
Semi-Vowel						y		w			

Table 2: Tamazight Consonants and Semi-Vowels

## Phonology

---

- Palatal: tongue blade and palate  
Post palatal: tongue blade and back of palate  
Velar: tongue dorsum and velum  
Uvular: tongue dorsum and uvula  
Pharyngeal: root of the tongue and pharynx (constriction)  
Glottal: produced in the larynx by constriction of the two vocal cords  
Voiced (vd): during the production of voiced sounds the vocal cords are closed  
Voiceless (vl): during the production of voiceless sounds the vocal cords are open  
Lax: a speech sound produced with little muscular tension in the speech organs; e.g. /b/  
Tense: a speech sound produced with great muscular tension in the speech organs; e.g. /b:/  
Flat: a speech sound produced by pressing the blade of the tongue against the palate so that the articulation is velarized rather than dental; e.g. /t̪/

### Pronunciation Drills

The examples cited here illustrate the occurrence of the various consonants and semi-vowels mentioned above. In addition to being pronunciation drills they are meant to show the opposition flat/plain and/or tense/lax for any particular segment. /x̣ γ̣ ḥ ɛ̣ / are grouped at the end because they do not have tense counterparts.

1. b/b:

bab	owner
b:as	his father
labas	fine
la b:as ula mays	neither his father nor his mother
abali	old
ab:a	father

2. t/t:

isalt	he asked him
-------	--------------

	isalt:	he asked her
	tftl	she rolled
	datft:l	she is rolling
	turift	popcorn
	tararit:	vomiting
3.	ṭ/ṭ:	
	ṭalb	to demand
	ṭ:alab	request
	ṣtat:u	a seive
4.	ṭ/ṭ	
	tafunast	cow
	ṭalb	to demand
	tarbat:	girl
	tanbaršt:	congratulations
	ntl	to hide
	štat:u	a seive
	šm:t	to cheat
	timšt:	a comb
5.	d/d:	
	da	here
	d:u	go!
	ibda	he began
	id:a	he went
	ardam	demolishing
	ard:am	demolisher
	bd:	to stand up
6.	ḍ/ḍ:	
	ḍmn	to guarantee
	ḍ:amn	guarantor
	ṭfdṛ	she took breakfast
	datfḍ:ṛ	she is taking breakfast

## Phonology

---

isfd	he wiped
isfd:	he wiped it (m.)

7. d/d
- |      |                 |
|------|-----------------|
| bdu  | to begin        |
| bdu  | to share        |
| dš   | to massage      |
| dłm  | to oppress      |
| fr:d | to change money |
| frd  | to sweep        |

8. Pronunciation Drill

tad:art	a house
ibdr	he mentioned
daybd:r	he mentions
anbdu	we will share
danbd:u	we share
tabarda	saddle (for mule)
tamd:ut:	woman
d:ra	corn
d:alb	learned man in the village
fadma	proper name (f.)
td:r	she lived
d:ažin	stew
idawa	he cured
trb:a	she taught
idrú	it is little
dayt:fras	he attacks
dayt:sus	he shakes
išm:t:	he cheated him
nfsrt:	we spread it (f.)

9. k/k:
- /k/ is a lax palatal voiceless fricative mainly in the environment of / s z š ž r l m n /. /k:/ is a tense post palatal voiceless stop.

irkm	it (m.) boiled
dayrk:m	it is boiling
ks	to tend sheep
k:s	to take out
krz	to plough
k:r	to get up
aš:k	to be lost
š:k:	doubt (n.)

10. k/k:

/k/ is a labialized lax post palatal voiceless fricative mainly in the environment of / s z š ž r l m n /

/k:/ is a labialized tense voiceless post palatal stop.

lkumit	dagger
lk:n:aš	notebook
kul:	all
k:u	every, each

11. k/k - k:/k:

kžm	to enter
kn:i	you (m.p.) Subj.
kmz	to scratch
š:k:	doubt (n)
s:k:r	sugar
nk:r	we got up
nk:ni	we

12. g/g:

/g/ is a lax post palatal voiced fricative (mainly in the environment of /s z š ž r l m n /). /g:/ is a tense post palatal voiced stop.

irgm	he insulted
dayrg:m	he insults
nmgr	we harvested
danmg:r	we harvest
iga	he did
ag:a	he is

13.  $\underset{\cdot}{g}/\underset{\cdot}{g}:$

$/\underset{\cdot}{g}/$  is a labialized lax post palatal voiced fricative (in the environment of /s z š ž r l m n /)

$/\underset{\cdot}{g}:/$  is a labialized tense post palatal voiced stop.

az $\underset{\cdot}{g}$ u	wind
ag:a	a burden
ag $\underset{\cdot}{l}$ man	lake
as $\underset{\cdot}{g}$ :as	year
am $\underset{\cdot}{g}$ r	sickle
ag:d	even
targ $\underset{\cdot}{a}$	canal
tir $\underset{\cdot}{g}$ :in	canals

14.  $\underset{\cdot}{g}/\underset{\cdot}{g}$  -  $\underset{\cdot}{g}:/\underset{\cdot}{g}:$

iga	he did
targ $\underset{\cdot}{a}$	canal
ag:a	he is
ag:a	a burden
dayt:g:a	he does
dayt:g:a	he kneads
urt:g:d	you will not do
urt:g:d	you will not knead

15.  $q/q:$

iqr:a	he confessed
-------	--------------

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

iq:la	he fried
thl:qnt	you (f.p.) dressed up
tq:dnt	you (f.p.) burnt
16. q/q:	
iqm:r	he gambled
asq:n	rope
17. q:/q:	
n:q:rt	we shook it (m.) off
n:q:rt	silver
18. <u>Pronunciation Drill</u>	
lq:adi	judge
k:u	to cut grass
lk:as	a glass
šg:	you
g:any	wait !
ak:n:rar	we will take you (m.p.) back
ag:nk:	me too
tg:a	she kneaded
tadg:at	evening
tadg:alt	in-law
lq:hwa	coffee
q:n	to close
s:uq:	the market
tnq:rd	you shook off
n:q:rt	silver
qm:rnt	they (f.) gambled
asq:n	rope
tga	she did
targa	canal
ag:a	he is
ag:a	burden



Phonology

---

amksa	shepherd
šk:a	to doubt
ik:a	he visited
fdṛ	eat!
r:baḍ	Rabat
td:rḍ	you lived
lwaldin	the parents
fadma	proper name (f.)
d:ažiṇ	stew
aksum	meat
19. f/f:	
tnfḍ	she threw
datnf:ḍ	she is throwing
fa	to yawn
f:u	to dawn
fru	to pay debts
f:r	to hide
af	to find
af:	to be blown
20. s/s:	
in:as	he told him
as:	day
tfsr	she spread
datfs:r	she is spreading
sus	to shake off
s:udm	to kiss
21. ṣ/ṣ:	
sbṛ	to be patient
s:bṛ	patience
tnsḍ	she blew her nose
datnṣ:ḍ	she is blowing her nose

22. s/s  
 sl:m to greet  
 sr:f to change money  
 fsd to spoil  
 qsd to go toward  
 frs to attack  
 tfs to fold
23. z/z:  
 izrit he left him  
 iz:rit he made him pass  
 z:r to pluck  
 zrb to hurry  
 zdm to collect wood  
 z:nz to sell
24. z/z:  
 zd to weave  
 z:y to milk  
 zur to visit holy places  
 z:al: pray!  
 trzm she opened  
 datrz:m she is opening
25. z/z - z:/z:  
 tzur she is fat  
 tzur she visited holy places  
 tz:r she depilated  
 tz:y she milked
26. š/š:  
 šal to buy grain  
 š:ar to share  
 inšl he stepped on  
 daynš:l he steps on

Phonology

---

in:aš                    he told you  
iš:                        horn

27. ž/ž':  
anžar                    sharpening  
anž:ar                   carpenter  
aržam                    throwing stones at  
arž:am                   one who throws stones at  
žhd                        to be strong  
ž:y                        to recover

28. Pronunciation Drill

ša                        some  
šan                        some of  
š:ržm                    window  
izil                        he is nice  
izi                        a fly  
trz                        to embroider  
t:rz                        embroidering  
s:inıt                    a tray  
labas                     fine  
fz:                        chew  
fsy                        melt  
fs:r                        to explain  
is:n                        he knows  
barak:a                   enough  
tamazirt                   country  
ws:a                        to advise  
wsir                        to be old  
ams                        to paint  
amz                        to take, to hold  
ršu                        to be dirty  
rsu                        to be quiet  
ržu                        to hope

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

rzu	to look for
žru	to happen
s:u	to make the bed
sfu	to be clean
šdu	to smell
z:u	to plant
29. x/x:	
ixali	to my uncle
ix:ayi	he is mean to me
xulf	to be different
x:ant	they (f.) are mean
max	why?
wax:a	all right
30. γ/γ:	
aγul	to go back
abaγ :us	monkey
iγus	he burnt
m: γ	to be wet
γal	to think
31. <u>Pronunciation Drill</u>	
xɗm	to work
xɗmγ	I work
f:γ	to go out
nγ	to kill
mslxir	good evening
lxudrt	vegetables
taxnšiyt	sack
ixmž	it smells bad
axd:am	laborer (m.)
max	why?
wax:a	all right
aγrum	bread

## Phonology

---

iγš:at	he cheated him
iγš:at:	he cheated her
dayt:dbay	he dyes
abd:ay	dyer
šk:ay	i doubted
ix:a	he is mean
abx:an	black
xulfn	they (m) are different

32. m/m:	
ma	what?
m:a	my mother
tγms	she covered
datγm:s	she is covering
axd:am	laborer (m)
am:	like
33. n/n:	
ini	say!
urin:i	he did not say
rzn	to be patient
naf	we find (aorist)
n:ay	to fight
34. l/l:	
adrbal	worn out cloth
idrbal:	worn out cloths

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

la	no
l:ayxd:m	he is working
šl	to spend a day
sl:	to hear
35. l/l:	
xlas:	enough
xl:s	to pay
laz	hunger
l:aysl:m	response to 'hello'
36. l/l - l:/l:	
la	no
laz	hunger
datxl:u	she is running
yal:ah	let us go
l:ayxd:m	he is working
l:aysl:m	response to 'hello'
37. r/r:	
angmar	hunter
ingmar:	hunters
iri	to want
ir:a	he won
rar	to give back
r:u	to win

Phonology

---

38. r/r̄:

r̄du	to bless
r̄:da	blessing
r̄:zn	patience
rzn	to be patient
tšrd	she combed
datšr:d	she combs

39. r/r̄

rzu	to look for
rzn	to be patient
rdm	to demolish
r̄du	to bless

40. Pronunciation Drill

mslxir̄	good evening
br:m	to turn
nan:a	grandmother
mun	to accompany
lalal	no
mun dlman	response to 'good night'
l:ayhn:ik:	goodbye
l:aybark:fik:	may God bless you (m.s.)
rb:i	God
amray	rubbing
amr:ay	one who rubs
rdm	demolishing

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

r:dm		debris
yal:ah		let us go
l;ayt:sl;am		he greets
ɣawl		hurry up !
ɣr		to read
ɣrs		to slaughter
m:ɣ		to be wet
41.	h/h:	(mainly in Arabic borrowings)
	dayt:rhal	he moves
	tarh:alt	nomad (f)
	lbht	investigation
	tbh:t	she investigated
	hml	to flood
	rbh	to succeed
42.	ʕ	(mainly in Arabic borrowings)
	ʕawn	to help
	ʕbd	to adore, worship
	iʕbd	he adores
	bʕd	to be far
	xɔʕ	to deceive
43.	h	(mainly in Arabic borrowings)
	ha	here is, are
	hdm	to demolish
	dhn	to rub ointment



yal:ah	let us go
44. <u>Pronunciation Drill</u>	
ʕiʃa	proper name (f)
ʕli	proper name (m)
lbhimt	beast
lq:hwa	coffee
ʒmʕ	to collect
lʕil	a boy
hadr	to be present
lhmdul:ah	thanks to God, fine
muha	proper name (m)
raʕa	to see
hdu	to offer a present
fhm	to understand
nʕam	yes (in response to someone calling)
shu	to be healthy
nhmdirb:i	thanks to God, fine
lhuk:uma	the government
aʒm:uʕ	the gathering
ʕayd	go back !
dr:ʕ	to scream
lq:ʕida	tradition
lʒihad	holy war
lfq:ih	learned man
lʕb	to play
l:ʕb	playing

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

hš:m	Be polite! (behave)
šhal	How many? How much?
maš iga lhal	How are you ? (m.s.)
s:aliḥin	the saints
ažr:uḥ	a wound
amḥdar	student
aʿsk:ri	a soldier
lʿib	shame
ʿz:a	to console
ʿrd	to invite
ʿdl	to repair
ʿbr	to measure, weigh
45. w/w:	
ixwa	it is empty
axw:an	thief
z:waq:	design
dayt:zw:aq:	he designs
wax:a	all right
46. y/y:	
yal:ah	let us go
y:ih	yes
47. <u>Pronunciation Drill</u>	
ʿayd	Go back!
lhusayn	Lahoucine - proper name (m)

## Phonology

---

ar:yal	Rial (currency unit)
ḷ:ayhn:ik:	good bye (ms)
walayn:i	but
awal	speech
ša w:awal	some talk
tamquṭ:inw	my wife
awḍ	to reach
an:ay	to see
ayt	House (family = group of related people)

### 48. x̣, ɣ̣

(rare - labialized counterparts of lax /x/ and /ɣ/ . Whenever /x̣/ or /ɣ̣/ occurs the native speaker can freely substitute /x,ɣ/ .

lɣ̣ṣ̌ ~ lɣ̣ṣ̌:	cheating
ɣ̣zif ~ ɣ̣zif	tall
axm:as ~ axm:as	share-cropper

### 49. Pronunciation Drill

ḷɔ̣baṛ	measuring, weighing
b:as	his father
isalt:	he asked her
iɣ̣ṣ̌:at	he cheated him
aɣ:u	milk
danfḍ:ṛ	we are taking lunch (or breakfast)
trkm	it (f) boiled
irkz	he treaded
ag:a	he is

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

ag:a	burden
fz:	to chew
amd:ak:l	friend (m)
lhak:m	judge
tq:dnt	you (fp) burnt
iqda	he accomplished
ʿt:r	to be late
ʿawn	to help
r:dm	debris
at:xlu	she will ruin
m:a	my mother
šrh	to envy
nšaʿl:ah	if God wills
abay:us	monkey
šbahlxir	good morning
n:q:rt	silver
n:q:lt	we transplanted it
n:q:lt	a transplant
sb:b	to trade
zry	to leave, to pass
z:ry	to cause to pass
bxin	to be black
abx:an	black (ms)
tqm:r	she gambled
in:a	he said
tas:asta	this hour (now)

## Phonology

---

škr	to praise
amgr	sickle
asg:as	year
iqma	mouths
taqdurt	a pot
tiqdar	pots
idb:ayn	dyers (m)
tiq:b:a	djellabas
urt:inyi	he did not kill her
sbahlxir	good morning
bismil:ah	in the name of God
d:ʕam	couscous
lbiban	the doors
ʕum	to swim
γus	to burn
ibyd	he hated
nfh	to sniff tobacco
nzy	to pull
xzn	to store, to hide
ʕdl	to repair
hš:m	to govern
hm:m	to bathe
sl:k	to give a reasonable price
γl:f	to wrap
ʕq:d	to tie

ⵎⵔⵉⵔ	to torture
ⵍⵎⵉⵏ	to steal
ⵓⵔⵉⵔ	to decide
ⵓⵎⵉⵔ	to gamble
ⵍⵎⵉⵔ	to go back
ⵓⵔⵉⵔ	to butcher
ⵓⵔⵉⵔ	to miss
ⵓⵔⵉⵔ	he insulted
ⵓⵔⵉⵔ	she praised
ⵓⵔⵉⵔ	he scratched
ⵓⵔⵉⵔ	we ploughed

## 2. Vowels

Tamazight has three vowels: / i u a / (see Table 3). Allophones of the three vowels are shown in Table 4. The marking convention shown in Table 4 is to be understood as follows:

[ + ] denotes the presence of a particular feature (e.g. [ + front ] or [ + high ] ) for a certain segment.

	Front	Central	Back
High	i		u
Low		a	

Table 3 - Tamazight Vowels

	i	ɨ	r, e	u	ʊ, o	æ	æ̣	a
Front	+		+ +			+		
Centralized		+					+	
Back				+	+ +			+
High	+	+		+				
Lowered			+ +		+ +			
Low						+	+	+

Table 4 - Tamazight Vowel Allophones

i	as in English "beat", "eat", "feet"
ɨ	does not commonly occur in English
r	as in English "bit", "fit"
e	similar to the initial vowel part of the English words "eight", "ace"
u	as in English "food", "boot", "sue"
ʊ	as in English "book", "wood"
o	roughly as in English "coat"
æ	as in English "sat", "hat", "mat"
æ̣	does not commonly occur in English but corresponds roughly to vowel in "cut"
a	corresponds roughly to the English vowel in "father"

Henceforth the following notations will be used:

C = / b f t d s z š ž k g q /

H = / h ḥ ɛ w y /

L = / l r m n /

X = C, H, and L

γ, x = / γ x /

X = C, H, L, γ, and x

V = / a i u /

Diacritics /./ and /:/ may be added and thus give, for example, /C/ and /C:/ representing /t/ and /t:/ respectively.

In the formulation of phonological rules the following conventions are used:

A → B

A is rewritten as (or replaced by) B

(A)B or B(A)

A is optionally present, B is

obligatorily present

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A \\ B \end{array} \right\}$

Either A or B occurs in this position

A → B/\_\_\_\_C

A is rewritten as B before C

A → B/C\_\_\_\_\_

A is rewritten as B after C

Vowel Allophones (# denotes word boundary, e.g. /-a#/ and /#a-/ means final and initial /a/ respectively)

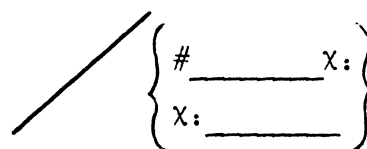
1. /i/ → [i]

/ { # \_\_\_\_\_ x }  
                                   { x \_\_\_\_\_ x }



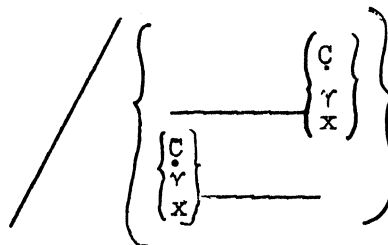
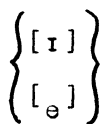
ili	to exist
ini	to say
iri	to want
arid	to be washed
sdid	to be thin
wsir	to be old
tiqbilin	tribes

2. /i/ → [ɨ]



id:a	he went
td:id	you went
il:a	it (m) is
ts:id	you (s) made the bed
q:is	to tell stories
lq:ist	a story

3. /i/



d:iqs	to burst out
mziy	be small
smid	to be cold

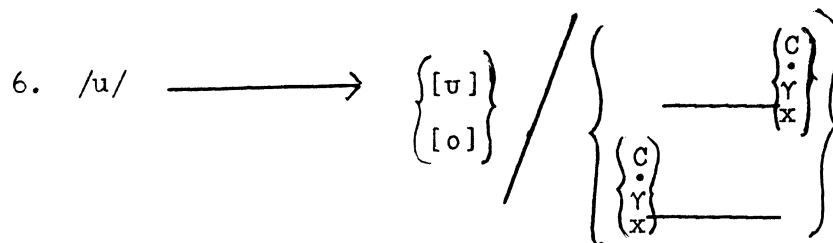
šđin	to be short
tik:it	cutting grass
iqm:r	he gambled
zwiγ	to be red
bxin	to be black
iγla	it is expensive
ixla	it is ruined
tiq:b:a	djellabas

4. /i/ → [iy] / X \_\_\_\_\_ #

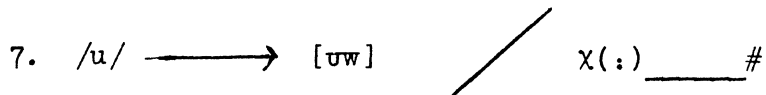
is:fṛhi	he made me happy
is:fhmi	he made me understand
iṣt:ri	he made me late

5. /u/ → [u] / { # \_\_\_\_\_ X }  
 { X(:) \_\_\_\_\_ X }

umsγ	I painted
usiγ	I carried
ufiγ	I found
luliγ	I was born
idrus	it (m) is little
ifs:us	it (m) is light
igz:ul	he is short
ilum	he blamed
luq:r	respect



iḍuṛ	he turned
at:bḍud	you (s) will share
uzḍṛ	I stretched
iḡus	it is burnt
ixulf	it is different
adimḡur	he will grow up
lxuḍrṭ	vegetables



bdu	to begin
bnu	to build
ḍsu	to pray for
d:u	to go
f:u	to dawn
k:u	to cut grass

8. /a/ → [æ]

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \# \text{ \_\_\_\_\_\_ } \chi(:) \\ \chi(:) \text{ \_\_\_\_\_\_ } \chi \end{array} \right\}$

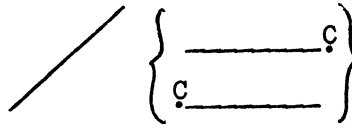
azn	to send
af	to find
ar	to empty
as:	to tie
ħasb	to count
safr	to travel
sal	to ask
na:γ	to fight
š:ar	to share
ħarz	to forbid
aqsah	solidity

9. /a/ → [ä]

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \chi(:) \text{ \_\_\_\_\_\_ } \# \end{array} \right\}$

da	here
la	no
fa	to yawn
hn:a	to be peaceful
hr:a	to tickle
sqsa	to ask

10. /a/ → [a]



ḥaḍr	to be present
taḥb	to demand
xsa	to be necessary
ʕad:r	to meet
ibda	he shared

### 3. Phonological Structure of Words in Tamazight

If /X/ is followed by /X/ without an intervening /V/, there is a predictable transition. Transition between /X/ and /X/ is heard as Vocalic and is represented here by a superscript schwa [<sup>ə</sup>] to show that it is a phonetic element (schwa occurs as the first speech sound formation in English "about" or as the last speech sound formation in English "sofa"). Thus a word such as /frḥγ/ "I was happy" is phonetically [<sup>ə</sup>f<sup>ə</sup>rh<sup>ə</sup>γ#] consisting of two syllables. [<sup>ə</sup>] is realized as [ɪ] before front consonants (e.g. / b t d ... /) and as [ə] before back consonants (e.g. / k x ... /). It is also heard as voiced before voiced consonants (e.g. / b g ... /) and as voiceless before voiceless consonants (e.g. / f t ... /).

The rules governing the predictability of [<sup>ə</sup>] may be stated as follows:

1. / #X(:)# /  $\longrightarrow$  [#<sup>o</sup>X(:)#] /g/ [g<sup>o</sup>] 'to be, to do'  
 /š/ [š<sup>o</sup>] 'to give'  
 /g:/ [g:<sup>o</sup>] 'to knead'  
 /k:/ [k:<sup>o</sup>] 'to pass'

2. / #X X(;)# /  $\longrightarrow$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \left[ \#X_1^o X_2^o (\cdot) \# \right] / X_1 \text{ is not L} \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \left[ \#X_1^o X_2^o \# \right] \\ \left[ \#X_1^o X_2^o \# \right] \end{array} \right\} / X_1 \text{ is L} \end{array} \right.$	/tš/	[tš <sup>o</sup> s]	'to laugh'
	/šl/	[š <sup>o</sup> l]	'to spend a day'
	/bd:/	[b <sup>o</sup> d:]	'to stand up'
	/ns/	[n <sup>o</sup> s]	'to spend the night'
		[n <sup>o</sup> s]	
	/ls/	[l <sup>o</sup> s]	'to get dressed'
		[l <sup>o</sup> s]	

3. / #X<sub>1</sub>:X<sub>2</sub># /  $\longrightarrow$  [#<sup>o</sup>X<sub>1</sub>:<sup>o</sup>X<sub>2</sub>#]

/f:r/	[f: <sup>o</sup> r]	'to hide'
/f:γ/	[f: <sup>o</sup> γ]	'to go out'
/l:m/	[l: <sup>o</sup> m]	'to spin'

4. / #X<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub># /  $\longrightarrow$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \left[ \#X_1^o X_2^o X_3^o \# \right] / X_1 X_2 \text{ are not } \begin{cases} L \\ H \end{cases} \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \left[ \#X_1^o X_2^o X_3^o \# \right] \\ \left[ X_1^o X_2^o X_3^o \right] \end{array} \right\} / \begin{matrix} X_1 \\ X_3 \end{matrix} \text{ is } \begin{cases} L \\ H \end{cases} \end{array} \right.$	/xdm/	[xd <sup>o</sup> m]	'to work'
	/dbγ/	[db <sup>o</sup> γ]	'to dye'
	/xd <sup>o</sup> /	[xd <sup>o</sup> ]	'to deceive'
	/z <sup>o</sup> f/	[z <sup>o</sup> f]	'to get mad'
	/hdm/	[h <sup>o</sup> d <sup>o</sup> m]	'to demolish'
		[h <sup>o</sup> d <sup>o</sup> m]	
	/hbl/	[h <sup>o</sup> b <sup>o</sup> l]	'to become silly'
		[h <sup>o</sup> b <sup>o</sup> l]	

Phonology

---

$\left[ \#X_1 \overset{\ominus}{X}_2 \overset{\ominus}{X}_3 \right] / X_2 X_3 = \begin{cases} L \\ H \end{cases}$	/nfh/	[ <sup>⊖</sup> nf <sup>⊖</sup> h]	'to sniff tobacco'	
			[n <sup>⊖</sup> f <sup>⊖</sup> h]	
	/ʕdl/	[ <sup>⊖</sup> ʕd <sup>⊖</sup> l]	'to repair'	
			[ʕ <sup>⊖</sup> d <sup>⊖</sup> l]	
	/dmn/	[d <sup>⊖</sup> m <sup>⊖</sup> n]	'to guarantee'	
	/fhm/	[f <sup>⊖</sup> h <sup>⊖</sup> m]	'to understand'	
	/frh/	[f <sup>⊖</sup> r <sup>⊖</sup> h]	'to be happy'	

5. / #X<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub># / → [ #X<sub>1</sub><sup>⊖</sup>X<sub>2</sub><sup>⊖</sup>X<sub>3</sub># ]
- |        |                                    |                                   |
|--------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| /fs:r/ | [f <sup>⊖</sup> s: <sup>⊖</sup> r] | 'to spread'                       |
| /sɔ:d/ | [s <sup>⊖</sup> n: <sup>⊖</sup> d] | 'to lean against'                 |
| /xm:m/ | [x <sup>⊖</sup> m: <sup>⊖</sup> m] | 'to think'                        |
| /wk:l/ | [w <sup>⊖</sup> k: <sup>⊖</sup> l] | 'to appoint as<br>representative' |

The postulation of the phonetic element shown above, i.e. [⊖], supports the transcription of the units of this book where three (or more) non-vocalic segments appear next to each other: e.g., /tbr:mt/ "you (fp) turned" which is here represented phonetically as [tb<sup>⊖</sup>r:<sup>⊖</sup>m<sup>⊖</sup>nt].

Words with the structure XVX, VXX, or XV consist of one syllable: e.g., /sal/ "to ask", /ʕib/ "to become white-haired", /ʕum/ "to swim", /af/ "to find", /amz/ "to take", /fa/ "to yawn". Words consisting of vowels and consonants follow the same rules shown above: e.g., /dat:ħaħar/ "she is present" is phonetically [dat:<sup>⊖</sup>ħaħar] i.e. consists of three syllables; /ʕaħ:r/ "to meet" has two syllables [ʕaħ:<sup>⊖</sup>r]. Note that /t:/ and /d:/ are not represented as [<sup>⊖</sup>t:] and [<sup>⊖</sup>d:] as is stated above since they are preceded by a vowel.

#### 4. Stress

Word stress in Tamazight is a non-contrastive feature. The occurrence of word stress is predictable: primary stress falls on the last vowel of the word (i.e. /V/ or [ <sup>◌</sup> ]).

##### Examples:

/sál/	'to ask'
/ʕáwn/	'to help'
/ṣ̌k:á/	'to doubt'
/slíl/	'to rinse'
/ʕúm/	'to swim'
/ámz/	'to take'
/áf/	'to find'
/rár/	'to return'
/bdú/	'to begin'
/adiníʔ/	'I will say'
/ndawá/	'we cured'
/tfafád/	'you (s) woke up'
/isál/	'he asked'
/dayt:ħaǧár/	'he is present'

The above statement applies to words that phonemically do not contain a vowel /V/. As stated above, /bd:/ is phonetically [b<sup>◌</sup>d:], /frħ/ is phonetically [fr<sup>◌</sup>ħ] and /fs:r/ is phonetically [f<sup>◌</sup>s:<sup>◌</sup>r]. In these cases, word primary stress is on the [ <sup>◌</sup> ] of the last syllable.



Examples:

/bd:/	[b <sup>é</sup> d:]	'to stand up'
/ls/	[l <sup>é</sup> s]	'to dress'
	[ <sup>é</sup> ls]	
/f:r/	[ <sup>é</sup> f: <sup>é</sup> r]	'to hide'
/frh/	[fr <sup>é</sup> h]	'to be happy'
/ndr/	[n <sup>é</sup> d <sup>é</sup> r]	'to moan'
/fs:r/	[f <sup>é</sup> s: <sup>é</sup> r]	'to explain'
/tfs:rnt/	[t <sup>é</sup> f <sup>é</sup> s: <sup>é</sup> r <sup>é</sup> nt]	'you (fp) explained'

5. Review Drill

mṛḥba	welcome
mṛḥba acli	welcome Aly
is:fṛḥi	he made me happy
is:fṛḥi muha	Muha made me happy
is:ṭ:ṛi	he made me late
is:ṭ:ṛi scid	Said made me late
sbahlxiṛ	good morning
sbahlxiṛ ahd:u	good morning, Haddou
safi	finished
wax:a	all right
tfs:rnt	you (fp) explained
tšm:lṇt	you (fp) finished
tbq̣ant	you (fp) divided
tfhṃnt	you (fp) understood
krẓnt	they (f) plowed

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

škrnt	they (f) praised
tqm:rnt	you (fp) gambled
b:a	my father
dat:d:unt	they (f) are going
id:a	he went
is id:a muħa?	Did Muħa go?
la. urid:i.	No, he did not go.
y:ih, id:a.	Yes, he went.
mani muħa?	Where is Muħa?
id:a yr s:uq:.	He went to the market
id:a yr st:is.	He went to his aunt's.
id:a yr tad:art nsm:is.	He went to his uncle's house.
id:a yr tad:art	He went to his cousin's house.
nmm:is nsm:is	
mani rħ:u?	Where is Rehho?
urs:iny.	I don't know.
td:a fadma yr igran.	Fadma went to the fields.
s:ny itmaziyt	I speak Berber.
urs:iny tafransist.	I don't speak French.
s:ny itacrabt.	I speak Arabic.
is:n itacrabt.	He speaks Arabic.
ts:n itmaziyt	She speaks Berber.
is ts:nd itmaziyt?	Do you speak Berber?
iwa šwi uxlaš:.	Some, a little.

6. Laboratory Exercises

These exercises are on tape in the language laboratory. For each pair of words given, choose the word in which the required sound for that exercise is heard and write the corresponding number for the word chosen. For example, if an exercise calls for distinguishing a tense from a non-tense (lax) sound, the student should designate which of the two words contains the tense sound and write the letter of that word, e.g.,

1-a bab

1-b b:as

The correct answer is 1-b.

- A. Distinguish between tense and lax sounds, writing down the number of the word containing the tense sound.
- B. Distinguish between velarized and non-velarized sounds writing down the number of the word containing the velarized sound.
- C. Distinguish between labialized and non-labialized sounds, writing down the number of the words containing the labialized sound.
- D. Write down the numbers of the words which contain the sound /k/.
- E. Write down the numbers of the words which contain the sound /g/.

- F. Write down the numbers of the words containing the sound /ḥ/.
- G. Write down the numbers of the words containing the sound /x/.
- H. Write down the numbers of the words that contain the sound /h/.
- I. Write the numbers of the words containing the sound /ɣ/.
- J. Write the numbers of the words containing the sound /ʕ/.



## II. Texts (Ayt Ayache)

Unit I

---

1.1 Greetings

s:alamuɔlik:um . Hello. (to a man by a man)  
 ɔlik:ums:alam . R. (R = response to) Hello.

\* \* \*

l:ah iɔawn . Hello. (to or by a woman)  
 l:aysl:m . R. Hello

\* \* \*

sbahlxir . Good morning.  
 sbahlxir . R. Good morning.

\* \* \*

mslxir . Good evening.  
 mslxir . R. Good evening.

Such greetings, borrowed from Arabic, as the above could also be shown as:

s:alamu ɔlikum	Hello
ɔlikum s:alam	Hello
l:ah iɔawn	Hello
l:a ysl:m	Hello
sbah lxir	Good morning
ms lxir	Good evening

where:

s:alam	peace (<Arabic)
ɔlikum	with (on) you (<Ar.)
l:ah	God (<Ar.)
ɔawn	to help
iɔawn	he helped
sl:m	to greet
isl:m (->/ysl:m/ after vowel)	he greeted
sbah	morning (<Ar.)
lxir	good (<Ar.)
ms	evening (<Ar.)

\* \* \*

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

ns ylman .	Good night. (to m.s. or f.s.)
mun dlman .	R. to the above
ns	to spend the night
y	in
lman	peace
mun	to accompany
d	with, and
nsat ylman .	Good night. (to m.p.)
nsint ylman .	Good night. (to f.p.)
tmunm dlman .	R. (to m.p.)
tmunnt dlman .	R. (to f.p.)
* * *	
l:ayhn:ik: .	Goodbye. (to m.s.)
tamanil:ah .	R. Goodbye.
hn:a	to give peace
l:ayn:ik:m .	Goodbye. (to f.s.)
l:ayhn:ik:n .	Goodbye. (to m.p.)
l:ayhn:ik:nt .	Goodbye. (to f.p.)
* * *	
maš iga lhal ?	How are you (m.s.) ?
ma ?	what?
-š	to you (m.s.)
g	to do
iga	he or it (m.) did
lhal (m)	the weather
mam iga lhal ?	How are you (f.s.)?
mas iga lhal ?	How is he/she?
mawn iga lhal ?	How are you (m.p.)?
maknt iga lhal ?	How are you (f.p.)?
masn iga lhal ?	How are they (m.)?
masnt iga lhal ?	How are they (f.)?
labas .	Fine.
lhmdul:ah .	Fine.
labas lhmdul:ah .	Fine.
nhmd irb:i .	Fine.
labas nhmd irb:i tas:asta .	Fine.



Unit I

hmd	to praise
nhmd	we praise
rb:i	God
irb:i	to God
l:ah	God
tas:a'ta	this hour (now)

\* \* \*

may t'nid ?	How are you (m.f.s.)?
enu	to undergo
t'nid	you (s.) undergo
may ?	what?
mag:ena ? (<may i'na)	How is he?
<u>Note</u> :/-y# + #i-/>/-g:-/	
may t'na ?	How is she?
may t'nam ?	How are you (m.p.)?
may t'nant ?	How are you (f.p.)?
may enan ?	How are they (m.)?
may enant ?	How are they (f.)?
labas t'nid lxir .	Fine. (to m.f.s.)
labas t'nam lxir .	Fine. (to m.p.)
labas t'nant lxir .	Fine. (to f.p.)

\* \* \*

maš tga s:aht ?	How are you (m.s.)?
s:aht (f)	health
mam tga s:aht ?	How are you (f.s.)?
mas tga s:aht ?	How is he/she?
mawn tga s:aht ?	How are you (m.p.)?
maknt tga s:aht ?	How are you (f.p.)?
masn tga s:aht ?	How are they (m.)?
masnt tga s:aht ?	How are they (f.)?
labas .	Fine.
labas nhmd irb:i .	Fine.
lhmdul:ah .	Fine

\* \* \*

labas yurš ?	How are you (m.)?
yur	at, to

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

labas γuṛm ?	How are you (f.)?
labas γurs ?	How is he/she?
labas γuṛγ ?	How are we?
labas γuṛun ?	How are you (m.p.)?
labas γuṛknt ?	How are you (f.p.)?
labas γursn ?	How are they (m.)?
labas γursnt ?	How are they (f.)?
lḥmdul:ah .	Fine.
* * *	
yak: labas ?	How are you (m.s.p.)?
yak: ~ yaš	question introducer.
yam labas ?	How are you (f.s.p.)?
nḥmd iṛb:i .	Fine
* * *	
bixir ?	How are you?
	(Are you fine?)
labas bixir uɣlaxir .	Fine. Fine.
* * *	
may ṭnid dubrid ?	How was your trip? (m.f.s.)
may	what
d	and, with
ubrid (<abrid) (m.)	road
may ṭnam dubrid ?	How was your trip (m.p.)?
may ṭnant dubrid ?	How was your trip (f.p.)?
labas ṭnid lxir .	Fine.
* * *	
lwašun labas ?	How is the family?
mani lwašun id: labas ?	How is the family?
lwašun	children
mani	where?
id:	question particle
labas adγifṣ̌isal lxir .	Fine.
γif	on
-ṣ̌	pronomial affix 'you' (m.s.) object
sal	to ask
ad-	future tense particle

Unit I

adʔifšisal

he will ask about you

NOTE: Such verbal structures as the above are here shown as one word.

\* \* \*

manikn kul: id: labas ?

How are you (m.) all?

-kn

you (m.p.) (obj.)

-knt

you (f.p.) (obj.)

-kul:

all

labas nhmd irb:i .

Fine.

\* \* \*

mismnš ?

What is your name? (m.s.)

ism

name

misminw ?

What is my name?

mismnš ?

What is your name (m.s.)?

mismn:m ?

What is your name (f.s.)?

mismns ?

What is his/her name?

mismn:γ ?

What are our names?

mismn:un ?

What are your names (m.p.)?

mismn:knt ?

What are your names (f.p.)?

mismnsn ?

What are their names? (m.)

mismnsnt ?

What are their names (f.)?

muha .

Proper name (m.)

fadma .

Proper name (f.)

\* \* \*

ma zy tgid ?

Where are you from?

zy

from

g

to be, to do

tgid

you are

ma zy giγ ?

Where am I from ?

ma zy tgid ?

Where are you (m.f.s.) from?

ma zy iga ?

Where is he from?

ma zy tga ?

Where is she from?

ma zy nga ?

Where are we from?

ma zy tgam ?

Where are you (m.p.) from?

ma zy tgant ?

Where are you (f.p.) from?

ma zy gan ?

Where are they (m.) from?

ma zy gant ?

Where are they (f.) from?

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

zy ayt ɣy:aš .	From the tribe of Ayt Ayache.
zy ayt hdid:u .	From the tribe of Ayt Hdidou.
zy ayt mgil: .	From the tribe of Ayt Mguild.
zy ayt ihya .	From the tribe of Ayt Yahia.
zy maṣr .	From Egypt.
zy lmuṛib .	From Morocco.
zy frans .	From France.
zy malik:an .	From America.
aṣrab ay giɣ .	I am an Arab.
arumy ay giɣ .	I am a Christian (European).
anslm ay giɣ .	I am a Moslem.
amaziy ay giɣ .	I am a Berber.

g	to be, to do
giɣ	I am
ay	who, that

\* \* \*

ma zy tgid ?	Where are you from?
zy ayt ɣy:aš .	I am from the tribe of Ayt Ayache.
mat:a yɣrm ?	Which village?
ayt bniš:u .	From the village of Ben Ichou.

mat:a	which
iɣrm (m.)	village

\* \* \*

may tzdɣd ?	Where do you live?
ayt bniš:u .	In the village of Ben Ichou.

zdɣ	to live
tzdɣd	you lived

\* \* \*

šhal yləmrnš ?	How old are you?
tlatin ɣam .	Thirty years.
ɣšrin ɣam .	Twenty years.
ləmrinw rḃəa wlatin ɣam .	I am thirty-four years old.
ɣuri xmsa wxmsin ɣam .	I am fifty-five years old.

Unit I

šhal	how many, how much
l <sup>o</sup> mr	age
-nš	your (of you)
tlatin	thirty
šam	year (occurs only in the environment of thirty years old, etc.)
-inw	my
rbca	four
w-	and
γuri	I have
xmsa	five
xmsin	fifty

\* \* \*

istiwld ?	Are you married?
y:ih , iwly .	I am married.
la , uriwily ša .	I am not married.
awl	to marry
is	yes or no question introducer
y:ih	yes
la	no
iwly	I am married
ur-	negative particle
ša	some

\* \* \*

isγurš lwašun ?	Do you have children?
isγurš ša l:wašun ?	Do you have some children?
is	yes or no question introducer
γurš	you have
lwašun	children
ša	some
ša l:wašun (<sa + n + lwašun)	some children (lit. some of children)
la , url:in ša l:wašun .	No, I do not have children.
ili	to be
l:in	they are
ur-	negative particle

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

y:ih , γuri yul l'il .	Yes, I have a boy.
yun	one (m.) (yun -> yul/-l-)
l'il	boy
yul l'il	one boy (yun l'il)
y:ih , γuri yut trbat: .	Yes, I have a girl.
yut	one (f.)
tarbat: (>trbat:)	girl (in construct with numeral)
y:ih , γuri yul l'il dyut trbat: .	Yes, I have a boy and a girl.
y:ih , γuri si yšir:an .	Yes, I have two boys.
sin	two (m.)
išir:an	boys
sin išir:an-----> siyšir:an	
y:ih , γuri snat ntšir:atin .	Yes, I have two girls.
snat	two (f.)
n	of
tišir:atin-----> tšir:atin	girls (after a numeral)
y:ih , γuri šrad išir:an .	Yes, I have three boys.
y:ih , γuri šrat: ntšir:atin .	Yes, I have three girls.
šrad	three (m.)
šrat:	three (f.)

\* \* \*

mismnsnt ?	What are their names (f.p.)?
fadma , iša , dmimuna .	three proper names.
šhal ylmrnsnt ?	How old are they?
fadma γurs ts snin ,	Fadma is nine years old.
iša γurs sb snin ,	Aisha is seven years old.
mimuna γurs xms snin .	Mimuna is five years old.
γurs	he has, she has
ts a	nine
sb a	seven
xmsa	five
snin	years

\* \* \*

mrhba .	Welcome. (said by a host).
irhbaš lxir .	R. (to m.s.)

Unit I

---

irħbam lxir .	to f.s.	
irħbawn lxir .	to m.p.	
irħbaknt lxir .	to f.p.	
* * *		
ṣah:a .		Thank you.
bla aźmil .		Don't mention it.
uraš giṛ aźmil .		Don't mention it.
bla		without
aźmil		favor
ur-		negative particle
-aš		to you (m.s.)
g		to be, to do.
giṛ		I did.
* * *		
l:a yž'ol lbarak:a .		a thank you expression said to your host after tea or a meal.
igaš ṣ:aht .		R. (to m.s.)
lbarak:a		blessing
g		to be, to do
iga		he did
-š		to you
ṣ:aht		health
igam ṣ:aht .		to (f.s.)
igawn ṣ:aht .		to (m.p.)
igaknt ṣ:aht .		to (f.p.)
* * *		
ħašaš .		a restricted thank you expression said for ex- ample when someone pours water for you to wash your hands before or after dinner.
ʕzk:l:ah .		Don't mention it.
ħašaš		to (m.s.)
ħašam		to (f.s.)
ħašawn		to (m.p.)
ħašaknt		to (f.p.)
* * *		

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

tanbaršt: .	Congratulations.
tanbaršt: daʕr:im .	Congratulations on the boy.
tanbaršt: t:ad:art .	Congratulations on the house.
tanbaršt: t:aʕr:imt .	Congratulations on the girl.
tanbaršt: t:afunast .	Congratulations on the cow.
d	(here)=on
/d/---> /t/	(assimilation to following /t/)
* * *	
samhi .	Excuse me.
samh	to forgive
-i	me
samhi .	Excuse me.
samhas .	Excuse him/her.
samhay .	Excuse us.
samhasn .	Excuse them. (m.)
samhasnt .	Excuse them. (f.)
* * *	
bl:ʕas s:lām imuha .	Greet Muha for me.
bl:ʕ	to make reach
-as	to him
s:lām	peace - greeting
i-	to
ɣlina wɣlik: s:lām .	R. (to the above)
* * *	
ibl:ʕašd husa s:lām .	Husa greets you.
ibl:ʕ	he greets
-aš	to you
-d	proximity particle
ɣlina wɣlik: s:lām .	R. (to the above)
* * *	
la .	No.
lalal .	No.
uhu .	No.
y:iḥ .	Yes.



Unit I

---

nʕam .		Yes, in response to someone calling your name.
	* * *	
nšaʕl:ah .		If God wills.
	* * *	
wax:a .		All right.
	* * *	
barak:a .		Enough.
	* * *	
şafi .		Finished, o.k., all right.
	* * *	

1.2. Grammar, Drills, Additional Phrases and Expressions.

A.	mism	inw	What is my name?
	mism	nš	What is your (m.s.) name?
	mism	n:m	What is your (f.s.) name?
	mism	ns	What is his/her name?
	mism	n:γ	What are our names?
	mism	n:un	What are your (m.p.) names?
	mism	n:knt	What are your (f.p.) names?
	mism	nsn	What are their (m.) names?
	mism	nsnt	What are their (f.) names?

B. Some Proper Names

male:	ʕli muħa ʕq:a ħusa ħd:u lħusayn nbarš rh:u mimun lbašir	female:	faħma ʕiša rabħa lʕziza yamna mimuna ħad:a zhra sfly:a br:i
-------	--	---------	--

hmīdan  
hmad

qš:u  
rqiya

C. mazy tgid ?

zy ayt sy:aš

mat:a yrm ?

ayt bniš:u

Where are you from?

I am from the tribe of  
Ayt Ayache.

Which village?

From the village of Ben  
Ichou.

D. The Villages that Compose Ayt Ayache

ayt ilus:an

ayt tuyaš

ayt tma weli

ayt hadi

tabn isat:

ayt r:b

ayt bn eli

ayt eli w:l:a

ayt eli wyusf

š:rfa

ayt umyar

ayt sidi mr

ayt widn

iq:l:iyn

ayt bniš:u

ayt hmad

bud:r

tabn:l:at:

tat:h:ant

uxaž:a

bu n:has

ayt sidi buwmusa

E. yuri si yšir:an t:rbat:

yuri snat ntšir:atin dlail

I have two boys and  
a girl.

I have two girls and  
a boy.

Unit I

---

Yuri	I have
Yurš	you (m.s.) have
Yurm	you (f.s.) have
Yurs	he/she has
Yur	we have
Yurun	you (m.p.) have
Yurknt	you (f.p.) have
Yursn	they (m.) have
Yursnt	they (f.) have

	m.	f.
one	yun	yut
two	sin	snat
three	šrad	šrat:

	s.	p.
boy	lail	išir:an
girl	tarbat:	tišir:atin

Notice:

- d--->t/-t (-->t:) and, together with  
e.g. lail + d+ tarbat: -- >lail t:rbat:
- yun + lail --- >yul lail
- sin + išir:an ---> siyšir:an
- n = of
- trbat: and tšir:atin are apocopated forms of the nouns tarbat: and tišir:atin to which we will refer as "Construct State of the Noun"
- snat + n + tišir:atin ---> šnat ntšir:atin

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

F. ḥusa γurs sbε snin .

Husa is seven years old.  
(Husa has seven years).

Numerals (3 - 10)

tlata	(tlt)	3
rbεa	(rbε)	4
xmsa	(xms)	5
st:a	(st:)	6
sbεa	(sbε)	7
tmanyā	(tmn)	8
tsεa	(tsε)	9
εšra	(εšr)	10

The forms in parentheses are the ones used before /snin/ 'years': e.g., in the construct 'four years old' /rbε snin/.

G. amalik:ani ay giγ

I am an American.  
(American who I am).

	m.s.	f.s.	m.p.	f.p.
1 Berber	amaziγ	tamaziγt	imaziγn	timaziγin
2 Arab	aε rab	taε rabt	aε rabn	taε rabin
3 Moslem	anslm	tanslmt	inslmn	tinslmn
4 American	amalik:ani	tamalik:aniγt	imalik:aniγn	timalik:aniγn
5 European	arumy	tarumit	iγumin	tirumyγin
6 Jew	uday	tudayt	udayn	tudayin

Notice:

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| a. g                 | to be, to do                            |
| b. ay                | who                                     |
| c. y + i --->g or g: |   |
| ay iga --->ag:a      | he is, whom he is                       |
| may iga --->mag:a    | what is he? What is it (m)?             |
| may iεna --->mag:εna | How is he? (Lit: What does he undergo?) |

## Unit I

---

may tʰnid ---> may tʰnid How are you? (s.)  
[Notice that /mag:ʰna/ is transcribed as one  
word whereas /may tʰnid/ appears as two words]

d. giγ	I am
tgid	you (s) are
iga	he is
tga	she is
nga	we are
tgam	you are (m.p.)
tgant	you are (f.p.)
gan	they are (m)
gant	they are (f)

### H. Substitution Drills

1. mismns ? What is his name?  
Substitute in the position of "his" using "my, your (m.s.),  
their (m), her, their (f), your (f.s.)".
2. may tʰnam ? How are you (m.p.)?  
Substitute in the position of "you (m.p.)" using "he,  
they (m), you (f.p.), they (f)".
3. labas tʰnam lxir . I am fine. (to m.p.)  
Supply the same response as said to m.s., f.s., f.p.
4. mam tga s:aht ? How are you (f.s.)?  
Substitute in the position of "you (f.s.)" using "he,  
they (m), she, you (m.s.), you (f.p.), they (f), you  
(m.p.)".
5. nsat ylman . Good night. (to m.p.)  
Substitute directing the greeting to f.s., m.s., f.p.
6. l:ayhn:ik:m . Goodbye. (to f.s.)  
Substitute directing the greeting to m.p., m.s., f.p.

7. mazy tgid ?                        Where are you (m.s.) from?  
Substitute in the position of "you (m.s.)" using "I, he,  
we, they (m), you (f.s.), you (m.p.), they (f), she,  
you (f.p.)".
8. a<sup>◌</sup>rab ay giγ .                        I (m.) am an Arab.  
Substitute in the position of "I (m)" using "he, we,  
they (f), you (m.p.), she, they (m.), you (f.p.)"  
making the necessary changes.
9. γuri snat ntšir:atin dl◌il .        I have two girls and a  
   boy.  
Substitute in the position of "I" using "we, you (m.s.),  
she, you (f.s.)".
10. šhal yl◌mṛns ?                        How old is he?  
xms snin                                 (He is) five years (old).  
Substitute in the position of five in the second sentence  
using "six, ten, four, eight, seven".
11. amalik:ani ay giγ .                 I am an American.  
Substitute in the position of "American" using "Arab,  
Berber, European (m. and f.) for the third person plural  
making the necessary changes.
12. šhal l:wašun ay γurš ?              How many children do you  
   have?  
γuri snat ntšir:atin .                    I have two girls.  
Substitute in the position of the numeral in the above  
response using "four, three, five, six, one, eight".
13. ibl:γamd husa s:lām .                Husa greets you (f.s.).  
Form the following sentences:  
      Husa greets you (f.p.), Fadma greets you (m.s.),  
      Husa greets you (m.p.), Fadma greets them (f), Fadma greets  
      you (m.p.), Husa greets them (m.), Fadma greets you (f.p.).

1.3. Review Conversations

- A. husa- s:alamuṣlik:um aṣli .  
 ṣli- ṣlik:ums:alam .  
 husa- maš iga lhal ?  
 ṣli- labas lhmdul:ah . maš iga lhal ?  
 husa- labas nhmdirb:i . mani lwašun id: labas ?  
 ṣli- labas ahusa adṣifš isal lxir .  
 husa- yak: labas ṣurun kul: ?  
 ṣli- labas ahusa .  
 husa- iwa l:ayhn:ik: .  
 ṣli- tamanil:ah .
- B. hmidan- mismnš ?  
 muha- muha wṣl:a .  
 hmidan- mazy tgid amuha ?  
 muha- zy ayt ṣy:aš .  
 hmidan- mat:a ṣṣrm ?  
 muha- ayt sidi buwmusa .
- C. fadma- mismn:m ?  
 ṣiša- ṣiša .  
 fadma- šhal ylemrn:m ?  
 ṣiša- ṣšrin sam .  
 fadma- istiwld ?  
 ṣiša- y:ih .  
 fadma- is ṣurm ša l:wašun ?  
 ṣiša- y:ih , ṣuri si yšir:an .  
 fadma- mazy tgid ?  
 ṣiša- zy ayt ihya .  
 fadma- mat:a ṣṣrm ?  
 ṣiša- masu .
- D. mimuna- iwa mrhba , mrhba .  
 nbarš- irhbam lxir .  
 mimuna- mani lwašun id: labas ?  
 nbarš- labas adṣifm isal lxir amimuna .

mimuna- tanbaršt: t:ad:art .  
nbarš- l:a ybark:fik:m .

1.4 Sentences for Practice

(a) Good morning, rabha. (b) Good morning, viša. (a) How are you? (b) Fine. (a) How is the family? (b) Fine.

(c) Hello. (d) Hello. (c) What is your name? (d) George. (c) Do you have children? (d) Yes, I have two boys and a girl. (c) Where are you from? (d) I am an American.

(e) Good evening. (f) Good evening. (e) How are you all? (f) Fine. (e) Congratulations on the new house. (f) Thank you.

(g) Hello. (h) Hello. (g) What is your name? (h) Marie. (g) Where are you from? (h) I am from France. (g) Do you have children? (h) Yes, I have two boys. (g) What are their names? (h) Michel and Jean. (g) How old are they? (h) Michel is 7 years old and Jean is 5 years old (g) Goodbye. (h) Goodbye.

(i) How are you? (j) Fine. (i) How is the family? (j) Fine. (i) What is her name? (referring to another girl). (j) Fadma. (i) Where is she from? (j) She is from Beni Mguild. (i) How old is she? (j) She is 9.

(k) Hello. (l) Hello. (k) What is your name? (l) Fadma. (k) Where are you from? (l) I am from Egypt. (k) Are you married? (l) No. I am not married. (k) Goodbye. (l) Goodbye.

(m) Good evening. (n) Good evening. (m) How are you all? (n) Fine. (m) Congratulations on the new born baby. (n) Thank you. (m) Thank you (after having tea). (n) Don't mention it. (m) Good night. (n) Good night.



Unit I

---

1.5 Supply the missing responses in the following conversations.

A. muḥa- s:alamuɛlik:um .  
ḥusa- \_\_\_\_\_  
muḥa- maš iga lḥal ?  
ḥusa- \_\_\_\_\_  
muḥa- mani lwašun id: labas ?  
ḥusa- \_\_\_\_\_  
muḥa- iwa l:ayhn:ik: .  
ḥusa- \_\_\_\_\_

B. fadma- šbahlxir .  
ɛiša- \_\_\_\_\_  
fadma- mam iga lḥal ?  
ɛiša- \_\_\_\_\_  
fadma- tanbaršt: daɛr:im .  
ɛiša- \_\_\_\_\_

C. ɛli- may tɛnid dubrid .  
stranger- \_\_\_\_\_  
ɛli- mazy tgid ?  
stranger- \_\_\_\_\_  
ɛli- is ɣurš ša l:wašun ?  
stranger- \_\_\_\_\_  
ɛli- šḥal ?  
stranger- \_\_\_\_\_  
ɛli- šḥal ylɛmrns ?  
stranger- \_\_\_\_\_  
ɛli- mismnš ?  
stranger- \_\_\_\_\_  
ɛli- iwa mrḥba mrḥba .  
stranger- \_\_\_\_\_  
stranger- l:a yžɛ l lbarak:a .  
ɛli- \_\_\_\_\_  
stranger- iwa l:a ynh:ik: .  
ɛli- \_\_\_\_\_

- D.    ⵎⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ    ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ .  
mimuna- \_\_\_\_\_  
ⵎⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ    ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ ?  
mimuna- \_\_\_\_\_  
ⵎⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ    ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ ?  
mimuna- \_\_\_\_\_  
ⵎⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ    ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ .  
mimuna- \_\_\_\_\_  
ⵎⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ    ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ ⵙⵉⵎⵓⵏⵏ .  
mimuna- \_\_\_\_\_

Unit 2

2.1 s:uq: nbumya .

Market Day in Boumia.

	<u>muha</u>	
sbahlxir acli . a-		Good morning, Aly. vocative particle
	<u>cli</u>	
sbahlxir may tenid ?		Good morning. How are you?
	<u>muha</u>	
labas , tenid lxir . maš tga s:aht ?		Fine, thank you. How are you?
	<u>cli</u>	
labas , lhmdul:ah . mani lwašun id: labas ?		Fine, thank you. How is your family?
	<u>muha</u>	
labas , adyifšisal lxir acli . manikn kul: id: labas ?		Fine. How are you all?
	<u>cli</u>	
labas nhmd irb:i . ma datz:nzad dma dats:ayd ?		Fine. What are you selling and what are you buying?
z:nz		to sell
datz:nzad		you are selling (m.s.)
sy		to buy
dats:ayd		you buy (m.s.)
	<u>muha</u>	
iwiyd ša ymndi dša w:l:i .		I brought some grain and some sheep.
išg: may t:iwid ?		And what did you bring?
šg:		you (m.s.)
i		and (utterance initial)
awy		to bring
iwiyd		I brought
imndi (m)		grain
ul:i (f)		sheep (p)
tixsi (f)		sheep (s)

t:iwid (>d+tiwid)	<u>cli</u>	you (s.) brought (nearer)
iwlɣd snat ntɔʒ:iyin .		I brought two calves.
mag:a s:uq: l:mal ?		How is the sheep market?
snat		two (f)
taɔʒ:iyt (f)		calf
tiɔʒ:iyin		calves
ag:a		he is (>/g/ 'to be, to do' /ay iga --->ag:a/
s:uq: (m)		the market
n--->l/---#l		of
lmal		sheep
l:mal		of sheep (>/nlmal/)
	<u>muha</u>	
iwa šwi uxlaš: ,		So so,
maša wiyṃndi izil .		but that of the grain is good.
mag:a wiyzyar: ?		How is the cow market?
iwa		here: 'well'
šwi		little
u~w		and
maša		but
izil (m)		good, nice
izyar: (m)		cattle (p)
azyr (m)		ox (s)
	<u>cli</u>	
iwa urix:i .		It is not bad.
ur-		negative particle (prefixed to verbs)
ix:a		he is bad.
	<u>muha</u>	
istfdrd mad tsuld ?		Have you eaten or not?
fdr		to take breakfast, to lunch
mad		or
tsuld		you (s) have not yet

<p>sulγ , imšin:a riγ add:uγ .</p> <p>sulγ imšin:a riγ d:u d:iγ ad- add:uγ</p>	<p><u>eli</u></p>	<p>No, I am just going to eat.</p> <p>I have not yet just about I wanted to go I went future prefix I will go</p>
--	-------------------	---

\* \* \*

<p>ag:n:k: sulγ altu .</p> <p>nga imšli γr ɤq:a ,</p> <p>mš trid at:d:ud .</p> <p>ag:d nk: imšli γr mš trid ad- at: d:ud (&lt; ad+t+d:u+d)</p>	<p><u>muha</u></p>	<p>Me, too. (I have not had breakfast, either)</p> <p>We (can) go (and) eat at Akka's if you want to.</p> <p>also (ag:d n:k---&gt;ag:n:k:)</p> <p>I lunch to if you wanted future particle you (m.s.) will go</p>
--	--------------------	---

<p>mand:yid ɤq:a ?</p> <p>mand:yid</p>	<p><u>eli</u></p>	<p>Which Akka is it?</p> <p>which (one of)?</p>
--	-------------------	---

<p>ɤq:a nayt qs:u .</p>	<p><u>muha</u></p>	<p>Akka of the family of Qssu.</p>
-------------------------	--------------------	------------------------------------

<p>wax:a .</p>	<p><u>eli</u></p>	<p>All right.</p>
----------------	-------------------	-------------------

<p>yal:ah .</p>	<p><u>muha</u></p>	<p>Let us go.</p>
-----------------	--------------------	-------------------

2.2 Additional Sentences, Phrases and Vocabulary.

A.

1. as: l:xmis ag:an s:uq: nbumya .  
Thursday is the market day in Boumia.
2. as: l:arbc ag:an s:uq: nayt ay:aš .  
Wednesday is the market day in Ayt Ayache.
3. as: l:hd ag:an s:uq: nmidlt .  
Sunday is the market day in Midelt.

B. mat:a laswaq: n:a γr dat:d:ud ?

What markets do you go to?

mat:a	what, which
laswaq: (m)	markets (p)
n:a	which
d:u	to go
da-	present tense, progressive particle
dat:d:ud	you go

-dantsw:aq bumya, dantsw:aq: aybalu ntsrdan, dantsw:aq: krušn, dantsw:aq: midlt, tunfiyt, idzr, iwa laswaq: n:ay iqr:bn nitni aya .

We go to the markets in Boumia, ... etc, markets which are near us.

sw:q	to go to the market
dantsw:aq	we go to the market
n:ay	which to us
qr:b	to be near
iqr:bn	they are near
nitni	they (m)
aya	this is

(underlined words are names of places where markets are held)

C. mag:an s:uq: nbumya ?

When is the market day in Boumia?

as: l:tnayn	Monday
as: l:tlata	Tuesday
as: l:arbc	Wednesday

Unit 2

---

as: l:xmis	Thursday
as: l:žimu a	Friday
as: ns:bt	Saturday
as: l:hđ	Sunday

Note: may igan----->mag:an

as: + n + ltnayn ---->/as: l:tnayn/

D. may tsyid ?

What did you buy?

d:ra	corn
irdn	wheat
timzin	barley
ibawn	beans
l:ds	lentils
lhimz	chick peas
ag:r:	flour, farina
s:k:r	sugar
atay	tea
n:˘na˘	mint
lq:hwa	coffee
lg:ayz~lbitrun	kerosene
g:ar:u	cigarettes
luq:id	matches
lxyar	cucumbers
xiz:u	carrots
tal:f:in	turnip
matiša	tomatoes
batata	potatoes
azalim	onions
t:uma	garlic
l:ubya	green beans
lk:rm	cabbage
tařsayt	squash
š:ifrun	califlower
tiflft	green pepper
z:itun	olives
t:f:ah	apples
lmšmas	apricot

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

lbrquq:	plums
lbanan	bananas
z:nbuɛ	oranges
s:itr̥un	lemons
r:m:an	pomegranates
adil	grapes
z:bib	raisins
buʷwida	pears
lxux	peaches
aft:ix	melon
d:l:ah	watermelon
tigni	dates
tamnt	honey
aɣrum	bread
aɣ:u~ lhlib	milk
udi	butter
z:it	oil
r:uz	rice
tisnt	salt
libzar	black pepper
š:awmiy:a	red pepper
lk:amun	cumin
tiglay (sg. taglayt)	eggs
aksum	meat
iful:usn	chickens
aslm (pl. islman)	fish
išdif (pl. išdifn)	rug
s:abun	soap
iduša	sandals
iburksn	shoes
atf:as	long shirt
r:st	turban
s:rwal	trousers
lq:amiža	shirt
taqb:ut	djellaba
azn:ar	cloak, cape



Unit 2

E. maγr td:id ?	Where are you going?
ma	what
γr	to
td:id	you go
d:iγ γr s:uq: .	I am going to the <u>market</u> .
d:iγ γr ɤari .	I am going to the <u>mountain</u> .
d:iγ γr tγbalut: .	I am going to the <u>spring</u> .
d:iγ γr tisirt .	I am going to the <u>mill</u> .
d:iγ γr tad:art .	I am going to the <u>house</u> .
d:iγ γr tmzgida .	I am going to the <u>mosque</u> .
d:iγ γr r:bad .	I am going to <u>Rabat</u> .
d:iγ s asif.	I am going to the <u>river</u> .
d:iγ s igran .	I am going to the <u>fields</u> .
d:iγ s anu .	I am going to the <u>well</u> .
d:iγ s inurar .	I am going to the <u>threshing grounds</u> .
d:iγ s amzil .	I am going to the <u>blacksmith</u> .
d:iγ s ahidus.	I am going to the <u>dance</u> .

Notice: The preposition "to" is /γr/ before consonants and /s/ before vowels. The convention adopted here is to transcribe prepositions such as /γr/ separate from the nouns that follow them, whereas prepositions such as /s/ are transcribed without space before following nouns:

e.g. /γr ɤari/ 'to the mountains'  
and /sasif/ 'to the river'

In the above examples /s/ is followed by a space before the noun just to illustrate the grammatical point in question.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

F. Introducing the Numerals 1 - 3

I. The Berber Numerals (1-3)

yun	one (m)
yut	one (f)
sin	two (m)
snat	two (f)
šrad	three (m)
šrat:	three (f)

2. The Arabic Numerals (1-3)

wahd	one
tnayn	two
tlata	three

Note:

- a) The Arabic numerals are used only for counting in order without naming things (they are invariable). The Berber numerals are used elsewhere.
- b) /tlata/ "three" appears in apocated form in the construction /tlt snin/ "three years" in response to either "How old is he?" or "How long were you in Spain?". It is also possible to render the same notion using the Berber numerals /šrad isg:asn/ "three years".
- c) The Arabic dual of the noun /ʕam/ "year" appears in the Berber usage /ʕamayn/ "two years" which is an alternative of /sin isg:asn/ "two years".
- d) Thus we have as an answer to "How old is he?" the following:

Arabic Loan	Berber	
---	asg:as	one year
ʕamayn	sin isg:asn	two years
tlt snin	šrad isg:asn	three years

G. Asking a native how he (or she) says a particular word in Berber:

- a) mism "...." stmaziṭ ?                      How do you say "... " in Berber?

Unit 2

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| b) mism uya stmaziṭ ?    | What do you call "this" in Berber?             |
| c) mism uyin: stmaziṭ ?  | What do you call "that" in Berber?             |
| d) sawd may tn:id .      | Repeat again (repeat what you said m.s., f.s.) |
| e) sawd saḥ:a            | Repeat, please.                                |
| f) urfhimṛ may tn:id .   | I don't understand what you are saying.        |
| g) siwl š:wi šwi saḥ:a . | Speak slowly, please.                          |
- 
- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| H. yaḷ:ah....              | Let us (general)                |
| k:raṽ....                  | let us (dual m.)                |
| k:ram....                  | let us (dual f.)                |
| k:rataṽ....                | let us (m.p.)                   |
| k:rntaṽ....                | let us (f.p.)                   |
| k:r                        | to stand up, get up             |
| yaḷ:ah answ atay .         | Let us <u>drink</u> tea.        |
| yaḷ:ah antš d:am .         | Let us <u>eat</u> couscous.     |
| yaḷ:ah ad:nawy s:k:r .     | Let us <u>bring</u> sugar.      |
| k:raṽ and:u ṽr s:uq: .     | Let us <u>go</u> to the market. |
| k:rntaṽ and:u ṽr tad:art . | Let us <u>go</u> home.          |
- 
- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| I.      ša            | some                                       |
| n-                    | of   |
| ša nt:f:ah            | some apples (lit: some of apples)          |
| /-n/                  | shows the following changes:               |
| -n --->-l before l -  | ša l:hlib (>ša nlhlib) 'some milk'         |
| -n --->-w: before a - | ša w:atay (>ša natay) 'some tea'           |
| -n --->-w before u -  | ša w:di (>ša nudi) 'some butter'           |
|                       | Notice: (/w+/u/-- /w:/)                    |
| -n --->-y before i -  | ša yful:usn (>ša niful:usn) 'some chicken' |
|                       | ( the i usually elides in this case)       |
| -n --->-n elsewhere   | šan z:nbu: 'some oranges'                  |
- Examples:
- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| k:raṽ ad:nawy ša nt:f:ah . | Let us go and bring some apples (dual m.). |
|----------------------------|--|

k:ram ad:nawy ša l:hlib .	Let us go and bring some milk (dual f.)
k:ratay ad:nawy ša nn:na .	Let us go and bring some mint (m.p.).
k:rntay ad:nawy ša w:atay .	Let us go and bring some tea (f.p.).

### 2.3 Practice Drills

#### A. Use /yal:ah/ to form the following sentences:

Let us drink tea.	Let us drink coffee.
Let us drink milk.	Let us eat apples.
Let us eat couscous.	Let us eat bread.
Let us eat butter.	Let us eat oranges.
Let us eat pears.	Let us eat melon.
Let us eat apricots.	Let us eat plums.
Let us eat bananas.	Let us eat meat.
Let us bring sugar.	Let us bring oil.
Let us bring soap.	Let us bring kerosene.
Let us bring eggs.	Let us go to the market.
Let us go to the well.	Let us go to the river.
Let us go to the mill.	Let us go to the spring.
Let us go to the mosque.	Let us go to Midelt.
Let us go to Rabat.	Let us go to the house.
Let us go to the fields.	Let us go to the threshing grounds.

#### B. Use the verb /k:r/ to form the following sentences:

Let us (m.d.) go and bring <u>some apples.</u>
Let us (f.d.) go and bring <u>some tea.</u>
Let us (f.p.) go and bring <u>some milk.</u>
Let us (m.p.) go and bring <u>some sugar.</u>
Let us (f.p.) go and bring <u>some soap.</u>
Let us (m.d.) go and bring <u>some oil.</u>
Let us (f.p.) go and bring <u>some meat.</u>
Let us (f.d.) go and bring <u>some kerosene.</u>
Let us (m.d.) go and bring <u>some onions.</u>
Let us (f.d.) go and bring <u>some oranges.</u>
Let us (m.d.) go and bring <u>some eggs.</u>
Let us (f.p.) go and bring <u>some butter.</u>

Unit 2

Let us (m.p.) go and bring some couscous.  
Let us (m.d.) go and bring some chicken.  
Let us (m.d.) go and bring some bread.

- C. šhal yləmrns ?                      How old is he?  
Answer: He is two years old.  
Substitute: three, four, one, five, ten, six, nine, eight, seven.
- D. mag:an s:uq: nmidlt ?                      When is the market day in Midelt?  
as: l:hd .                                      Sunday.  
Substitute: Tuesday, Friday, Monday, Wednesday, Thursday, Saturday.
- E. ma datz:nzad ?                              What do you sell?  
- daz:nzay s:k:r .                              I sell sugar.  
Answer using the following:  
butter, grapes, rice, cucumbers, pears, oil, watermelon, tea, sugar, green mint, cauliflower, turnip, corn, wheat, lentils, coffee, kerosene, cigarettes, squash, potatoes, onions, carrots, tomatoes, garlic, raisins, peaches, melon, green pepper, eggs, meat, salt, cumin, chickens, soap, red peppers, fish, bread, oranges, honey, barley, flour, beans, chick peas, bananas, green beans, cabbage, squash, apples, olives, pomegranates, milk, dates.
- F. Supply the missing responses in the following conversation.
- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| mimuna - šbahlxir a fadma .                | fadma - _____ |
| mimuna - mam iga lhal ?                    | fadma - _____ |
| mimuna - ma datz:nzad dma dats:ayd ?       | fadma - _____ |
| mimuna - mag:a s:uq: imndi ?               | fadma - _____ |
| mimuna - mani muha ?                       | fadma - _____ |
| mimuna - mayr td:id dɣi ?<br>(/dɣi/ "now") | fadma - _____ |
| mimuna - l:ayhn:ik:m .                     | fadma - _____ |

G. Translate into Berber:

1) Did you eat yet? 2) I bought some cucumbers, some turnips, some tomatoes, some onions, and some bananas. 3) How is the family? 4) How is the sheep market? 5) So so. 6) It is not bad. 7) Let us go to the market. 8) Where are you going? 9) I am going to the mountain. 10) I am going home. 11) You are going to the market. 12) Thursday is the market day in Boumia.

H. Translate into English.

(This exercise is on tape in the language lab).

3.1 wilyam dayt:k:a ayt ʔy:aš  
William Visits Ayt Ayache

A. Introduction

1. wilyam amd:ak:l nmuḥa ag:a . William is Muha's friend.  
 amd:ak:l (m) friend  
 tamd:ak:lt (f) friend  
 imd:uk:al (m) friends  
 timd:uk:al (f) friends
2. wilyam imum dmuḥa ad:k:in Muha takes William with him  
 ayt uxamns . to visit his family.  
 mun to accompany  
 d and, with  
 imun he accompanied  
 k: to visit  
 ad:k:in they (m) will visit  
 ayt uxam family  
 -ns his  
 taxamt tent
3. wilyam dayxd:m dlḥuk:uma William works for the U.S.  
 nmalik:an yr:baḍ . Government in Rabat.  
 xdm to work  
 da- present tense stem  
 xd:m VH of /xmd/ (see Grammatical Notes 3.2)  
 ḥuk:uma the government  
 malik:an America  
 y in
4. muḥa imyus:an dwilyam Muha met William in Rabat.  
 yr:baḍ .  
 imyus:an (reciprocal) he knows, he got acquainted with  
 is:n he knows
5. wilyam is:n itmaziḥt . William speaks Berber.  
 is:n he knew (he knows)  
 is:n i (+language) he speaks a language  
 tamaziḥt Berber language  
 tmaziḥt construct state (after preposition)  
 amaziḥ (m.s.) Berber (person).

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

tamaziɣt (f.s.)	Berber (person)
imaziɣn (m.p.)	Berbers
timaziɣin (f.p.)	Berbers

B. Conversation

husa	Muha's father
fadma	Muha's mother.
muha	the son
wilyam	the guest

	<u>husa</u>	
axsurtuhilm ?		Aren't you (m.p.) tired?
axs		a wishful form
whl		to be tired
tuhlm		you (m.p.) are tired
urtuhilm		you (m.p.) are not tired

	<u>muha</u>	
nk: bɔda uruhily ša .		I myself am not tired.
išg: awilyam , axsurtuhild ?		How about you, William?
nk:		I
bɔda		first of all (here: myself)
uhly		I am tired
ša		some

	<u>wilyam</u>	
iwa šwi wxlaš: .		Just a little.
u ~w		and
xlaš:		enough

	<u>husa</u>	
iwa kžmad: , kžmad: ,		Come in, come in.
mism l:ɛil bɔda ?		What is the name of the boy?
kžm		to enter
kžmat		come in (you m.p.)
kžmad: (</kžmat + d/ where /-d-/ is a particle of proximity)		you come in (m.p.) (toward speaker)
lɛil		boy (here: young man)



Unit 3

mism nl:il ---- mism l:il		
	<u>muha</u>	
wilyam		William.
	<u>husa</u>	
mrħba , mrħba , mrħba swilyam .		Welcome, William
s		of, with (to)
	<u>wilyam</u>	
irħbaš lxir .		Thank you.
	<u>husa</u>	
am: tad:artnš aya		Make yourself at home.
lhmdul:ah , kžmad: .		Come in.
am:		like
tad:art		house
-nš		your (m.s.)
aya		this is
	<u>husa</u> (calling his wife)	
fadma .		Fadma.
	<u>fadma</u>	
n:am .		Yes.
	<u>husa</u>	
ž:užd: iqšušn , han		Prepare the tea pot
lwašun iwdnd .		and the glasses. The
		boys did come.
wžd		to be ready
ž:užd		prepare (causative form =
		make ready)
ž:užd:		prepare (with /-d-/ particle of proximity)
iq:šušn		teapot and glasses
han		here are
lwašun		the boys (here: young men)
awd		to reach
iwdn		they reached
iwdnd		they arrived (with the pro- ximity particle /-d-/

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

	<u>fadma</u>	
hat l:an uʒdn ɣas kʒmad: .	.	They are ready. Just come in.
hat		here
ili		to be
l:an		they are
wʒdn ~uʒdn		they are ready
ɣas		just
	<u>husa</u>	
isnwan waman mad sul: ?		Has the water boiled or not (yet)?
is -		question particle of the "Do-Will" type
nw		to boil
nwan		they boiled (water is plural in Berber)
aman		water
mad		or not
sul:		they are not yet ( suln)
	<u>fadma</u>	
d:an ɣlihal ɣas an:a xf t:uʒadm .	.	By the time you get ready it will be boiling.
d:an		they went (refers to water= it is about to)
ɣlihal		almost
an:a xf		when (as soon as)
t:uʒadm		you (m.p.) are (will be) ready
	<u>muha</u>	
m:a , ad:ud at:sl:md xf		Mother, come and say
lɣil , hatin is:n itmaziɣt .		hello to the young man. He does speak Berber.
m:a		mother
d:u		to go
ad:ud		to come
sl:m (xf)		to greet (on)
at:sl:md		you will greet ( ad+t-sl:m-d)
hatin		emphatic form. Here the whole phrase means 'he does speak Berber'.

Unit 3

l:ahicawn , mism l:sil ?	<u>fadma</u>	Hello, what is the "boy's" name?
wilyam .	<u>muha</u>	William.
may tcnid id: labas ?	<u>fadma</u>	How are you?
labas adamig rb:i lxir .	<u>wilyam</u>	Fine, thank you.
ad-		future particle
am		to you (f.s.)
g		to do, to be
ig		he does (here: "God")
rb:i		God
iwa mrhbanš , hatin anbyi	<u>fadma</u>	Welcome. You are a
axatar ay wry t:gid .		great guest.
anbyi (m)		guest
tanbyiwt (f)		guest
inbyawn (m)		guests
tinbyawin (f)		guests
axatar (m)		great, big
taxatart (f)		great, big
ixatar: (m.p.)		great, big
tixatarin (f.p.)		great, big
ay		to
wry		to us (we have)
d (>t)		proximity particle
tgid		you (s.) are
irhbam lxir , am: tad:artinw	<u>wilyam</u>	Thank you. I feel at
aya lhmdul:ah .		home here.
am:		like
-inw		mine
aya		this

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

<p>iwa mṣ̌ nwan waman , awid an,m:r atay .</p> <p>mṣ̌ nwan awid ad- (---&gt;a-) n,m:r</p>	<p><u>husa</u></p>	<p>If the water is boiling, then give it to me to make tea.</p> <p>if they boiled (water p.) you bring future particle (see grammatical notes) we will make tea, we will fill up</p>
<p>mand:iyun ag: t:m:ar: ?</p> <p>mand:iyun ag: t:m:ar: t:m:ar:</p>	<p><u>fadma</u></p>	<p>Who is going to make tea?</p> <p>who, (which one of you m.p.) who (relative) habitual form (VH) of / m:r/ participle form</p>
<p>ṣ̌asd ṣ̌:inıt iwilyam adi,m:r .</p> <p>ṣ̌asd ṣ̌:inıt (f)</p>	<p><u>husa</u></p>	<p>Give the tray to William to make tea.</p> <p>give him the tray</p>
<p>la ,yas m:r ṣ̌g:n:it , nk: urs:inγ .</p> <p>γas ṣ̌g:n:it s:n s:nγ urs:inγ nk: nk:n:it</p>	<p><u>wilyam</u></p>	<p>No, you just prepare the tea yourself. I do not know (how to).</p> <p>just you yourself to know I knew I do not know I I myself</p>
<p>wax:a , bismil:ah . bismil:ah</p>	<p><u>husa</u></p>	<p>In the name of God. This is said before starting something, eg. eating, drinking, stepping into a house</p>

than yours, working  
in the field early  
in the morning or pay-  
ing money, etc.

wilyam

walayn:i lk:as aya !

Oh! What an excellent  
glass.

urdžin swiγ atay am: wa !

I never drank (such  
good) tea like this.

walayn:i

here = Oh! What an excellent.  
(can mean Oh! What a terrible)

lk:as

the glass

aya

this

urdžin

never

swiγ

I drank

atay

tea

wa (m)

this

ta (f)

this

husa

isdats:am atay ytmazirtn:un

Do people drink tea

mad uhu ?

in your country or not?

sw

to drink

is-

question introducer  
(interrogative mode prefix)

dats:am

you (m.p.) drink

tamazirt

country

-n:un

yours

mad

or

uhu

no

wilyam

y:ih , dans:a atay , walayn:i

Yes, they drink tea,

urid: am: wa .

but it is not like this.

dans:a

we drink

urid:

not

urid am: ta

not like this one (f)

muha

tn:idi urdats:am γas lq:hwa .

But you told me that  
(in America) people  
drink (only-nothing)

		but) coffee.
ini		to say
tn:id		you said
tn:idi		you told me
dats:am		you (m.p.) drink
yas		just, only, nothing but
	<u>wilyam</u>	
y:ih , walayn:i ɛd:an win:a		Yes, but there are
days:an atay .		many people who drink
		tea.
walayn:i		but
ɛd:an		they are numerous
ɛd:u		to be abundant
win:a		those (m)
tin:a		those (f)
days:an		they drink

### 3.2 Grammatical Notes

#### The Verb\*

In Tamazight there are two stems for each verb:

(a) Simple Verb Stem (V) which is translated here as the English infinitive and is identical with second person singular imperative. Thus: sl:m 'to greet'

sl:m 'greet! (you s.)'

(V) is the form under which a verb form is listed in the dictionary (an ideal dictionary of Tamazight).

(b) Habitual Verb Stem (VH) which is derived from (V) by certain rules. (VH) of /sl:m/ is /t:sl:am/ which can be translated as an energetic imperative 'Do greet! (you s.)' (more frequently 'get in the habit of greeting'). (VH) of /xɛm/ is /xɛ:m/.

Certain tenses and modes can be formed from (V), others from (VH). The imperative, the aorist of narration, the past tense (in affirmative, negative, interrogative and negative-interrogative

---

\* For more information on The Verb and other grammatical categories consult: A Short Reference Grammar of Spoken Tamazight by Ernest T. Abdel-Massih.

modes), the future tense (affirmative and interrogative "Will" type modes), and the past participle are derived from (V). From (VH) the following structures can be derived: energetic imperative, negative imperative, interrogative future - QW (question word) type, negative future, the present tense (in affirmative, negative, interrogative, and negative-interrogative modes) and the present and future participles.

### The Imperative

The Imperative is formed by adding the following suffixes to (V): (PNG = Person, Number, Gender)

Imperative	/-P	N	G#/	
	2	s	m,f	/-ø#/
	2	p	m	/-at#/
	2	p	f	/-nt#/

Thus, from /sl:m/ 'to greet' we derive the following imperatives:

sl:m	Greet! (you s.)
sl:mat	Greet! (you m.p.)
sl:mnt	Greet! (you f.p.)

Notice:

(a) a Simple Verb Stem (V) ending /-u#/ or /-i#/ will have the suffix /-yat/ (rather than /-at/) for imperative of second person masculine plural (/ -P N G#/): e.g.,

d:u	to go
d:u	Go! (you s.)
d:uyat	Go! (you m.p.)
d:unt	Go! (you f.p.)

ini	to say
ini	Say! (you s.)
iniyat	Say! (you m.p.)
inint	Say! (you f.p.)

(b) A Simple Verb Stem (V) ending in /-y#/ changes its /-y#/ to /-i-/ in /-P<sub>2</sub>N<sub>p</sub>G<sub>m</sub>#/ imperative: e.g.,

asy	to carry
-----	----------

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

asy	Carry! (you s.)
asyat	Carry! (you m.p.)
asint	Carry! (you f.p.)

### Person Number Gender Affixes (/PNG-/)

There is only ONE paradigm expressing Person, Number, and Gender (/PNG-/) attached to either (V) or (VH) for the formation of the different tenses and their modes (which are achieved by the prefixation of different particles.).

/PNG-/ affixes

(for (V),(VH) - all tenses and modes)

I	_____γ
you	t_____d
he	i_____
she	t_____
we	n_____
you (m.p.)	t_____m
you (f.p.)	t_____nt
they (m)	_____n
they (f)	_____nt

### Notice:

- (a) 1st person s. suffix /-γ/--->/q:/ if (V) ends in /-γ/  
 zdγ                                   to dwell  
 zdq:                                   I dwelt
- (b) 3rd person m.s. prefix is /i-/ before consonant and /y-/ before vowels  
 sl:m                                   to greet (V)  
 isl:m                                  he greeted
- an:ay                                  to see (V)  
 yan:ay                                he saw
- (c) 3rd person m.p. suffix /-n/ --->/r/ if (V) has final /-r/ or ---->/-l/ if (V) has final /-l/.  
 ɛm:r                                   to make tea  
 ɛm:r: (ɛ sm:rn)                   they (m) made tea, they (m) filled



slil                                   to rinse  
 slil: (<sliln)                   they (m) rinsed

### Aorist of Narration

(The Aorist is a dependent form, i.e. utterance non-initial, that can mean past, present, future or even imperative depending on the tense of the initial verb.)

The conjugated (V) is called the Aorist of Narration which is simply any (V) + /-PNG-/ affixes. Thus /samh/ 'to forgive':

/-P	N	G-/	
1	s	m,f	samh   γ
2	s	m,f	t samh   d
3	s	m	i samh
3	s	f	t samh
1	p	m,f	n samh
2	p	m	t samh   m
2	p	f	t samh   nt
3	p	m	samh   n
3	p	f	samh   nt

### Affirmative Future

/ad-/ is the future particle. The future is formed by pre-fixation of the future particle /ad-/ to the Aorist of Narration (i.e. (V) + PNG Affixes)

Thus: "sl:m"           to greet

/-P	N	G-/	
1	s	m,f	ad   sl:m   γ
2	s	m,f	at:   sl:m   d
3	s	m	adi   sl:m
3	s	f	at:   sl:m
1	p	m,f	an   sl:m
2	p	m	at:   sl:m   m
2	p	f	at:   sl:m   nt
3	p	m	ad   sl:m   n
3	p	f	ad   sl:m   nt

Notice:

- (a) /-d-/ of the future particle /ad-/---> /-t-/ before another /t-/ (i.e. if (V) has initial /t-/ this occurs with 2 s., 3 f.s., 2 m.p., 2 f.p.)
- (b) /-d-/ of the future particle /ad-/ drops before /n-/ of 1st person plural.

Likewise the present tense is formed with the same /-PNG-/ added to (VH) and present tense prefix /da-/: e.g.,

sl:m	to greet (V)
t:sl:am	(VH) of sl:m

/-P	N	G -/	
1	s	m,f	da   t:sl:am   γ
2	s	m,f	dat   t:sl:am   d
3	s	m	day   t:sl:am   d
3	s	f	dat   t:sl:am
1	p	m,f	dan   t:sl:am
2	p	m	dat   t:sl:am   m
2	p	f	dat   t:sl:am   nt
3	p	m	da   t:sl:am   n
3	p	f	da   sl:am   nt

### 3.3 Drills

A. Conjugate the following verbs in all /-PNG-/ in

- (a) the imperative  
 (b) the Aorist  
 (c) the future

V	Meaning
sl:m (xf)	to greet
awn (i)	to help
ns (y) (γr)	to spend the night
mun (d)	to accompany
rhb (s)	to welcome
zdγ (y)	to dwell
samh (i)	to forgive

Unit 3

z:nz	to sell
awy	to bring
x:u	to be bad
fdr	to eat
ini	to say
d:u	to go
k:	to visit
xdm (y) (yr)	to work
kžm (y) (yr) (xf)	to enter
ž:užd	to prepare
awd	to arrive
em:r	to make tea
š (i)	to give
sw	to drink
sw:q	to shop

B. yal:ah answ atay

k:raγ and:u γr s:uq:

Let us drink tea.

Let us (m.d.) go to the market.

Given:

sw	to drink (V)
tš	to eat (V)
sγ	to buy (V)
d:u	to go (V)

Form the following sentences:

Let us drink coffee.

Let us buy soap.

Let us eat meat.

Let us buy bananas.

Let us (f.d.) go to the mountain.

Let us (f.p.) go to the river.

Let us eat bread.

Let us buy tea.

Let us (m.d.) go to the mosque.

Let us (m.p.) go to the threshing grounds.

C. m:a , ad:ud at:sl:md

xf l'ail .

Mother, come and say hello  
to the young man (in order  
to say hello...)

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

Notice: ad:ud = come! imperative /-P<sub>2</sub>N<sub>s</sub>#/ + at:sl:md =  
future /-P<sub>2</sub>N<sub>s</sub>-/  
amuha aɣli d:uyat                      Muha and Aly, come and say  
at:sl:mm xf lɛil                            hello to the young man.

Notice: d:uyat P<sub>2</sub>N<sub>p</sub>G<sub>m</sub> imperative, and at:sl:mm -P<sub>2</sub>N<sub>p</sub>G<sub>m</sub>- future.

Form the following sentences:

1. Come in and have lunch! (s.) (come in order to have lunch)
2. Go and work! (m.p.)
3. Come in and make tea (s.)!
4. Come in and greet the guest! (f.p.)
5. Go and work! (s.)
6. Come in and greet the young man! (m.p.)
7. Go and help Ali! (s.)
8. Enter to greet William! (s.)
9. Go to the market and bring (some) grain! (m.p.)
10. Come and eat bread and butter! (f.p.)

D. Translate into Berber:

1. I will drink tea.
2. She will eat meat.
3. We will visit Rabat.
4. They (f.) will enter.
5. We will greet the guest.
6. They (m.) will work.
7. He will greet the young man.
8. I will help the young man.
9. She will accompany Muha.
10. We will take lunch here.

E. Translate into Berber:

1. Aly is Muha's friend.
2. Fadma is Muha's friend.
3. Aly and Fadma are Muha's friends.
4. Mimuna is Muha's friend.
5. Mimuna and Fadma are Muha's friends.
6. Muha met Mimuna in Midelt.

7. Muha works in Rabat.
8. Mimuna works in Midelt.
9. Muha took Mimuna with him to visit the family in Rabat.
10. Mimuna speaks Arabic.
11. Muha speaks Berber.
12. He speaks Berber and Arabic.
13. She speaks only Berber.
14. Husa greeted Mimuna.
15. She greeted Mimuna.

F. Translate into English:

This exercise is on tape in the language lab.

G. Translate into English:

This exercise is on tape in the language lab.

H. Translate into English:

This exercise is on tape in the language lab.

I.

1. yaɫ:ah answ lq:hwa
2. yaɫ:ah antš d:ʕam
3. yaɫ:ah and:u ɣr s:uq:

Substitute for the underlined words from the following list using a suitable word that agrees with the verb of the sample sentence. Form five sentences based on each of the above sentences.

List:

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. z:itun       | 11. taɣbalut: |
| 2. aman         | 12. z:nbuʕ    |
| 3. s:uq:        | 13. r:st      |
| 4. t:f:ah       | 14. atay      |
| 5. aɣ:u         | 15. aɣrum     |
| 6. tad:art      | 16. lhlib     |
| 7. aksum        | 17. s:abun    |
| 8. atay sn:ʕnaʕ | 18. lg:ayz    |
| 9. asif         | 19. tmzgida   |
| 10. lmšmaš      | 20. lq:amiža  |



4.1 imaziɣn dlq:aɣidansn  
Berber Traditions

husa

walayn:i ts:nd  
itmaziɣt awilyam .  
mani yastrb:ad ?  
walayn:i  
ts:nd  
  
mani  
as  
(mani as --> mani yas)  
rb:a  
trb:ad

You speak (very good)  
Berber, William.  
Where did you learn it?  
oh! - but  
you know (past used to express  
a fact)  
where  
it  
where to it  
to learn  
you learned

wilyam

ylik:ul ymalik:an .  
lik:ul  
malik:an

At school in America.  
school  
America

husa

max ?

Why?

wilyam

t:afad adisinɣ  
mas sawalɣ iymaziɣn ,  
salxtn xf taɣištnsn ,  
dlq:aɣidansn .

In order to be able to  
speak to the Berbers and  
ask them about the way  
they live and (know) their  
customs.

t:afad  
adisinɣ  
ma  
mas  
sawalɣ  
sal (xf)  
salxtn (>salɣtn)  
taɣišt  
-nsn  
lq:aɣida

in order to  
know (future)  
what  
with what  
I speak  
ask (about, on)  
I ask them  
life  
their (m)  
custom, habit

husa

nk:ni inslmn ay nga	We are Moslems and be-
lhmdul:ah . dant:amn	lieve in God and in
šrb:i dwawalns .	His words. People here
md:n da urdas:an	do not drink, nor do
š:rab ula dat:qm:ar: .	they gamble. Even ciga-
ag:d g:ar:u iga l'ib .	rettes are considered
◁lihal kul:ši dayd:zal:a lxutbt .	bad. Almost everybody
	prays the Friday Prayer.
nk:ni	we
ay	who, that
nga	we are
amn	to believe, trust
dant:amn	we believe (present)
awal	speech, talk
-ns	his (of him)
md:n	people
da	here
din:	there
sw	to drink
das:an	they drink (present)
š:rab	alcoholic drinks
qm:r	to gamble
dat:qm:ar: (</dat:qm:arn/)	They gamble (present)
ur... ula	neither__nor
ag:d	even
g:ar:u	cigarettes (m)
iga	he is, it (m.) is
l'ib	shame, shameful
◁lihal	almost
kul:ši	all, everybody, everything
z:al:	to pray (s.f.)
t:zal:a	VH (Habitual Form) of /z:al:/
dayd:zal:a (< dait:zal:a )	he prays (present)
lxutbt	Friday Prayer



	<u>wilyam</u>	
irmdan ? isdatt:azumn mad uhu ? azum t:azum datt:azumn		How about Ramadan? Do you fast or not? to fast (V) VH (Habitual Form) they (m.) fast it
	<u>husa</u>	
y:ih , ag:d lwašun ntnašr sam dat:azumn . ag:d lwašun tnašr sam dat:azumn		Yes, even kids twelve years old fast. even children twelve year they fast
	<u>wilyam</u>	
y:ih ! iyad:ay yaγ ša ša , ma dast:g:am ?  i  ad:ay yaγ ša ša aγ yaγ ša t:g:a		Oh! (is that so?) And when you have a sick person what do you do? and (sentence initial or utterance) when someone is sick to reach it reached something, somebody VH of /g/ 'to be, to do'
	<u>husa</u>	
dadnq:ar id:alb adasyaru .  γr q:ar dadnq:ar  d:alb		We call the religious teacher to write. (implied is the word amulet) to call (V) VH of / r/ 'to call' we call (pres. with proxi- mity particle /-d-/) religious teacher

aru		wrote (here: write an amulet)
yaru		he wrote
	<u>wilyam</u>	
is datž:užuynt tir:a nd:alb ?		Does the writing of the sheikh cure him?
ž:y		to be cured (V)
ž:užy		Causative (SV)
ž:užuy		Habitual of the Causative (SVH)
tir:a		the writing (Noun from /aru/ 'to write')
	<u>husa</u>	
am: yism r:b:i .		Sure.
am:		like
ism		name
r:b:i		God
r:b:i (>nrb:i)		of God
	<u>wilyam</u>	
ma dat:g:am itmγriwin ?		What do you do for marriages?
ma		what?
dat:g:am		you (pl.) do
tamγra (f.)		wedding
timγriwin		weddings
tmγriwin		Construct State (CS) of /timγriwin/. Here the CS occurs because the noun follows the preposition /l/ 'for, to'.
	<u>husa</u>	
ad:ay yawd l'il xf yiwl ,		When the young man
dasnt:xtar tarbat: n:as it:ižibn ,		reaches the age of
dant:awy s:k:r , t:igni , dlhn:a ,		marriage, we choose
nd:u at:ns:utr ilahlns ,		a girl whom we think
mš qlb: , dat:d:un l'il ,		will please him. Then
t:rbat: , dlahlnsn γl lbiru		we take sugar and dates
adqdən . tamγra sixfns ,		and henna and go and
dat:nt:g:a ys:if ad:ay nsy:f .		ask the girl's hand
		from her parents. If
		they agree then the
		boy and the girl and
		the parents go to the

	office (of the judge) to register. The wed- ding itself takes place in summer after we harvest the crops.
ad:ay	when
awd	to reach
yawd	he reaches
l <sup>o</sup> il	the youth
iwl	marriage
x <sup>o</sup> tar	to choose
n:a	who
it:i <sup>o</sup> zibn	'pleasing' present parti- ciple (used with /n:a/)
dant:awy	we take
s:k:r	sugar
tigni	dates
lhn:a	henna
d:u	to go
s:utr	to ask for (V)
at:ns:utr	we ask for her
lahlns	her parents, family
qbl: (>qbln)	they accept
dat:d:un	they go
lbiru	office
γl lbiru (>γr lbiru)	to the office (city, town, village hall where Official Certificates are issued)
γr (->γl/-#l-)	to
qd <sup>o</sup>	to register a marriage
adqd <sup>o</sup> n	in order to register the marriage
tamγra	the wedding
sixfns	itself (>/ixf/ 'head' which refers to 'self').
dat:nt:g:a	we do it (f.)
s:if	summer
sy:f	to harvest the summer crops
nsy:f	we harvest the summer crops

4.2 Story Based on Unit 3 and Unit 4

imyus:an muḥa dwilyam yr:baḍ n:ay žmən . wilyam  
 dayxd:m dlhuk:uma nmalik:an yr:baḍ . yun was: , yawy muḥa  
 wilyam sayt cy:aš ad:k:in sayt uxamns . ḥusa , b:as nmuḥa ,  
 ifrh l:iy asisiwl wilyam stmaziyt . ḡas an:a diwdn , iyrd  
 ḥusa ifadma at:ž:užd iqšušn , ts:nw aman . l:iy swan atay ,  
 ičžbas iwilyam bz:af . day in:asn ymalik:an urdas:an atay sn:nač .

l:iy isal ḥusa wilyam many irb:a itmaziyt , day in:as  
 wilyam ylik:ul ymalik:an . l:iy tisal max , in:as t:afad adyisin  
 mas isawal iymaziyn , isaltn xf tačištnsn , dlq:ačidansn .  
 day in:as ḥusa , md:n ytmazirt inslmn ay gan , urdas:an š:rab ,  
 ula dat:qm:ar: . l:iy tisal madat:g:an ad:ay yaḡ ša ša ; in:as  
 ḥusa dadq:ar: id:alb adasyaru . day isalt altu xf tmȳriwin .  
 in:as ḥusa , ad:ay yawḍ l'il xf yiwl , dast:xtar: ayt uxamns  
 tarbat: n:as it:ičžibn , dat:awin s:k:r , t:igni , dlhn:a ,  
 d:un at:s:utr: ilahlns , mš qbl: , dat:dun l'il , t:rbat: ,  
 dlahlnsn ȳl lbiru adqdən . tamȳra sixfns dat:t:g:an ys:if .

n:ay	where (conjunction) (n:a + y 'which is')
žmən	to meet
awy	to take
k:	to visit, to pass by
frh	to be happy
l:iy	when (conjunction)
siwl	to speak
ḡas an:a	as soon as
awḍ	to arrive
ȳr	to call
iȳrd	he called (+ prox.)
bz:af	much (a lot)
day	then
ini	to say
tamazirt	country
sal	to ask
ad:ay	when (conjunction)

altu	again
γl lbiru (>γr lbiru)	to the City Hall Office

4.3. Grammatical Notes and Drills

4.3.1 Interrogative

(for more information on this subject, see: A Short Reference Grammar of Tamazight)

Question Words:

may ?	who?
mag:ms (<may ims) (ms 'to be related to')	who is (m.)?
ma ?	what?
mat:a ?	what, which?
mi ?	who, what?
mani ?	where?
mayr ?	where?
milmi ?	when?
mani luq:t	when?
milan ?	whose?
mimš ?	how?
šhal ?	how many? how much?
max ?	why?
max al:iy ?	why....?
win mi	whose (object is (m))
tin mi	whose? (object is (f))

4.3.2 Drills

A. Answer the following questions (based on Units 3 and 4):

- 1) mag:ms wilyam ?
- 2) mani yžm<sup>c</sup> wilyam dmuha ?
- 3) mayr d:an ?
- 4) isis:n wilyam itmaziγt ?
- 5) mani yasirb:a ?
- 6) max ?
- 7) max al:iy ifrh husa ?
- 8) is dat:azumn imaziγn ?

- 9) ma dat:g:an imaziɣn ad:ay yaɣ ša ša ?
- 10) isdatž:užuynt tir:a nd:alb ?
- 11) ma dat:g:an imaziɣn itmɣriwin ?
- 12) milmi a dat:sy:afn imaziɣn ?
- 13) isdas:an atay sn:ɛnaɛ ymalik:an ?
- 14) may dayxd:m wilyam ?
- 15) max al:iy yiwy muha wilyam sayt ɛy:aš ?
- 16) max al:iy iɣra muha imays ?
- 17) isiɛžb watay iwlyam ?
- 18) isdas:an imaziɣn š:rab ?
- 19) isdat:qm:ar: imaziɣn ?
- 20) milmi ay dat:g:an imaziɣn timɣriwin ?

B. Answer the following general questions:

- 1) maɣr id:a ɛli ?
- 2) mism wask:a ?
- 3) istrid lq:hwa ?
- 4) mani luq:t ay dit:ɛayad d:alb ?
- 5) milan lwašuna ?
- 6) mimš dat:g:ad iwatay ?
- 7) šhal aya ?
- 8) max al:iy id:a muha sayt ɛy:aš ?
- 9) id: igrnš aya ?
- 10) milmi ag:t:d:u muha ɣr tmsgida ?

C. id:a muha ɣr s:uq:

maɣr id:a muha ?

For each of the following sentences form a question.

- 1) wilyam amd:ak:l nmuha ag:a .
- 2) wilyam dayxd:m yr:baɗ .
- 3) t:afad adik: ɣr ɛli .
- 4) la , riɣ aman .
- 5) lxux dz:nbuɛ .
- 6) win ɛli .
- 7) dat:g:an imaziɣn timɣriwin ys:if .
- 8) rbɛin ryal .

9) ts<sup>ˈ</sup>ud dumnaʃf .

10) wilyam dmuḥa dhusa ag:swan atay .

D. Translate into Berber

- 1) William learned Berber at school in America.
- 2) John is Aly's friend.
- 3) John visited the village of Ayt Ben Ichou.
- 4) In America people do not drink mint tea.
- 5) Aly and Fadma and their families went to register the marriage.

E. Translate into English:

(This exercise is on tape in the language lab).

F. Listen to the story on tape in the language lab and answer the questions.





Unit 5

5.1 Kinship Terms

A. lžd:	grandfather (term of reference)
b:ahl:u	my grandfather (term of address) fa mo fa
nan:a	my grandmother fa mo mo
~ m:ahl:u	
b:a	my father
m:a	my mother
B. <u>Father's Family</u>	
sm:i	my uncle fa br
st:i	my aunt fa si
mm:is nsm:i	my cousin (m) fa br so
il:is nsm:i	my cousin (f) fa br da
mm:is nst:i	my cousin (m) fa si so
il:is nst:i	my cousin (f) fa si da
mm:is nsm:is nb:a	my father's cousin
sm:is nb:a	my father's uncle fa fa br
C. <u>Mother's Family</u>	
xali	my uncle mo br
xalti	my aunt mo si
mm:is nxali	my cousin (m) mo br so
il:is nxali	my cousin (f) mo br da
mm:is nxalti	my cousin mo si so
il:is nxalti	my cousin mo si da
st:is nm:a	my mother's paternal aunt mo fa si
D. yma / (pl)	my brother
ut:ma / (pl)	my sister
mm:i	my son
il:i	my daughter
mm:is nut:ma	my nephew si so
il:is nyma	my niece br da
argazinw	my husband
tamd:ut:inw	my wife
mm:is nil:i	my grandson da so
lwašun nil:i	my grandchildren
mm:is nmm:i	my grandchild so so

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

lwašun nmm:i	my grandchildren	
adg:al (m.s.)	in-law (m)	wi br
		wi si
		wi fa
		wi mo
		wi mo uncle, etc.

This term expresses the relation between man and all the(male) members of his wife's family and vice versa except for the relation between wife and husband's family (See E and F below).

tadg:alt	fem. of above term
adg:alinw	my in-law (m)
tadg:altinw	my in-law (f)
idulan	in-laws (m.p.)
tidulin	in-laws (f.p.)

E. The wife in relation to her husband's family (terms of reference)

amɣar	hu fa
tamɣart	hu mo
alus	hu br
talust	hu si

F. The wife when calling them (terms of address)

◁m:i muha	Uncle Mohammed	for hu fa
xalti ◁iša	Aunt Aisha	for hu mo
◁li	Aly	for hu br
fadma	Fadma	for hu si

5.2 Conversations

A.

wilyam

mat:a tad:artin: m:sin

š:ražm izgzawn ?

Whose house is that  
over there with the  
two green windows?

mat:a

what

-in:

that

m: (f)

of (=mother of, that (f.) of)

bu (m)

of (=father of, that (m.) of)

Unit 5

š:ržm (m)	window
š:ražm (p)	windows
azgza (m.s.)	blue/green
izgzawn (p)	blue/green

	<u>muha</u>	
tin ʕm:i . ʕas imšin:a t:ibna .		It is my uncle's. He just built it.
tin (f)		it is of
ʕas		just
imšin:a		just
bnu		to build
ibna		he built
ibnat:		he built it (f)

Notice: Pronominal affixes are movable particles. Here /t:-/ is preverbal because of the conjunction.

	<u>wilyam</u>	
winmi iy:isin: g:mi l:bab ?		Whose horse is in front of the door?
win		that of
winmi		whose
iy:is		horse
imi		mouth
y + imi--->g:mi		in front of, at the entrance (Lit: in the mouth of)
lbab		door
n + lbab -->l:bab		of the door

	<u>muha</u>	
win mm:is nʕm:i .		It is my cousin's. Let us go (in order to) show you our fields.
yaḷ:ah and:u sigran ,		That big field where there is barley belongs to my sister's husband,
adašsnɔɣ igrann:ɣ .		that one near it where there is wheat belongs to my father's uncle,
igrin: axatar yl:ant tmzin		
win urgaz nut:ma . wan:		
tamans yl:an yirdn win ʕm:is		
nb:a . wan: urin:as		
yuril:i walu win b:as		
ntmdut: nyma .		

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

		that one where there is nothing (planted) belongs to the father of my brother's wife.
s		to (prep.) before nouns that have initial vowels.
igr		field
igran		fields
snɛt		to show
snɛtɣ		I showed
-n:ɣ		our (pronominal affix)
axatar (m.s.)		big
taxatart (f.s.)		big
ili		to be in
l:ant		there are (f)
timzin		barley
argaz		husband (man)
wan:		that one
tama		besides
ns		him/it (m) (of it, m.f.)
irdn		wheat (p)
win		is of (belongs to)
urin:as		beyond it
walu		nothing
B.	<u>wilyam</u>	
maɣr id:a b:aš ?		Where did your father go?
maɣr		where
id:a		he went
b:a		my father
	<u>muha</u>	
id:a ad:yawy yun uhuli .		He went to bring a sheep.
adyawy		he will take
d		proximity particle
ahuli		sheep (m), ram
	<u>wilyam</u>	
may tira ?		What does he want it for?

Unit 5

ira		he wanted
-t-		it (m).
	<u>muha</u>	
adasi <sup>rs</sup>		In order to kill it.
rs		to slaughter
	<u>wilyam</u>	
max ?		Why?
	<u>muha</u>	
isurts:ind lq:a <sup>ida</sup> imazi <sup>yn</sup>		Don't you know the
ayn:a tga ? ad:ay <sup>rs</sup>		Berber's custom? When
did:u unbyi zy tmazirt ib <sup>dn</sup> ,		they have a guest from
das <sup>rs</sup> :sn itm <sup>rs</sup> rust .		a far country they kill
		a sheep for him.
ts:nd		you knew
ayn:a		how
ad:ay		when (conjunction)
b <sup>d</sup>		to be far
ib <sup>dn</sup>		far (which is far)-past participle
das <sup>rs</sup> :sn		they kill
tam <sup>rs</sup> rust		slaughter animal, sacrifice
	<u>wilyam</u>	
s:n <sup>γ</sup> . walayn:i urgi <sup>γ</sup> ša wnbyi .		I know. But I am not
tad:artinw aya lhmdul:ah .		a guest. This is my
		house.
isin		to know
s:n <sup>γ</sup>		I know
walayn:i		but
ur-		negative particle
tad:art		the house
aya		this is
	<u>muha</u>	
uril:i š:k .		There is no doubt (about
walayin:i anbyi i <sup>z</sup> :an		that). But you are a
ay tgid .		great guest.
il:a		there is
šk:a		to doubt

š:k	doubt (N.)
°z:a	to be dear
i°z:an	great, dear, who is dear (participle)
ay	that
tgid	you are

5.3. lq:isat Stories (Story Telling)

ylq:a°ida imaziyn urdat:q:isn lhdiyāt yas al:drnt til:as ,  
 °lahq: l:at:inin mš dat:q:isn lhdiyāt swas: , urdayt:izil unbdū .  
 lhdiyta yq:ist: hm:u °m:is nmuha ytad:art l:bašir argaz  
 nut:mas nmuha n:a sndiyran l:iy igā ymnsi xf wilyam .

yr̄sn itm̄rust gn š:wi t:utliwin , dd:wažn uksum , dwiyful:usn ,  
 diq:šriyn nd:°am . iwa y°žbas wutši ywilyam bz:af °ad .

ihadr °m:i s°id b:aħl:u nmuha , d°q:a °m:is nb:as nmuha ,  
 dmimun xālis nmuha , dh̄d:u mm:is n°m:is nmuha , dfadma tām̄d:ut:  
 n°m:is nmuha , d°iša yl:is nct:is nmuha , dlbašir ymas nmuha ,  
 drabha wt:mas nmuha , dmd:n yadnin .

lq:ist ntšir:atin db:ansnt

in:aš il:a yun urgaz yurw snat ntšir:atin . day tm:t  
 mayt:snt , q:imnt yas yr tašna . yun was: , tn:as iwrgazns  
 "yas zltnt" . day išasnt b:ansnt tadut: tabx:ant t:umlilt ,  
 in:asnt "tabr:šant dz:int: al: tg tumlilt , tumlilt dz:int: al:  
 tg tabr:šant" . day d:unt saybalu d:aw n°ari day in:asnt  
 "dz:int . hay:i d:iy ad:b:iy tifg:ayin" . id:u nt:a y°q:d  
 yun waṭ:ar:u yr saxlidž , arik:at uzwu aṭ:ar:u art:inint "il:a  
 baba l:ayt:b:y tifg:ayin" .

al:iy šm:ln̄t , d:unt yr adyar , afnt:n: walu . saydnd:  
 samazir afind: walu . arsmut:urnt ša ybl:išn adgint taxamt al:iy  
 t:gant afnt yun ikzin . k:u tadg:at: dayursntdit:d:u yizm .  
 day arasit:ini ykzinn:a "qaw qaw urt:t:ad tirbatina mahd l:iy" .

day yut ytšir:atinna tga taḥyut: , day t̄rs̄ iykzin ;  
 day id:ud yursnt yizm itštnt .

q:is	to tell stories, narrate
t:q:is	habitual form of /q:is/

Unit 5

lhdiy <sup>˙</sup> t (f.s.)	story
lhdiy <sup>˙</sup> at (f.p.)	stories
al: <sup>˙</sup>	until
dr <sup>˙</sup>	to go down
drnt <sup>˙</sup>	they (f) went down
til:as (f.p.)	darkness
o <sup>˙</sup> lahq:	because
l:a- (~/-da-/-)	present tense prefix
ini	to say
t:ini	Habitual form of /ini/
as:	day
swas:	during daytime
izil <sup>˙</sup>	to be good
t:izil <sup>˙</sup>	Habitual form of /izil/
anbdu	crop
n:a	who
-asn	to them (m)
r <sup>˙</sup>	to call
i <sup>˙</sup> ran	participle: called (here= invited)
imnsi	dinner

Note 1: initial /#i-/ of a noun following a word ending in a vowel e.g. /-a#/ (e.g., /iga/ ) will be transcribed as /#y-/.

This also applies to verbs having /#i-/. See Note 2 below.

xf	for (on)
r <sup>˙</sup> rs	to slaughter
š:wi	roast
tutliwin	liver and fat kebab
d:ažin	stew
d:wažn	different stew dishes
wiyful:usn (>winiful:usn)	of chicken
aq:sri	a big plate
iq:šriyn (m.p.)	platters
y <sup>˙</sup> žbas (</i <sup>˙</sup> žbas/)	it (m.) pleased him

Note 2: See Note 1 above (/ -a#/ + /#i-/- -->/ -a y-/-)

bz:af ead	very much
ywilyam (>/iwilyam/)	to William

here the vowel is /-i#/ whereas in the previous examples it is /-a#/

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

See Notes 1 and 2 above (vowel # + #i- ---> vowel -y- /

yadn	other
yadnin	others
yl:is (</il:s/)	his daughter

See Notes 1 and 2 above

wt:mas	his sister
--------	------------

Note 3: /-a#/ + /#u-/ ---> /-a w-/ (not a very common occurrence)

in:aš	he told you
ili	to be
il:a	there was
arw	to give birth to
day	and, then
m:t	to die
q:im	to stay
γr	with (at)
tašna	here: step-mother (usually second wife or co-wife)
zl	to lose
γas zltnt	Get rid of them! (f.)
š	to give
tadut:	wool
abx:an (m.)	black
umlil (m.)	white
abr:šan	black
dz:	to beat
d:aw	under
hay:i	Here I am
b:y	to cut
tafg:ayt	a small piece of wool
sq:d	to tie
γsq:d (</iγq:d/ after a vowel)	he tied
at:ar:u	a can
axlidž	tree
w:t	to beat
k:at	V.H. of /w:t/ to beat
arik:at	he started to beat
ar-	inchoative prefix, denotes 'starting an action'



Unit 5

azwu	the wind
art:inint	they said (thought)
adɣar	place
ɣr ad ɣar	to a place (grammatically this should be /sadyar/)
af	to find
smut:r	to collect
ablɛiš	a piece of old cloth, rag
iblɛišn	rags
adgint	in order to make, that they (f) may make
ikzin	small dog, puppy
k:u	every, each
tadg:at:	evening
izm	lion
tš	to eat
tt:a	VH of /tš/ to eat
urt:t:ad	do not eat
mahd:	so long as
l:iɣ	I am (here), I exist
tahyut: (f.)	crazy, fool
ahyud (m.)	crazy, fool

5.4 tas:aɣt

Time (Telling Time)

šhal tas:aɣt ?

What time is it now?

lwhda

It's one o'clock.

ž:už

It's two o'clock.

t:lata

It's three o'clock.

r:bɛa

It's four o'clock.

lxmsa

It's five o'clock.

s:t:a

It's six o'clock.

s:bɛa

It's seven o'clock.

t:mnya

It's eight o'clock.

t:sɛa ~ t:sɛud

It's nine o'clock.

lɛšra

It's ten o'clock.

lhdaɣš

It's eleven o'clock.

t:naɣš

It's twelve o'clock.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

t:lata wns:	It's 3:30.
~ t:lata dumnasf	
<u>Note:</u> /u-/ before noun = 'and' (<Arabic). Also notice /#u-/---> /#w-/ if it is preceded by /-a#/ . (Not a very common occurrence).	
t:sɛud uns:	It's 9:30 .
~ t:sɛud dumnasf	
s:t:a wrbɛ	It's 6:15.
t:mnya wrbɛ	It's 8:15.
s:t:a q:l: rbɛ	It's 5:45.
lɛšra wɛšra	It's 10:10.
lhdaɛš uxmsa	It's 11:05.
s:bɛa wɛšrin	It's 7:20.
~ s:bɛa wtulut	
t:naɛš uxmsa	It's 12:05.
lwhda wɛšrin	It's 1:20.
~ lwhda wtulut	
ž:už uxmsa wɛšrin	It's 2:25.
r:bɛa uxmsa wɛšrin	It's 4:25.
r:bɛa q:l: xmsa	It's 3:55.
lɛšra q:l: xmsa wɛšrin	It's 9:35.
s:bɛa q:l: ɛšrin	It's 6:40.
~ s:bɛa q:l: tulut	
t:sɛud q:l: ɛšrin	It's 8:40.
~ t:sɛud q:l: tulut	
t:mnya q:l: ɛšra	It's 7:50.
t:sɛud q:l: ɛšra	It's 8:50.
r:bɛa ɣir xmsa	It's 3:55.
ž:už q:l: xmsa	It's 1:55.
r:bɛa nišan	It's 4:00 sharp.
s:t:a nišan	It's 6:00 sharp.
t:mnya wns: ns:bah	It's 8:30 a.m.
t:mnya wns: ng:id	It's 8:30 p.m.
t:naɛš ng:id	It's midnight.
t:lata nd:g:at:	It's 3:00 p.m.

5.5 Months of the Year

n:ayr	January
kbrayr	February
mars	March
ibril	April
may:u	May
yunyuh	June
yulyuz	July
γušt	August
štanbir	September
štubr	October
n:wanbir	November
d:užanbir	December
yn:ayr	in January
ymay:u	in May

5.6 Drills

- A. šhal tas:aət ?                      What time is it?  
 t:səud dumnaşf                      It's 9:30.

Answer the above questions using:

1:15, 2:25, 8:05, 6:45, 3:30, 5:00 sharp, 4:55, 11:20, 10:15,  
 9:10, 2:30, 7:20, 4:25, 6:35, 8:00, 2:00 p.m., 9:30 p.m.,  
 10:30 a.m., 12:00 noon, 12:35, 6:20, 12:00 midnight, 4:40,  
 2:55, 5:40, 8:15, 7:35, 7:30 a.m., 8:30 p.m., 4:05.

- B. milmi ag:d:a muha yr frans ?              When did Muha go to France?  
 y γušt                                      In August.

Substitute in the position of /γušt/ using: February, Decem-  
 ber, March, November, May, July, April, January, October,  
 September, June

- C. tad:art nəm:i aya                      This is my uncle's house.  
 tad:art nəm:i ayin:                      That is my uncle's house.  
 tad:rwin nəm:i aya                      These are my uncle's houses.  
 tad:rwin nəm:i ayin:                      Those are my uncle's houses.

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

Substitute for house-houses using the nouns in the following list. Form four sentences for each noun based on the above sentences.

### List

taxamt (tixamin)	tent
igr (igran)	field
asklu (iskla)	tree
tagmart (tiyal:in)	mare
iy:is (iy:san)	horse (m)
ṭay:at (tiydn)	goats
aḥuli (ihuliyṅ)	ram
tixsi (ul:i)	ewe
tafunast (tifunasin)	cow
aṅyul (iṅyal)	donkey
asrdun (isrdan)	mule
iydi (iydan)	dog (m)
tiydit (tiydan)	dog (f)
muš: (imaš:un)	cat (m)
timiš:ut (timaš:win)	cat (f)
lbhimt (lbhaym)	beast
aful:us (iful:usn)	cock
taful:ust (tiful:usin)	hen
aful:us w:aman (iful:usn w:aman)	duck
bibi (id bibi)	turkey (m)
tabibit:	turkey (f)

- D. muḥa mm:is nṅm:i ag:a                      Muha is my cousin (fa br so).  
 faḍma il:is nṅm:i ay tga                      Fadma is my cousin (fa br da).

Substitute for the word cousin in the sentences above using:  
 mo br so, fa br, mo br da, fa, mo, so, si, mo br,  
 mo si da, mo fa, br, si so, fa fa, mo mo, br da, si da,  
 br so, fa si so, fa si, fa si da, my in-law (m), my in-law (f),  
 mo fa si, mo mo br, fa fa si, fa fa br so.

E. Translate into Berber:

1. Where is Muha?
2. He went to bring some apples.
3. Once there was a man who had two boys.
4. When they (f) finished they went to Midelt.
5. Berbers do not tell stories before sunset.
6. William liked the food very much.
7. Lbashir, Muha's brother-in-law, invited many people to a dinner in honor of William.
8. Akka, Muha's paternal uncle, Hammu, Muha's maternal uncle, and Aysha, Muha's maternal aunt and many other people were present.
9. Whose horse is that?
10. Whose house is that with the two green windows?



Unit 6

6.1 Sofa Talk after Dinner I

muha

milmi ay t:ʕayd: ?

milmi

ʕayd

t:ʕayd: (>tʕaydd)

t:ʕayd: (>dtʕayd:)

When did you come back?

when

to return

you returned

you returned (here)

hd:u

ʕaydyd zik: as:a .

zik:

as:a

I came back early today.

early

today

nbarš

an:ayʕš an:a t:žbrd l:iyn: g:nurar .

an:ay

an:ayʕ

-š

an:a

žbr

t:žbrd (<dtžbrd)

ili

l:iyn:

g:nurar (/ -y#/#l- / --> -g:)

I saw you from the threshing grounds when you were coming back.

to see

I saw

you (m.s.)

when

to come back

you came back towards me

to be

I was there (with /-n:/ particle of remoteness)

in the threshing grounds

muha

maniy t:zdmd ?

maniy

maniy

zdm

t:zdmd (<dtzdmd)

Where did you bring wood from?

where

where from

to collect wood

you collected wood.

hd:u

adɣar n:ay dnzdm nk:inik:

as:n:a .

adɣar

From the place where you and I got it the other day.

the place

A Course in Spoken Tamaɣight

n:ay		in which
ɖ		particle of proximity
nzdm		we brought wood
nk:inik:		you (m.s.) and I (I and you)
as:n:a		the other day
	<u>muha</u>	
iɖ:a ukšiḍ dis: .		There is much wood there.
iɖ:a		there is much, it is abundant
ɖ:u		to be abundant
(mainly inflected for third person)		
akšiḍ		wood
dis:		there
	<u>hd:u</u>	
may tgid as:a ?		What did you do today?
	<u>muha</u>	
s:usiɣ inbarṣ̌ ,		I took Nbarsh's crops
ṭfaṛyas yun was: .		to the threshing grounds.
		I owed him one day.
s:as		to take crops from the field
		to the threshing ground
ṭfaṛ		to owe
yun was: (←yun nas:)		one day
	<u>nbarṣ̌</u>	
may dat:g:a tagmartnṣ̌ ask:a		What are you going to
aħd:u ?		do with your mare to-
		morrow, Hedou ?
tagmart		mare
	<u>hd:u</u>	
datsrwat iɖq:a . max ?		She is threshing grains
		for Akka. Why?
srut		to thresh
datsrwat		she is threshing grains
	<u>nbarṣ̌</u>	
riɣ adis:srutɣ .		I want to use it to
		thresh my crops.



Unit 6

riγ (< /iri/)		I want
srut		to thresh
adsrutγ		I will thresh
-is:-		with it
	<u>hd:u</u>	
mš trid at:g:anid al:		If you want to wait
adizriwask:a .		until the day after
		tomorrow (then you
		will get it).
mš		if
g: any		to wait
at:g:anid (<ad+tg:anid)		you will wait
al:		until
	<u>nbarš</u>	
adrasa mš urufiγ ša yađn .		I'll try to find one.
adg:aniγ sad.		If I do not find any,
		I'll have to wait.
rasa		to see, look for
af		to find
urufiγ		I did not find
s ad		here: "then"
	<u>hd:u</u>	
ma dat:g:ad ask:a amuha ?		What are you doing
		tomorrow, Muha?
dat:g:ad (<g)		you are doing
	<u>muha</u>	
dat:d:uγ yr midlt .		I'll go to Midelt.
dat:d:uγ		I'll go
	<u>hd:u</u>	
max ?		Why?
	<u>muha</u>	
γifi d:sut		For a case in the
		court.
xf		on / before nouns
xf muha		on Muha
γif		on / before pronouns
γifi		on me

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

γifs		on him
dˁu		to sue
d:cut (f.)		case
	<u>hd:u</u>	
tin mi ?		Whose? (Concerning what, who?)
tin (f.)		of (belonging to)
win (m)		of
mi		what, who
	<u>muha</u>	
nn:a γ nk: dusˁid xf		We fought, Said and
waman as:n:a .		I, the other day over water.
n:a γ		to fight
waman		water (construct state)
	<u>hd:u</u>	
max ? is tsul d:cutn:a urtatšm:il ?		Why? Isn't that case settled yet?
sul		not yet
-n:a		that
šm:l		to finish
urta-		not yet
	<u>muha</u>	
tsul altu . as:n:a , n:anay		Not yet. The other
ixs:a adħadr: š:hud .		day they told us that the witnesses must be ready.
tsul altu		it (f.s.) is not yet
n:an		they said
n:anay		they told us
ixs:a		it is necessary
ħadr		to be present
š:ahd		witness
š:hud		witnesses
	<u>hd:u</u>	
mag:ħadr: iymnγin:un ?		Who was present when you fought?

Unit 6

may who  
 ḥadr to be present  
 mag:ḥadr: (<may iḥadrn) Notice: /iḥadr:/ is past participle  
 iyṃnγin:un (to) at your (m.pl) fight

muḥa

iḥadr lḥusayn nayṭq:a dlbašir . Al Husayn of the family  
 iwa d:iγ adgnγ t:afad adk:rγ of Akka and al Bashir.  
 šwi zik: . I am going to sleep  
 nsat ylman . in order to get up  
 early.  
 Good Night.

gn to sleep  
 adgnγ I'll sleep  
 k:r to get up  
 šwi a little

nbarš

ag:n:k: d:iγ adgnγ . Me too, I am going to  
 mun dlman . sleep. Good night.

hd:u

iwa q:imat šwi , st:awil . Oh! Stay for a little  
 iwa anbarš , q:isay yut l:q:ist while. Nubarsh tell  
 nžḥa iwilyam adis:γd . one of the stories of  
 Jeha for William.

q:im to stay  
 t:awil slow  
 st:awil slowly  
 s:γd to listen

nbarš

\*in:aš il:a žḥa in:aš ik:r isγad tadw:art . in:aš id:ud  
 g:brid in:aš l:adid:žmač dša yinias "bš:ḥa tadw:art ažḥa "  
 in:as "l:aystik: s:ḥa ". iɾawd ik: xf yun yaɾn in:as  
 "bš:ḥa tadw:art ažḥa ". in:as "l:aystik: s:ḥa ". in:aš

\*This story is one of a series of Jeha stories collected on tape in the field in the spring of 1967. The informant for this series is a 42 year old native speaker of Tamazight.

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

al:iy dyiwḍ yun in:as "bṣ:ha tadw:art aḥha ". in:aš  
iw:t: , iḡrfast: saxmfuf , iw:t: , iḡrfast: saq:mu .  
in:aš in:as "max al:iy itgid aya aḥha ?" in:aš in:as  
"dḡi k:r d:īyaš ḡr ṣ:lṭan . n:iyaš bṣ:ha tadw:art aḥha ,  
tk:rd tḡrfdit: iwq:mu !" in:aš d:und m:sduṣand ḡl lmhk:ama ,  
d:und , in:aš al:iy diwḍn ḡr lmalik: , in:aš in:as un:a  
"l:aybarkfik: asidi lmalik: , nk:in n:iyas bṣ:ha iḥha ,  
isḡad tadw:art , ik:r iw:t:iyis saxmfuf ." in:aš in:as  
"max aḥha al:iy tugid aya ? isurid: ḥṣuma ḡifš ? in:aš  
urgaz bṣ:ha tadw:art , tk:rd tḡrfdast: !" in:aš in:as  
iwa z:al:ay xf rb:i dn:bi asidna ". in:aš in:as l:ahmsl:iḡlik:  
an:bi ". in:as "ṣawd ṣ:alat ṣl n:abi ". in:as  
"l:ahmsal:iḡlik: arasul:ah ". in:as "ṣawdaḡ tazal:it: xf  
n:bi ". in:aš l:iy in:a amšis: , in:aš izḡf lmalik: ,  
ik:r , in:aš ik:r xf lk:rsi , in:as "iwa barak:a xlaṣ: !  
is ḡurš ṣa n:a t:inid mad ḡas l:ahmsl:iḡlik: arasul:ah ?"  
in:aš in:as "iwa . ayn:a axf asḡrfḡ tadw:art ayn:a .  
iḡd:bi bṣ:ha tadw:art . bṣ:ha tadw:art , al:iy zḡfḡ  
ḡrfḡast: "

### Vocabulary:

tadw:art	tripe
abrid	way, road
ḡ:brid	on the way
( y abrid --> y ubrid -->ḡ:brid)	Lit. 'in the street'
ḡmṣ	to meet
t:ḡmṣ → d:ḡmaṣ	VH of ḡmṣ 'to meet'
l:adid:ḡmaṣ	whenever he meets (nearer)
dša	and (with) somebody
bṣ:ha	congratulations

Unit 6

---

i vawd	he repeated (again)
γrf	to throw at
iγrfast:	he threw it (f) at
axnfuf	face (derogatory usage)
aq:mu	mouth, face
m:sduœ	recipro-causative of (d u 'to sue')
un:a	that one
hšuma	shame
is urid:	is it not...? (Isn't there..?)
amšis:	like that (thus)
z f	to be mad at someone
barak:a	enough
barak:a xlas:	Stop it!
ayn:a axf asγrfγ	that is why (which on to him) I threw at him
v d:b	to torture.

6.2. Grammatical Notes and Drills

1. lalwan (sg: /l:un/)	'Colors'
(a) aml:al ~ umlil (m)	white
taml:alt ~ tumlilt (f)	white
abx:an (m)	black
tabx:ant (f)	black
azgza (m)	green/blue
tazgzawt (f)	green/blue
azg:aγ (m)	red
tazg:aγt (f)	red
awraγ (m)	yellow
tawraγt (f)	yellow
aq:hwi (m)	brown
taq:hwiyt (f)	brown
(b) mimš tga lq:amiža	What is the color of
n:a tsγid ?	the shirt you bought?
mimš	how is? what is?
tsγid	you bought
(c) γuri taqb:ut tumlilt	I have a white djellaba.

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| (d) mimš iga s:rwal<br>n:a ysya ? | What is the color of<br>the trousers that he<br>bought? |
| (e) γurš t:rik:u azgza            | You have a green (blue)<br>sweater.                     |
| (f) mat:a l:un n:a trid ?         | What color do you want?                                 |

### 6.3 Expressing the idea of "I have a headache" in Berber

In Berber the above idea comes as:

Literally: "It (m) killed me the head."

inγayi yxf	
inγa	it (m) killed
-i	me (D. obj)
ixf	head

### Conjugation of verb nγ 'to kill' - Past tense (Past Tense form denoting action at the present time)

nγiγ	I killed
tnγid	you killed
inγa	he killed
tnγa	she killed
nnγa	we killed
tnγam	you (m.p.) killed
tnγant	you (f.p.) killed
nγan	they (m) killed
nγant	they (f) killed

### Pronouns as 'Direct Object of the Verb'

inγa	yi	He killed me.
inγa	š	He killed you (m.s.)
inγa	šm	He killed you (f.s.)
inγa	t	He killed him.
inγa	t:	He killed her.
inγa	yay	He killed us.
inγa	kn	He killed you (m.p.)
inγa	knt	He killed you (f.p.)
inγa	tn	He killed them (m)
inγa	tnt	He killed them (f)

inɣayi yxf	I have a headache.
inɣat ix̣f	He has a headache.
inɣat: ix̣f	She has a headache.

Some Nouns to be used in this context:

ix̣f (m)	head
ṭid: (f)	eye
al:n (f.p.)	eyes
amz:uɣ (m)	ear
imž:an:	ears
tignzar (f)	nose
anšuš (m)	lip
anšušn	lips
tuɣmst (f)	tooth
tuɣmas	teeth
tadawt (f)	back
ul (m)	heart (refers to stomach)
idmar: (m)	chest
aɗar (m)	leg, foot
iɗar:	legs, feet
aɸus (m)	hand, arm
ifas:n	hands, arms

Also connected with the verb /ɣ/ 'to kill' are the following expressions: 'I am hungry' and 'I am thirsty'.

Note:

laz	hunger
fad	thirst

e.g.

inɣayi laz	I am hungry
inɣat fad	He is thirsty

Translate:

- 1) She has a headache.
- 2) His back hurts.
- 3) I have a toothache.
- 4) Her eyes hurt.
- 5) My hands hurt.

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

- 6) His ear hurts him.
- 7) My leg hurts me.
- 8) Your eye hurts.
- 9) His legs hurt.
- 10) I have a stomach ache.
- 11) He is hungry.
- 12) We are thirsty.
- 13) I am hungry.
- 14) She is thirsty.
- 15) He has a headache.

### 6.4. Translate

- 1) Once Jeha bought a djellaba and he passed by a person who told him "Congratulations on the djellaba, Jeha."
- 2) Jeha passed by another man who told him "Congratulations on the djellaba, Jeha."
- 3) Jeha was mad; he hit him.
- 4) This man said "I'll sue you at the court of law before the king."
- 5) The king said to Jeha, "Why did you do that? Aren't you ashamed of yourself?"
- 6) Jeha told him, "I got mad when he said congratulations on the djellaba, so I hit him."

### 6.5. Translate:

- 1) in:aš il:a yun urgaz ismns ħusa iz:nz šrat: ntfunasin iɛm:is n:a urasixl:isn .
- 2) izɛf ħusa , id:a ʔr tad:art l:malik: t:afad adidɛu ɛm:is .
- 3) l:iy ibda ħusa arisawal ilmalik: , in:as lmalik: "barak:a xlaš: aħusa , d:u ʔrd iɛm:iš " .
- 4) in:as lmalik: iɛm:is nħusa "max al:iy tn:aɣm ?"
- 5) in:as ɛm:is nħusa ilmalik: "urɣuri ša l:flus dɣi asidi lmalik: " .



Unit 7

7.1 Sofa Talk after Dinner II

bas:u

mag:a s:uq: as:a ?

How was the market to-day?

is i◊m:r mad uhu ?

Was it full or not?

mag:a (<may iga)

what is, how is?

i◊m:r

it (m) is full (was full)

mad uhu

or not?

lmstafa

i◊m:r . max al:iy

It was full. Why?

urtsw:iq:d ?

Haven't you gone to the market?

bas:u

q:imiy ads:uy šan d:ra

I stayed to water the corn.

q:im

to stay

sw

to drink

s:w

causative: give a drink or irrigate.

qs:u

isur tžmi:d dhmad nayt ◊li ?

Have you met Ahmed of Ayt Aly ?

lmstafa

an:ayt nt:a urassiwy . max ?

I saw him but I did not talk to him. Why?

an:ay

to see

an:ayt

I saw

an:ayt

I saw him

qs:u

iṭfari šal lflus . nga s:uq:a

He owes me some money.

anžm◊ , nt:a urd:iy .

We agreed to meet this market but I did not go.

ṭfar

to owe

nt:a

but

lmstafa

mr it:n:id adasiniy aditntidis .

Had you told me, I

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

mastz:nzid ?		would have talked to him. What did you sell him?
mr		if (for past or impossible or contrary to fact.)
mš		if (for pres. or probable or possible)
ini		to tell
tn:id		you said
mr it:n:id		if you had said it (m) to me.
-tnt		them (f.p.) (refers to money, which is f.p.)
adiš		he will give
aditntidiš		he will give them (f.p.) (= money) to me.
tz:nzid		you sold
	<u>qs:u</u>	
z:nziyas yut ʕž:iyt		I sold him a calf
s:uq:a yzrin .		last market.
aʕž:i		calf (m.s.)
iʕž:iyn		m.p.
taʕž:iyt		f.s.
tiʕž:iyin		f.p.
zry		to pass
izrin		(past participle) the one that passed.
	<u>bas:u</u>	
šhal ?		How much?
	<u>qs:u</u>	
tlt alaf ryal .		3000 ryals.
	<u>lmstafa</u>	
is datž:užudm itmɣra mađ tsulm ?		Are you getting ready for the wedding or not?
ž:užd		to get ready
mađ tsulm		or you are (have) not?

Unit 7

	<u>qs:u</u>	
iwa nd:a ʕliħal .		Yes. We are almost ready.
ʕliħal		almost
	<u>bas:u</u>	
ma dayt:awl: ?		Who is getting married?
dayt:awl: (<dayt:awln)		present part. of /awl/ 'is getting married'.
	<u>qs:u</u>	
dant:awl imuħan:γ .		(Our) Muħa.
-n:γ		our
	<u>bas:u</u>	
y:iħ ! ma dast:awlm ?		Is that so? Whose girl is he going to marry?
dast:awlm		you (m.p.) arrange marriage for him.
	<u>qs:u</u>	
faħma nayt unbařš .		Faħma of Ayt Nbařsh.
max isurt:zrid ?		Why? Haven't you heard?
zr		to hear about
	<u>bas:u</u>	
la . al: dγi tibdr lmstfa .		No. I only heard it when Mustafa mentioned it.
al:		until
bdr		to mention
ibdr̄t		he mentioned it
	<u>lmustafa</u>	
ha nbařš id:ad adaγyini		Here comes Nbařsh who
yut l:q:ist .		will tell us a story.
adaγyini		he will tell us
	<u>wilyam</u>	
is ts:nd iħa l:q:ist yaħn		Nbařsh, do you know
nħħa anbařš ?		another Jeha story?
	<u>nbařš</u>	
y:iħ . ʕd:ant .		Yes, I know many.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

wilyam

iwa , q:isay yut .

Then tell us one.

nbarš

in:aš in:as diγ žha , in:aš ik:r , in:aš yun was: ,  
in:aš in:as lmalik: "ixs:a ažha riγ adit ebrd šhal ag:l:an  
yd:unit ". iwa in:aš ik:r žha , in:aš in:as "yal:ah  
anf:γ γr br:a ." in:aš f:γn . in:aš l:ayt: ebar sya  
iebr sa , isawd iebr sa al:iy iwhl , in:aš yasid yut  
tgust , in:aš art:ik:at , art:ik:at , art:ik:at , al:iy  
td:a g:ašal . in:aš in:as " iwa han am:as nd:unit aya "  
in:as "imaš in:an am:as nd:unit aya ažha ?" in:as "asidi  
am:asns aya . al: mš uritumind , d:u ebr šg: at:an:ayd  
id: am:as mad urid: am:as " .

in:aš ik:r žha diγ in:aš yut l:mrt in:aš id:ud γr  
lmalik: s:bah in:aš nt:a ykžmd γurs in:aš in:as "s:b:hna  
el l:ah ažha ! dr:g: udmnš zy yifi ! " in:aš id:ud al:  
imi l:mhk:ama , in:aš iy z yun uhfur al:iy tiγza n:a  
sit:amz ixfnš . in:aš ig diks ixf . in:aš l:a dit:d:u  
ša yafd žha iga amšis: id:u yrul un:a did:an . in:aš al:iy  
iwhl in:aš in:as ilwazir awd:i raša as:a urdid:i γr lmhk:ama  
ag:d yun nbnađm ! ixš:a at:sig:rd urin: at:an:ayd mag:žran ".  
in:aš if:γd , yafd žha il:a yufs ixf g:hfur . in:aš "awra  
at:an:ayd žha mag:a ". in:aš iyras in:as "mat:a wya ažha ?"  
in:as "iwa asidi t:n:idi dr:g:i udmnš , hayi γziγ ahfur ,  
f:rγ ixfinw " .

Vocabulary:

diγ	again
ixs:a	must (It is necessary)
riγ	I want
ebr	to measure, weigh
ag:l:an	there is (<ay il:an 'which is')

Unit 7

---

d:unit	the world
f:γ	to go
br:a	outside
sya	this way
sa	the other way
whl	to get tired
asy	to carry
yasid	he brought, carried nearer (Aorist)
tgust	peg
k:at	VH of /w:t/ 'to hit'
art:ik:at	he hit it, he started hitting it
g:ašal (<y ašal)	in the earth
am:as	middle
imaš	(and) who to you...?
al:	until
al:iy	until or when
amn	believe
uritumind	you do not believe me
at:an:ayd	you will see
lmrt	time
sb:hna əl l:ah	Mor. Ar.=why did we see your face first thing in the morning?
dr:g:	hide!
udm	face
zy γifi	from me
γz	to dig
ahfur	a hole
amz	to catch
ixf	head
diks	in it
rar	to go back
af	to find
rwl	to run away
awd:i	say! oh you! hey!
bnadm	person

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

sig:r	to look around
urin:	over there
at:an:ayd	you (sg) will see
žru	to happen
ižra	it happened
yafd	he found (nearer)
afs	to thrust into
yufs	he put it
awra	come!
iγras	he called him
mat:a wya ?	What is this?
tn:idi	you said to me

### 7.2 Translate

- 1) The king wanted Jeha to measure the world.
- 2) Jeha measured here and there.
- 3) When Jeha got tired he pounded a peg into the ground and said it was the middle of the world.
- 4) Jeha said to the king, "If you don't believe me, go and measure it yourself."
- 5) The king said to Jeha, "Go, get lost".
- 6) Jeha dug a hole.
- 7) He hid his head in the hole.
- 8) Whenever someone came and found Jeha in this state, he would run.
- 9) The king said that not even a single person came to court.
- 10) Jeha told the minister "The king told me to hide my face".

### 7.3 Translate

One day the king said to Jeha, "I want you to measure the world." Jeha went out and started measuring here and there until he got tired and pounded a peg into the ground. Then he said to the king, "Here is the middle of the earth, my lord." The king said to him, "Who told you that this is the middle of the world, Jeha?" Jeha said to the king, "If you do not believe me, go and measure it yourself and see whether this is the middle of the world or not."

7.4 Translate

One morning Jeha went to see the king at the court of law. The king shouted at him, "Go hide your face! (go, get lost)". Jeha went out and dug a hole in front of the door of the court and hid his head in it. Whenever someone came and found Jeha in this state, he would run away. The king and his minister stayed in the court of law until they got tired. The king said to the minister, "Not even a single person came to the court today. Go and see what happened." The minister went out and saw Jeha with his head in the hole. He asked him "What is this, Jeha?" Jeha said to him, "The king told me to hide my face and here I dug a hole and hid my head."

Translate:

- 1) in:aš il:a yul lmalik . in:aš id:a ʔr yun urgaz .  
in:aš in:as ixʂ:aš at:ʔzd yun wanu al:tafd aman .
- 2) in:aš id:a urgaza ʔr br:a ibda arig:az , (ʔ:az/ is VH  
of /ʔz/), ariq:az, ariq:az al:iy iwhl yaf lg:ayz .
- 3) iwa id:a ʔl lmalik in:as "asidi lmalik url:in ša w:aman  
din: ."
- 4) in:aš in:as lmalik "max aliiy urtyzid ?"
- 5) in:as urgaza "ʔziʔ asidi lmalik walayn:i urufiʔ ʔas  
lg:ayz ".
- 6) in:aš ifrḥ lmalik: bz:af ʂad . išas bz:af l:flus .





Unit 8

8.1 Sofa Talk after Dinner III

	<u>sɛid</u>	
walayn:i ihma was:a ! hmu ihma		Oh! It's hot today. to be hot it (m) is hot
	<u>ɛq:a</u>	
datsɣus tafušt n:it . ɣus sɣus tafušt n:it		It (the sun) burns. to burn cause to burn the sun indeed
	<u>sɛid</u>	
tafušt ntgnaw aya .  tignut tignaw		This is the heat of the sun before the storm. storm (f.s.) storm (pl), thunderstorms
	<u>ɛq:a</u>	
ša ysignaw urdhir: altu .  isignu isignaw dhr urdhir:		Clouds have not appear- ed yet. cloud clouds to appear they (m) did not appear
	<u>sɛid</u>	
ag:d idl:i amši ay tga .  ag:d amši ay tga		It was the same yes- terday. also like this (the same) it (f.)(refers to the sun) is
	<u>ɛq:a</u>	
may šin:tumz idl:i ?  may tumzšin:		Where were you when it rained yesterday? where she caught you there (it rained)
	<u>sɛid</u>	
tumzin: g:igran . išg: ?		I was in the fields, and you?

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

tumzin: g:igran		it (f.) caught me there in the fields
	<u>sq:a</u>	
d:ɣ ads:irdɣ . ɣas nk: iwdɣn: asif , bdunt tgnaw , day ɣaydɣd qbl adiw:t unzar .		I went to wash my clothes and as I reached the river, the storm began. Then I came back before rain fell.
s:ird iwdɣn: bdunt ɣaydɣd qbl adiw:t anzar		to wash I reached there they (f) began (storms) I returned here before it will hit rain
	<u>sɛid</u>	
is tsl:id itgnaw . sl: tsl:id		Do you hear the storm? to hear you heard
	<u>sq:a</u>	
sl:iyasnt .		I heard it (here: them [f.] )
	<u>sɛid</u>	
ix:a lhal . maša yuf uya aq:raf dutfl ntgrst .		Bad weather. Anyhow this is better than the cold snow of winter.
x:u ix:a ix:a lhal lhal izil lhal maša af yuf uya />aya/ aq:raf		to be bad, to be near it is bad (f) it's bad weather weather, state nice weather but to be good it is better this the cold

Unit 8

atfl		snow
tagrst		winter
	<u>ɣ q : a</u>	
yal : ah qbl adaytamz .		Let us go before it rains. (Lit: be- fore it catches us).
	<u>muha</u>	
han nbarš id : ad zy bumya		Here comes Nbarsh from
γas q : imat urin : i ša		Boumia. Stay. It is
wnzar adiw : t .		not going to rain.
han		here
urin : i		it does not say (It does not intend. Refers to the future).
	<u>husa</u>	
is ts : nd nbarš awilyam ?		William, do you know
nt : a ag : an r : ays l : žamaɣa		Nbarsh? He is the presi-
lq : arawiya nbumya .		dent of the village council in Boumia.
s : n		to know
nt : a		he
r : ays		president (head)
lžamaɣa lq : arawiya		the village council
	<u>wilyam</u>	
y : ih ! riγ at : salγ		Is that so! I would
xf lžamaɣa lq : arawiya		like to ask him about
nbumya .		the village council in Boumia.
	<u>nbarš</u>	
s : alamuɣlik : um .		Hello.
	<u>kul :</u>	
ɣlik : ums : alam .		Hello.
	<u>husa</u>	
s : i nbarš may tɛnid ?		Nbarsh, how are you?
ists : nd wilyam amd : ak : l		Do you know William,
nmuha ?		Muha's friend?

nbarš

s:i wilyam may tənid labas ?

How are you William?

wilyam

labas lhmdul:ah . s:i nbarš  
riyadaγtsiwld šwi xf  
lžamača lq:arawiya nbumya .

Fine. I would like you  
to tell me something  
about the village  
council of Boumia.

nbarš

lžamača lq:arawiya nbumya ?

The village council  
of Boumia?

wilyam

y:ih .

Yes.

nbarš

iwa lžamača lq:arawiya  
nbumya labas diks .  
l:atxd:m , umnbəd  
tt:afq nt:at dš:ulṭa  
lmahl:iya , l:ant:g:a  
listižmač , l:ant:g:a  
γas lxdmt n:axf nmtafaq  
kul:ši . l:andr:s lxdmt  
n:aγ ixs:an , n:ayt:hm:an  
taq:bilt . lmslahat  
ntmazirt , mšhra ang  
šal:hašt l:bni ,  
l:antqr:ar ama at:nbnu  
zy lžamača lq:arawiya  
ama at:nbnu zy linčaš  
lwaṭ:ani . ama tn:a  
igan lhašt l:fn:iyin  
l:at:ntqr:ar hma at:f:γ  
at:nbnu . nk:ni γurγ  
lžamačan:γ tžil urdiks  
ag:d yut lhašt numxilaf .  
umnbəd la nk:ni la s:ulṭa  
lmahl:iya l:anxd:m γas lhašt

The village council of  
Boumia is good. We  
work with local auth-  
orities; we have meet-  
ings in which we dis-  
cuss the work together.  
We study the problems  
of the tribe and the  
good of the region. If  
we want to build some-  
thing either we build  
it through the village  
council or through the  
National Promotion  
Agency. There is no  
disagreement between  
the members of the council  
or between us and the  
local authorities. As  
for the funds for the  
council we get enough  
money from the market  
place. We built public

Unit 8

n:axf nmtafaq kul:n:γ .	bathrooms, a coffee
iwa dlhašt ns:uq: , l:anškžam	shop, shops from which
lflus ys:uq: . lxir adadnd:žma <sup>o</sup> .	we get money.
l:anškžam iš:nduq: luq:tn:a	
an:a ns:utr nγd: nqr:r: at:idns:ufγ ,	
l:at:idns:ufuγ . l:adiksnxd:m	
lmšlaha yadnin . am: šan trg:in .	
ag:d lhm:am mš nra at:nbnu , hat	
nbna yul lhm:am . asg:asa nbna	
lq:hwa , nbna tihuna , isul	
altu . lhašt n:a nra lmšlaha ,	
l:antqr:ar at:nxdm zy diks .	
x <sup>o</sup> dm	to work
l:a- (~da-)	present tense prefix
t:afq	to agree
s:ulta lmahl:iya	local authorities
listižma <sup>o</sup> ~ližtima <sup>o</sup>	meeting
n:axf	on which
mt:afq	reciprocal form of /t:afq/ "to agree"
kul:ši	everybody, everything
d <sup>o</sup> rs	to study
hm:a	to concern
taq:bilt	the tribe
lmšlahat (p)	the tribe
nra	we want
lhašt	thing
lbni	the building
qr:r	to decide
ama...ama...	either...or...
linaš lwat:ani	"National Promotion Agency"
tn:a igan	it is (that which is p.p.)
lfn:iyin	technicians
hma	in order to
nk:ni	we
amxilaf	disagreement
la- (+ noun or pron.)	and

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

kul:n:γ	all of us
lhašt ns:uq:	as far as the market is concerned
lxir	many
s:nduq:	box
luq:t	time
s:utr	to ask
nγd:	or
f:γ	to go out
s:ufγ	cause to get out
am:	like
tirg:in	canals
targa	canal
lhm:am	bathroom
tahanut:	shop
tihuna	shops

wilyam

isdatxd:m: γas ybumya	Does it serve only
mad ytq: bilin nbr:a	Boumia or the tribes
nbumya ?	outside Boumia?

nbarš

la , kul:ši yn:awahi ,	No, every region.
yn:awahi kul:ši .	

wilyam

kul:ši ?	Everyplace?
----------	-------------

nbarš

n:awahin:γ kul:ši , an:a yumz	All the regions under
lmaħk:aman:γ l:at:nxd:m .	the authority of Boumia.
kul:ši an:a tumz lžama'an:γ ,	We deal with problems
an:a tumz lžama'a lq:arawiya ,	in Boumia and outside
l:ant:q:a lmslaħa kul:ši .	it, such as irrigation
un:a γr il:a ša , wax:a il:a	problems and other
yš:antr da l:filaž , lhašt	problems related to
nš:antr da ylfilaž , l:at:nxd:m	agriculture.
whdut: lhašt nbr:a diγ am: trg:in	
ay γ'irsn igan lmuhim:a . šan	

Unit 8

tɣbula , šan lhašt n:a igan	
tin lflaha , šal lhašt	
aynt:mɣawan... .. id:lhašt	
ng:ulu l:bni dwan: ylfilaž ys:antr ,	
ɣlahq: šal lhašt lmuhim:a ns:antr	
l:at:nt:g:a ... ..	
n:ahiya /n:awahi, pl/	region
an:a yumz	that which he takes
lmhk:ama	the court (here refers to power, authority)
s:antr	the center
da	here
lfilaž	the village
whdut:	alone (by itself) fem.
whdut	alone (m)
diy	again
lmuhim:a	the importance, responsibility
taɣbalut: (sg)	spring
tiɣbul (pl)	springs
tin	that of (f)
lflaha	agriculture
mɣawan	reciprocal of /ɣawn/ 'to help'
id:-	but (whether, be it...) Question introducer for nominal sentences and certain verbal structures.
ng:ulu	we say (let's say) ( Ar.)
wan:	that

wilyam

imd:na n:a yl:an ylžamaɣa ,	And the people in this
zy da , zy bumya , mad l:an	council, are they from
win:a did:an zy tq:bilin	Boumia or from tribes
yadnin ?	outside?

win:a

those

nbars

la , l:an zy tq:bilin ,	No, they are from (other)
ɣlahq: da ybumya	tribes. I am the only

<p>uril:i ɣas nk: ag:l:an .  <span style="margin-left: 100px;">wilyam</span></p>	<p>one from Boumia.</p>
<p>ɣas šg:n:it ?  <span style="margin-left: 100px;">nbarš</span></p>	<p>Only you!</p>
<p>walayn:i l:an shdaš .  k:u taq:bilt l:adiks dit:d:u  yun , yili ɣurɣ r:aysn:ɣ .  l:ant:žm ɔ ad:ay yili ližtimaɔ .  l:ant:g:a listidɔa , l:at:g:a  s:uḷta lmahliya , l:at:g:a  listidɔa , l:at:ini yt:arix  w:ayflan , g:as: w:ayflan  ad:td:um hat ɣurun listižmaɔ .  l:ant:žmaɔ , am:a anqr:r ayn:a  yl:an ɣd:... ylmizaniy:a ɣd:  ylhašt n:ay it:hm:an ,  l:ant:g:a listižmaɔ , ad:ay  nfd!a , nd:u , k:uša id:u  ibrdanns .</p>	<p>There are 11 members,  one representing  each tribe. We have  a president and we  meet regularly.</p>
<p>k:u  yili  listidɔa  t:arix  w:ayflan  y+as:--&gt; y+was:--&gt;g:as:  ɣd:  lmizaniy:a  fd:a  k:uša  abrid  ibrdan</p>	<p>every  there is  calling  the date  such and such  in the day  or  the budget  to finish  each one  way  ways</p>

8.2 Translate

- 1) It is cold today.
- 2) It is hot today
- 3) The sun is hot (burns).



## Unit 8

---

- 4) This is the heat of the sun before the storm.
- 5) It was the same (like this) yesterday.
- 6) Yesterday I was in the fields and it rained.
- 7) I went to visit my uncle and when I was coming back, it rained.
- 8) The storm began and I came back before the rain fell.
- 9) Do you hear the storm?
- 10) This is better than the cold snow of winter.
- 11) Nbarsh, do you know William, Muha's friend?
- 12) William, Nbarsh is the president of the village council.
- 13) Nbarsh, I would like to ask you about the village council.
- 14) We work with local authorities.
- 15) We hold meetings and study the work that concerns us.
- 16) We do the work on which we all agree.
- 17) If there is something to be built, we see whether we build it through the village council or the National Promotion Agency.
- 18) There is no disagreement between the local authorities and the members of the council.
- 19) We get money from the market place.
- 20) We built a public bathroom.
- 21) This year we will build a coffee-shop.
- 22) We will build 16 shops.
- 23) There are eleven members, one representing every tribe.
- 24) We have a president. When there is a meeting, we call the members. We set a date (such and such a day).
- 25) After the meeting everyone goes his way.

### 8.3 Translate

- 1) l̄zama ʕa lqarawy:a nbumya t̄l:a ɣurs lxdmt bz:af ʕlahq:  
datxd:m bumya dn:awahi kul:ʃi .
- 2) ihma lhal idl:i walayn:i izil lhal as:a .
- 3) l̄zamaʕan:ɣ at:bnu st:aʕʃ nthanut: dyut l:qhwa dyul  
lhm:am dyut ntmzgida da .
- 4) iq:rf lhal idl:i maʃa uriwiti unzar .
- 5) id:a rays ɣl l̄ztimaʕ adisiwl xf imnȳi naytʕli dayt muhd  
xf waman.

- 6) adizrwasik:a mš ihma lhal and:u nk: dmuha uq:a sasif anum .
- 7) mš dhr: isignaw , adiw:t unzar .
- 8) ix:a lhal s:imanaya (s:imana 'week') .
- 9) ists:nd iša lq:isat nžha mad uhu ?
- 10) s:nγas iyut lq:ist nžha , walayn:i snγ ibz:af l:q:isat yadnin .
- 11) muha , mm:is n̄m:is n̄li , ag:an r:ays l:žamaša lq:arawy:a nbumya .
- 12) ̄li n̄:a igan mm:is n̄m:is nmuha iga r:ays l:žamaša lq:arawy:a nbumya .
- 13) ihma lhal as:a ; ag:d idl:i amši ag:a walayn:i idhri adiq:rf lhal ask:a .
- 14) datsγus tafušt ys:if bz:af vad .
- 15) dayk:at unzar bz:af ytgrst .
- 16) urin:i adiw:t unzar ̄lahq: uril:in ša ysignaw .
- 17) si ̄li , ists:nd muha mm:is nxalis l:bašir ?

Unit 9

9.1 wilyam ys:uq: nayt sy:aš .

William Goes to the Market in Ayt Ayache

	<u>wilyam</u>	
šhal taqb:ut:a ?		How much is this djellaba?
taqb:ut:		djellaba
	<u>hm:u</u>	
sbə my:a .		700 (rials)
	<u>wilyam</u>	
bz:af ayn:a . ini		Too much. Say something
ša w:awal l:məq:ul .		reasonable.
awal		talk (n)
ša w:awal (<ša nawal)		something
ləməq:ul		reasonable
	<u>hm:u</u>	
siwl !		You speak.
	<u>wilyam</u>	
tlit my:a wxmsin .		350 (rials)
	<u>hm:u</u>	
la , urtsl:ik .		No. Not acceptable.
sl:k		to be acceptable, to be
		reasonable (for price)
	<u>wilyam</u>	
iwa un:aš išžbn .		As you like it.
un:a		that
šžb		to please
išžbn		past participle
	<u>hm:u</u>	
st: my:a wxmsin .		650(rials).
	<u>wilyam</u>	
la , bz:af γifi . l:ayhnik :		No. This is too much
γif		for me. Goodbye.
		on/ before pronouns
	<u>hm:u</u>	
ad:ud bəda ! ini šan		Come. Say a reasonable
t:aman n:a ysl:kn .		price.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

t:aman		price
n:a		which
isl:kn		past participle of /sl:k/
	<u>wilyam</u>	
rb° my:a .		400 (rials)
	<u>hm:u</u>	
iwa °awd šwi .		Come on, go up a little bit.
	<u>wilyam</u>	
rb°my:a wšřin awal ang:aru .		420 (rials) is my final word.
ang:aru		last (m.s.)
	<u>hm:u</u>	
yal:ah l:ayrb:h . mrid: ša yadn ,		All right. If he were somebody else, I would not have given it to him for less than 600 rials.
urt:it:awy sql: mn st: my:at		
ryal .		
rbh		to gain, to succeed
mrid:		if (it were)
ša yadn		somebody else
urt:it:awy		he will not take it (f.)
ql:		less
mn		than
9.2 wilyam id:a sahidus		
William Goes to a "hidus" Dance.		
	<u>nbarš</u>	
is dat:d:ud sahidus tadg:at: ?		Are you going to the dance this evening?
ahidus		dance
tadg:at:		evening
	<u>°q:a</u>	
max ? is il:a ša whidus ?		Why? Is there any dance?
	<u>nbarš</u>	
il:a		Yes, (there is).

Unit 9

	<u>ʿq:a</u>	
y mi ?		Where ?
	<u>nbarš</u>	
yayt umyar .		In the village of Ayt Umghar.
	<u>ʿq:a</u>	
nk: bəda ša wrtzriy .		I myself have not heard
maš tin:an ?		of it. Who told you?
zr		to see, know of
wrtzriy (<urtziry)		I didn't know of it
in:an		participle of /ini/
	<u>nbarš</u>	
muha nayt hm:u .		Muha Hmmu .
	<u>ʿq:a</u>	
isdayt:d:u bas:u ?		Is Bassu going?
	<u>nbarš</u>	
max ? isnn:a and:u bla		Why? Are we going to
anš:adn:ʿ ?		go without our poet?
ini		to say (here: intend)
isnn:a		do we plan to
bla		without
anš:ad		poet
	<u>ʿq:a</u>	
is iga ša nt:lawt tuždit:		Did he compose a new
mad uhu ?		poem or not?
t:lawt		poem
uždid		(m) new
tuždit: (< tuždidt)		(f) new
	<u>nbarš</u>	
ʿniy ar iga ša .		I guess he did.
ʿniy		I think, I guess.
ar-		that (here)
	<u>ʿq:a</u>	
ha bas:u id:ad .		Here comes Bassu.
	<u>bas:u</u>	
s:alamuʿlikum .		Hello.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

<p style="text-align: center;"><u>kul:</u></p> <p>ⵍlik:ums:alam .</p>	<p>Hello.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>husa</u></p> <p>abas:u q:isay ša yzlan iwilyam adis:γd , ⵍlahq: nra at:nawy sahidus tadg:at: .</p>	<p>Bassu, sing some songs so that William can hear you because we will take him to the dance this evening.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>bas:u</u></p> <p>wax:a . γrd iša l:wašun adaγawn: . γr γrd</p>	<p>All right. Call some kids to help us. to call to call (+ proximity)</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>husa</u></p> <p>aⵍli ! ahd:u ! albašir ! amimun ! ad:uyad: !</p>	<p>Aly, Hddu, Lbashir, Mimun, come here.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>bas:u</u></p> <p>ists:nm it:lawt "n k:u yun datnyal:a ?"</p>	<p>Do you know the song of "k:u yun datnyal:a"?</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>lwašun</u></p> <p>y:ih , t:lawt izil: aya . izil:</p>	<p>Yes. This is a nice song. participle of /izil/ (is nice)</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>bas:u</u></p> <p>yal:ah , adž ad:awiγ lk:amanža . adž lk:amanža t:lawt . yak: ayma , aymanw k:u yun datnyal:a .</p>	<p>All right. Let me get my violin first. let me violin The Song.</p>

- 1 { (a) hayaš tihm:amin y tad:art ayasy:ad  
(b) tin:a iwalfn afus urid: am: tin iq:šmir:

- 2 { (a) atalxatmt igam uđad awnul at:d:ud  
(b) al:iy tiwd afus iwn:a uris:in: lxir

yak:	vocative
ayma	oh my brother
k:u yun	everyone
datnyal:a	he cries
al:	to cry
tn	them (refers to tears)
hayaš	here are
taħm:amt (f.s.)	pigeon
tiħm:amin	pigeons
asy:ad	hunter
tin:a	those (f)
walf	to get accustomed to
afus	hand
urid:	not
am:	like
tin	that of (f)
iq:šmir:	rocks
talxatmt	ring
igam	to you (f) he did
adad	finger
awnul	importance
at:d:u	you will go
al:iy	until
awd	to reach
iwin:a	to those (m)
isin	to know
uris:in	he did not know

wilyam

t:lawn izil: aya .	This is a nice song.
sl:iyas y lidaša .	I heard it on the radio.
abas:u ! iniyay	Bassu, would you sing
"ahl:unw awra "	"ahl:unw awra" for us?
sl:	to listen
sl:iyas	I listened to it
lidaša	broadcasting, radio
iniyay	station
	tell

ahl:unw  
awra!

oh darling!  
come!

THE SONG IS ON TAPE IN THE LANGUAGE LABORATORY

9.3. Translate

9.3.1.

- A. How much are the trousers?  
B. 250 ryals.  
A. That is too much.  
B. How much do you want to pay?  
A. 100 ryals.  
B. No. Not acceptable. Say something reasonable.  
A. 110 ryals.  
B. No.  
A. As you like it.  
B. 180 ryals  
A. No. This is too much for me. Goodbye.  
B. Come. Say a reasonable price.  
A. 120 ryals.  
B. Go up a little bit.  
A. 125 ryals is my final word.  
B. All right.

9.3.2.

- A. Are you going to the dance tomorrow?  
B. Is there a dance?  
A. Yes.  
B. Is our poet going?  
A. Yes.  
B. Did he compose a new poem or not?  
A. Yes.  
B. I'll go.

9.3.3. Translate

- A. šhal lxyar ?  
B. ššra w:ar:ryal: .



## Unit 9

---

- A. ʕbri yut l:k:ilu .  
B. ʕas ayam ixs:an alal:a ('madam')  
A. zaydi ('to add') yul lk:ilu nmaṭiṣa . mšhal bʕda imaṭiṣa ?  
B. xmsa wʕšrin .  
A. z:al: xf n:bi . ini ša w:awal l:mʕqul .  
B. iwa . ini šm: .  
A. iwa šg: ag:z:nzan ! (<ay iz:n:zan)  
B. ʕšrin w:ar:yal alal:a . awal l:mʕqul aya .  
A. iwa xmstaʕš w:ar:yal ; awal ang:aru .  
B. ini bʕda istrid ša yʕdnin ?  
A. y:ih riʕ ša nl:ubya . mšta l:ubya bʕda ?  
B. ʕšra w:ar:yal: .  
A. ši tlata kilu nl:ubya .  
B. wax:a alal:a .

### 9.3.4. Translate

1. Wilyam adid:u sahidus tadg:at: . adimun nt:a dmuha ʕlahq:  
iʕžbas uhidus bz:af .
2. urdžin isl: wilyam it:lawta .
3. isl: wilyam it:lawta yr:adyu .
4. urʕursnil:i unš:ad .
5. ʕžbnas izlan iwlyam bz:af ʕad l:iyasn is:ʕd .
6. in:as wilyam imuha "riʕ anmun sahidus " .
7. imun muha dwilyam sahidus .
8. iʕrad unš:ad iša l:wašun adas ʕawn: .
9. yiwid unš:ad lkamanžans .



Unit 10

Unit 10: tawada nwilyam zy ayt ʕy:aš .

William Leaves Ayt Ayache.

wilyam

iwa hatin ursxiy add:uʕ .

frhy bz:af surhab n:a

yitgam kul:n:un .

d:u

tawada

sxu

rhb

arhab

tgami

n:a yitgam

I wish I could stay  
more. I enjoyed your  
hospitality very much.

to go

going, departure

to be generous

to welcome

welcome

you (m.p.) did to me

which you (m.p.) did to  
me

husa

iwa uraš ngi ašmil . am:

tadartnš aya lhmdul:ah .

You are very wel-  
come.

wilyam

ičžbi wutšin:un bz:af ʕad .

ixs:a aditinin mimš dat:g:am

iwsnwin:un , t:afad adassnʕty

itmd:ut:inw .

čžb

utši

aditinin

mimš

s:nw

asnwi

t:afad

nʕt

snʕt

I liked your food  
very much. I would  
like to take the  
recipes for my wife.

to like

food

you (m.p.) will tell me  
how?

to cook (causative of /nw/)

cooking

in order to

to show

causative

husa

wax:a . afadma , amimuna ,

alʕziza ad:und: . ira wilyam

ak:ntisal . amuha , q:im yr wilyam

hay:i dyi ad:ʕaydy .

All right. Fatma,  
Mimuna, Iʕziza, come.  
William wants to ask  
you some questions.  
Muha, stay with William;  
I will be back soon.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

k:nt		you (f.p. obj.)
q:im		stay
ɔri		now
	<u>fadma, mimuna, lʕziza</u>	
l:ahɪʕawn .		Hello.
	<u>wilyam</u>	
l:aysl:m .		Hello.
	<u>muha</u>	
axalti mimuna , in:am urgaza ixs:am adastinid mimš dat:g:ad id:ʕam .		Aunt Mimuna', this man wants to know the re- cipe for the couscous.
	<u>mimuna</u>	
wax:a . l:adnt:agm aman zg:anu . ns:ird tazlaft , ns:ird lbrma , ns:ird asksu , ngr aksum , ngr azalim , iwa ngrtn . ad:ay yisis , l:adnt:asy s:mida , l:at:ng:ar ytzlaft , art:nft:l swag:r: n:a ynɔdn , umnbɔd ad:ay t:nftl l:at:nsak:a ibusy:ar l:asnt:ini buhrara . nasy ikurayn n:a ixatar: , nrmitn g:swi , nɔawdas diy ybuhrara , nasit sumaq:an . l:ayng:a ily amzwaru , nalsas wis:in , wis:šrad , nql:b nafn: han aksum inwa , lxudrt tnwa . ngr imrɔan , nsx:nt swudi , ngrt yt:bsil , ns:utid , ngrt xf t:bla . un:a yran lmɛilq:a ytšis: , un:a yran afus itšis: .		All right, we bring from the well, clean the pots and put meat, onions, and vegetables to cook. Then we roll semoulina in flour and sift them in a sieve (with large holes), then in another sieve (with smaller holes). Then we put them to cook. When it is steamed for the first time, we take it out and then put it back. We do this three times. By then the meat is cooked. We take the semoulina and put some butter on it, and we put sauce on it. Couscous is then ready to eat. You can eat with a spoon if you want or with your hand.
agm		to bring water
l:a-~ da-		present tense particle

anu	well
s:ird	to wash
tazlaft	large wooden or clay plate
lbrma ( =taqduht)	pot
asksu	top part of the couscous pot
gr	to throw (here: to put)
asis	to be warmed (water only)
yisis	Aorist of asis
s:mida	semoulina
ftl	to roll
ft:l	habitual form (VH) of /ftl/
ag:r:	flour
n:a	which
nγd	to grind (very fine)
inγdn	past participle
umnbɔd	and after
l:at:nsak:a ~ dat:nsak:a	we pass it
k:	to pass
sik:	causative of /k:/
busy:ar	sieve
l:asnt:ini (<ini)	to say
rmi	to mix
nrmitn	we mix them (f)
iswi	straw platter
amaq:an	sieve with small holes
q:n	to close
l:ayng:a	Hab. form of /nw/'to cook'
aly	go up (ily N of action)
srs	to put
als /ilsawn/ -pl.	to bring the couscous from the pot and put it back. The noun of action is /ils/. So, couscous is cooked in three /ilsawn/.
ql:b	to check
af	to find
nafn:	we find there (Aorist)

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

inwa	it is cooked
nw	to be cooked
imr̄yan	sauce
sx:n	to warm couscous with melted butter
t:bs̄il	plate
s:w	to water, to irrigate
ns:utid	we water it (m) (nearer)
t:bla	table
yran /<iran/	p.p. to want
lms̄ilq:a	spoon

muha

alɤziza , in:am urgaz  
mimš̄ adat:g:ad iw̄yrum .

Lɤaziza. He would like  
to know how you make  
bread.

lɤziza

ad:ay nra ang aŷrum ufd̄ir  
l:adnt:asy alms̄ir , n̄asid  
buš:y:ar amaq:an , ns:if:t ,  
iwa ngr̄tid ytzlaft , nḡ:it ,  
ngr buw̄yrum arit:hmu , ngas  
inyan , ngras ikš̄:idn . iwa  
asiŷd alms̄ir , asiŷd udi ytzlaft ,  
l:at:tdhanŷ al: dhnŷ , t:lxt: ,  
srsxt: ; iwa asiŷd diŷ yut yad̄nin ,  
dhnxt: , t:lxt: , al:t:ntlx kul: ,  
iwa arŷr:fŷ arg:arŷ ybuw̄yrum ,  
arn:nwaŷ , asiŷd udi diŷ , gxt  
g:un t:bs̄il yadn axatar tn:a  
dk:sŷ . gxt: g:udi al: s:nuy  
yš̄m:lŷ , asiŷasntid sm:rŷasnd  
aŷr:af suŷ:u nd:un , iwa art:t:an .  
iwa id: ad:ay nra diŷ ang win txmirt ,  
l:ans:ifif sbuš:y:ar g:lms̄ir ,  
nasid taxmirt ,ngt: ytzlaft , ngr  
aman . iwa arnt:g:a al: nisin is

If we want to bake un-  
leavened bread we knead  
the flour. We heat the  
pan and we cook the  
bread on it, after  
putting some butter  
on it. When it is  
cooked I put butter  
on it again and it's  
ready to be eaten.  
If I want to make  
leavened bread, I  
have to use yeast,  
and instead of a pan,  
I use the oven. After  
this the stew is ready  
and we eat it with  
the bread.

ig:a , ngas tisnt , nadžt  
 ytzlaft al: im:tn , ndl:ct  
 diγ xf t:bla , nawit safr:an ,  
 ns:nutid , ns:nu d:waz yd:ažin  
 nγd: t:awa , iwa nasid arnt:t:a .

ufdir	unleavened bread
almsir	tanned sheep skin
nasid	we carry (Aorist)
s:if:	to sift
buwγrum	clay tray
inyan	tripod, trivet
al:	until
t:l	to roll
γrf	to knead (flatten bread)
gr	to throw
g:ar	Hab. form of /gr/
gxt /~gγt/ also /-γ ~ -x / as first person singular inflective	I put it
axatar	big
k:s	to take out
šm:l	to finish
asiγasntid	I carry it to them
ε m:rγasnd	I fill for them
aγr:af	pitcher
aγ:u	milk
aγ:u nd:un	skimmed milk
art:t:an	then they eat
win	that of
taxmirt	yeast
g:	to knead,
arnt:g:a	we start kneading
nisin	we know
is	that
tisnt	salt
adž	to let
imtn	it raised

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

<p>dl: ɛ          afr:an          d:waz          d:ažin          nɣd:          t:awa</p>	<p>to knead (flatten bread)          oven          stew          stew or clay pot in which          stew is cooked          or          metal pot</p>
<u>muha</u>	
<p>m:a ! mimš dat:g:ad id:ažin          ad:ay tirid at:nsbd ?          nsb</p>	<p>Mother, how do you pre-          pare stew?          to make stew</p>
<u>fadma</u>	
<p>ad:ay riɣ adnšbɣ l:at:g:aɣ          z:it , gɣ tisnt , gɣ libzar          gɣš:awniy:a , b:iɣas azalim ,          gxt adiq:la . ad:ay iq:la , yn:iɣ          inwa , srmɣ lxudrt , grɣast: ,          q:lay baɣata , nɣd: gɣas ɣas lxudrt          yadn al: inw , k:sxt , ns:nud          aɣrum safi .</p>	<p>When I want to cook stew,          I put some oil, salt,          black pepper, red pepper          in. Then I chop onions          and fry them, when done          I peel vegetables and          fry potatoes, or just          any other vegetables.          When done, I take it          out and eat it with          bread.</p>
<p>b:y          q:la          srm</p>	<p>to cut          to fry          to peel</p>
<u>wilyam</u>	
<p>walayn:i ɛžbni iɛban:          nmayš bz:af . mism uya ?</p>	<p>I like your mother's          clothes very much. What          do you call this? (point-          ing to something she wears).</p>
<u>muha</u>	
<p>mada l:asnt tutmin          ytmazirt da ?          mada          ls ~ ns (VH: /ls:a ~ ns:a/)          tiwtmin          tutmin</p>	<p>What do women wear around          here?          what          to wear          women          women (construct state).</p>



Unit 10

fadma

dans:ant ytmazirt s:ufit:ma ,  
 lsint yifs t:šamir butmg:rt: ,  
 lsint t:fina yifs , gnt lizar  
 yifs , hz:mnt slhzam .

s:ufit:ma  
 t:šamir

tamg:rt:  
 lizar  
 t:fina

/t:šamir/ and /t:fina/ go together as a two-piece ensemble of which /t:fina/ is the outer part and is usually transparent.

hz:m  
 lhazm

They wear their under-  
 shirt and a couple of  
 robes and they wear a  
 belt.

undershirt (for men or women)  
 long, closed robe worn under  
 other clothes.

collar  
 sari-like robe  
 a robe, open in front,  
 worn over /t:šamir/

to wear a belt  
 a decorated belt

muha

ilq:fađn , isdatnl:asn da  
 mad uhu ?  
 lq:fdan  
 lq:fađn

And do you wear caftans  
 here or not?  
 kaftan (decorative robe)  
 kaftans

fadma

dal:asnt lq:fađn , lsint  
 yifs t:fina .

They wear the caftan  
 and a "tfina" on it.

muha

t:fina xf lq:fdan ?

Tfina on the caftan?

fadma

y:ih .

Yes.

muha

mat:a lmudaya diy ?

What kind of fashion  
 is this?

lmuda

fashion

fadma

iwa an:a dat:g:an . un:a

That is what they do.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

yran dayt:g:a t:fina γ ifs ,  
un:a yran dayl:sa γ as lq:f<sub>dan</sub> .

There are those who like to  
put a tfina on it, and there  
are those who only wear a  
caftan.

muha

ima dal:asnt tiq:b:a  
mad timizar ?  
tamizart

And what do they wear,  
djellabas or timizar?  
cape-like coat wrapped  
around shoulders and tied  
in front.

fadma

mšd: tamdint dal:asnt  
tiq:b:a , mšd: br:a  
timizarin .

If they are from the city  
they wear djellabas. If  
they are from rural areas  
they wear "timizarin".

muha

itimizar latntt:g:ant  
iyxfawnsnt ?  
ixfawn (pl. of /ixf/)  
iyxfawnsnt

Do they make their own  
"timizarin" themselves?  
heads (here: self)  
for themselves

fadma

y:ih , l:atnt zd:ant  
iyxfawnsnt , γmsnt:nt  
γms  
γmsnt:nt  
zd

Yes. They weave them  
themselves and wear them.  
to cover  
they (f) cover themselves  
with them (f.)  
to weave

muha

nγd: datnts:aynt ys:uq: ?

Or do they buy them in  
the market?

fadma

l:ant tin:a uris:in: at:zd ,  
l:at:ts:ay ys:uq: .

There are those who do  
not know how to weave,  
and they buy them in the  
market.  
participle (neg.) of /isin/  
'to know'

uris:in:

Unit 10

Note: Grammatically the sentence should read:

l:ant tin:a uris:in: atntzdnt , l:atnts:aynt ys:uq:

muha

itimaziyin y br:a da yury ,  
isdat:g:ant l:tam mad uhu ?  
ybr:a da yury  
l:tam

Do Berber women here  
wear veils or not?  
here in our rural area  
veil (covering face below  
eyes)

fadma

tn:a yran dat:g:a l:tam  
tn:a yran dat:d:u amšis: .  
  
iran  
amšis:

There are those who  
wear veils and there  
are those who don't.  
who want (participle)  
like that

muha

walayn:i yury g:yrman....  
iyrm (pl. of iym)

But in our villages....  
villages

fadma

yury g:yrman la . yas amši  
ys:uq: , ytm dint .

In our villages we do  
not wear veils. We wear  
them only when we go to  
the market or to the  
city.

yas amši

just like this

muha

iyburksn , dat:g:ant tq:ašr  
iyburksn mad yas iburksn  
amšis: , mad dat:d:unt  
slhfa , mad ma dat:g:ant ?

How about shoes? Do  
they wear socks with  
shoes or not? Do they  
go bare-footed or what  
do they do?

iburksn

shoes

iyburksn

and the shoes (how about  
the shoes?)

tq:ašr

socks

lhfa

bare-footed

fadma

l:ant tin:a yt:g:an tq:ašr ,  
l:ant tin:a yt:g:an xs iburksn

There are those who  
wear socks and there

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

amšis: .		those who do not.
xs (xas)		just
	<u>muha</u>	
ilint tin:a yt:d:un slhfa ?		Are there women who go bare-footed?
ilint		they (f) are (Aorist)
Note: This sentence is a continuation of the idea mentioned in the previous sentence.		
	<u>fadma</u>	
ilint tin:a yt:d:un slhfa		Yes, there are lots of them.
iwa sd:ant sad .		
ilint		See above note.
	<u>muha</u>	
iyxf ? tistbniyin mad iknbaš mad...?		What do you wear on your head?
ixf		head
tasbniyt		head cover for women
tisbniyin		plural of /tasbniyt/
aknbuš		scarf (decorated)
iknbaš		plural of /aknbuš/
	<u>fadma</u>	
l:ant tin:a yt:as:an tisbniyin ,		There are women who wear
snat ntsbniyin , tas:tnt suəs:ab ;		up to two head covers
tl:a tn:a yt:g:an yas lfurara .		and tie them with a band, and there are those who only wear scarves.
as:		to tie
tas:a		VH of /as:/
aəs:ab		band (goes over the tasbniyt)
lfurara		scarf (simple)
	<u>muha</u>	
ad:ay thl:q: tmd:ut: ma datls:a ?		When the woman dresses up what does she wear?
məna , ad:ay yili ša l:oid		Let us say when she goes
nyd: ša ntmyra nyd: ša nyd: ša ,		to a feast or a wedding
ma datls:a ? mag:an l'nayt		or this or that, what
n:it ?		does she wear?

hl:q:	to dress up (for women)
m̄na	that is, let us say
l̄id	feast
n̄yd:	or
n̄yd: ša n̄yd: ša	or this or that
l̄nayat	to be well-dressed
n:it	indeed (here: "proper")

fadma

l̄nayat , l:atls:a s:ufit:ma ,	To be really dressed up
tls γifs t:šamir , t̄ls t̄:fina	a woman wears her under-
γifs , tg γifs lizar , t̄yms	shirt, a tshamir, a
amizar , t̄ls t̄isbniyin snat	tfina and a sari. She
su:s:ab n̄yd: tabuq:st n̄yd:	puts her coat on and
tabuq:st n̄yd: asfl , tg tixr̄sin	two head covers and a
nn:q:rt .	a band over them or a
	cord or an asfl and
	silver earrings.

lizar	a kind of sari
tabuq:st	a silk decorated cord
asfl	a colorful, decorated cord
tixr̄sin	earrings
n:q:rt	silver

muha

urid: d:hb ?	Aren't the earrings
	made of gold?
d:hb	gold

fadma

iwa is išne d:hb γur̄ ?	Well, gold is not pre-
br̄:a uril:i .	valent here.
šne	to be prevalent

muha

uril:i ? iwa imas dat:as:a	Oh, it is not. How does
lizar ?	she tie her sari ?
imas	and with what
as:	to tie

fadma

l:at:γm:s st̄γnas nn:q:rt .	She ties it with silver
	pins.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

ɣns		to pin
tasɣnst		a pin
tisɣnas		pins
	<u>muħa</u>	
l:at:g:a aq:ayn ?		Does she wear beads?
aq:ayn		beads
	<u>fadma</u>	
l:at:g:a aq:ayn , y:ih .		Yes, she does.
	<u>muħa</u>	
dmi ? tg tazult ?		And what else? Does she wear eye make-up?
dmi		And what else?
tazult		eye make-up
	<u>fadma</u>	
tg tazult , tg lmswak .		Yes, she wears eye make-up. She also cleans her teeth.
lmswak		particular bark used for cleaning teeth (nut-tree bark)
	<u>muħa</u>	
dlħn:a ?		How about henna?
ħn:a		henna
	<u>fadma</u>	
ħn:a diy , al: šaw:as: .		She wears henna some other day before the day on which she is dressed up.
urdat:t:g:a as:n:a ytlsa		
ħwayž .		
	<u>muħa</u>	
lyzriran ?		How about face decoration?
izriri		face decoration - painting
izriran		face decorations
	<u>fadma</u>	
l:ant tin:a tnit:g:an .		Yes, there are those who wear them.
tnit:g:an		they (f) do them
	<u>ħusa</u>	
s:alamuħlik:um .		Hello.

	<u>kul:</u>	
ɛlik:ums:alam warħmatul:ah .		Hello.
	<u>wilyam</u>	
iwa l:ayhn:ik:um tas:aʃta , un:a n:tgra diyun ʔr r:baɖ ha ladrisanw .		Goodbye now. If any of you comes to Rabat, here is my address.
gr		to throw
tgra		she throws
diyun		among you
ladrisa		address
	<u>husa</u>	
l:ayhn:ik: . al: ʃan tas:aʃt yadn .		Goodbye. We hope to see you some other time.
	<u>kul:</u>	
l:ayhn:ik awilyam .		Goodbye, William.

10.2.1. Translate

- 1) ifrħ husa surħab n:as gan idulanns .
- 2) uriʃzib wutši ihman .
- 3) snɛtas ihm:u mimš adat:gant id:ažin .
- 4) iʃzbi watay snɛ:naɛ bz:af ɛad .
- 5) aman n:a dnt:agm zg:anu dat:iq:rifn bz:af ɛad .
- 6) riʔ adisinʔ mimš dat:gam iwʔrumn:un t:afad adsnɛtʔ iwt:ma .
- 7) urdat:t:an md:n d:ažin slmɛilqa .
- 8) ad:ay riʔ adnsbʔ dayit:xɛ:a uksum dlxuɖrt dš:awny:a dlibzar  
t:isnt .
- 9) isdals:ant twtmin tiqb:a ybr:a ʔurʔ ?
- 10) m:a, ists:nd at:zt: timizarin ?
- 11) la , dat:s:aq: ys:uq: .
- 12) ad:ay tili ʃa ntmʔra dat:hl:aq: tmt:ut: , tɛs isban:  
uždidn , tg izriran , tg tazult , tg lmswak .
- 13) tn:ayi ut:ma urdat:ga lhn:a aš: l:frħ . mš tra at:g  
lhn:a datt:g:a dat (before) l:frħ .
- 14) in:as muha iwilyam "ši ladrisanš t:afad adn:ʔuršd:uʔ  
ʔr r:baɖ " .
- 15) isʔurun tga tqb:ut: lmuda mad uhu ?

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

- 16) urdazd:ant twtmin tiq:b:a da .
- 17) urdat:d:u slhfa itgrst vlahq: dayt:ili uq:raf .
- 18) ibr:a yury urdat:g:ant twtmin l:tam ?
- 19) mag:an l'nayt tixrsin nn:q:rt mad tin d:hb ?
- 20) mat:a wksuṃ n:aš it:šžibn wi wfunas mad wi whuli mad wi...?

### 10.2.2. Translate

- 1) I liked the tea very much.
- 2) I liked your food very much.
- 3) I would like to take your recipes for my sister.
- 4) Tell me how to make couscous so that I can give the recipe to my mother.
- 5) I wish I could stay longer.
- 6) I enjoyed your hospitality very much.
- 7) Mother, this man wants to know the recipe for the couscous so that he may show it to his wife.
- 8) When we want to make couscous, we bring water from the well, we wash the plate, we wash the pot, we wash the top part of the couscous pot, we put meat and onions in the pot to cook and when the water is warm, we roll semolina with flour in the plate and then we pass them through a sieve with big holes. We put the big pellets in a straw platter. Then we pass them again in a sieve with small holes. When the couscous is cooked three times, we check and find that the meat is cooked and that the vegetables are cooked. We mix the couscous with melted butter and put it in a platter. We put it on the table. There are those who eat it with their hands and there are those who eat it with a spoon.
- 9) Change the above passage so that the speaker is first person
- 10) Aunt Fadma, this man wants you to tell him how to make bread.
- 11) When I want to bake unleavened bread, I bring a piece of tanned sheep skin. Then I sift the flour through the sieve. I knead it and set some wood on fire to heat the pan on the tripod. I take butter and put it in the plate and knead everything very well. Then I cut it and put it on the pan. When it is cooked I put butter on it again. Here the bread is baked.



When I want to bake leavened bread I sift flour and put it in a plate and put in yeast and water and knead them well. Then I put some salt in it and let it stay until it rises and then flatten it on the table and bake it in the oven.

- 12) Change the above passage so that the speaker is first person plural.
- 13) Mother, how do you prepare stew?
- 14) When I want to cook stew, I chop onions and fry them in oil, then I peel vegetables and put them in the pot. Then I add tomatoes and potatoes and the meat to them and cook it on the fire until it is done and that is it.
- 15) I like your mother's clothes very much. What do you call this in Berber?
- 16) Mother, what do women wear around here?
- 17) They wear an undershirt, a two-piece robe and a belt.
- 18) Do they wear caftans here or not?
- 19) There are those who wear caftans and there are those who wear a tfina.
- 20) Do women wear djellabas or capes?
- 21) If they are from the city they wear djellabas, but if they are from the rural areas they wear the capes.
- 22) Do they weave their own capes?
- 23) Some women weave their own capes. If they do not know how to weave, they buy them in the market.
- 24) Mother, do Berber women wear veils in the rural areas?
- 25) We wear them only when we go to the market or to the city.
- 26) Do women wear socks with their shoes?
- 27) There are those who wear only shoes and those who wear socks with their shoes and those who go bare-footed.
- 28) What do women wear on their heads?
- 29) Two head covers tied with a band or just a scarf.
- 30) When a woman dresses up, let us say for a feast or a wedding, what does she wear?
- 31) She wears the undershirt, a two-piece long robe and a sari. Then she puts on two head covers and a band or a colorful cord over them. She wears silver earrings and pins her

### A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

sari with silver pins and wears beads and make-up and cleans her teeth.

32) How about henna?

33) She wears henna on a day before the day on which she dresses up.

## Unit 11

### Review

#### 11.1 lq:ist nžha

in:aš il:a žha bk:ri , in:aš ik:r išfas iyun urgaz lhđid  
ixznast , in:aš iq:im al:iy iq:ima , šhal mn'am . in:aš  
id:u , in:as "awd:i riγ ayn:a l:hđid , n:a γurš xznγ " .  
in:aš in:as "t:šant iγrđayn " . iwa in:aš im:sdu'ayisd γl  
lmalik: , in:aš in:as "awd:i haš žha , han may nga nk:ntis ,  
han may nga , dγi ixš:a adastinid lhq: ayn:a " . iwa in:aš  
id:ud žha , in:aš in:as "awd:i nk: šlγ uz:al iwrgaza as:n:a  
yasn:iγ awitid in:ayi t:šant iγrđayn " . in:aš in:as lmalik:  
"awd:i iq:dr at:t:šin iγrđayn uz:al " . in:aš "imas t:g:a  
dγi ?" in:as "adaššγ ladn an:ay tufid ša wγrđa adγifs  
txdmd al: t:amzd , at:tnγd ." in:aš in:as "wax:a " .  
in:aš isaš tawriq:t: isnya γifs lmalik: binahwa žha an:ay il:a  
ša wγrđa at:iγz ak:may il:a . in:aš ik:r in:aš as:n:a ik:r  
id:ud in:aš yawid ixd:amn yawitnid γr d:aw ntad:art l:malik: ,  
in:as "iwa γzat da " . in:aš arq:azn in:aš šwi han  
i's:asn hufnd γursn , in:aš w:tnt amznt . in:aš n:anas  
"mayt:g:d ?" in:as "il:a wγrđa da n:aytšan lhđid ikžm  
d:aw ntad:art " . in:aš n:anas "isthbld at:d:ud at:γzd d:aw  
ntad:art l:malik: ?" in:aš in:as "ha tawriq:t: išayit:  
γuri ladn " . in:aš š:kžmnt γr lmalik: . in:as "awd:i mat:a  
wya dat:g:ad ažha ?" in:as "asidi ha may t:g:γ: . aγrđa  
n:a yt:šan lhđid luq:tn:a n:axfaš štkay , nt:a d:un:a n:amitn:id  
iq:dr at:itš , hat ufixt as:a il:a ik:a d:aw ntad:artnš .  
dγi at:γzγ al: t:idnzq: . iwa in:aš art:s:an . in:aš  
in:as "dγi ažha l:ahisamh šsi bas mak:an . an:a izrin izry .  
dγi awra adaš xl:sγ uz:alnš " . in:aš ixl:sas lmalik: uz:al .

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

bk:ri	once upon a time, a long time ago
šf (~ š)	to give
xzn	to keep
awd:i	so and so, such and such
aγrda /iγrdayn/ pl.	mouse
dəu	to sue /m:sdu a/ reciprocal
haš	here he is
nk:intis	me and him
uz:al	iron
q:dr	to be able to
ladn	permission
af	find /tufid/ 'you found'
tawriq:t:	a piece of paper
snya	to sign ( French 'signer' )
binahwa	that ( Arabic )
ak:mayil:a	wherever it is
d:aw	under
γz	to dig /q:az/ Habitual Form
a s:as	a guard /i s:asn/ pl.
huf	to jump on
hbl	to become crazy, silly
štka	to complain
nzy	to pull out
t:s	to laugh /t:s:a/ habitual form
šī bas mak:an	it is all right ( Mor. Ar. Lit. 'no harm done' )
an:a izrin izry	whatever is past is past
awra	come!
xl:s	to pay

11.1.1 Answer the following questions:

- 1) ma siša žha iwrgaz ?
- 2) max ?
- 3) ma sin:a urgaz ižha ?
- 4) may gan ?
- 5) ma snin:a lmalik: ?
- 6) mag:a žha ?

7) ima sin:a lmalik: ?

11.2. Berber Food

wilyam

iniyi bəda madat:g:am  
iwut:ši ytmazirta ?

Tell me about food in  
this country?

muha

awd:i md:n da lmsakin ay gan .  
dat:t:an aksum zy s:uq: yr s:uq: .  
us:an n:a yadnin dat:t:an aYrum  
dwatay , mr:a ablbul , mr:a  
d:am .

People here are poor.  
They eat meat on market  
days. The other days  
they eat bread and drink  
tea. Sometimes they eat  
couscous.

wilyam

iyad:ay dYurun dd:un inbyawn  
ma dasnt:g:am ?

When you have guests what  
do you cook?

muha

danyr:s itmYrust , dant:g:a  
š:wi , dd:ažin , dd:am .

We kill a sheep (a sac-  
rifice); we make roast,  
stew and couscous.

wilyam

isdat:t:am lxudrt mad uhu ?

Do you eat vegetables or  
not?

muha

dant:t:a an:a dat:arw tmazirt ;  
batata , mažiša , tal:f:in ,  
xiz:u , azalim , taysayt ,  
dl:ubya .

We eat what we produce:  
potatoes, tomatoes, tur-  
nips, carrots, onions,  
squash and green beans.

wilyam

mimš dat:g:am id:am ?

How do you make couscous?

muha

danft:l s:mida , ngt g:asksu ,  
nsrs asksu xf tqduht n:a  
yl:an imryan dlxudrt duksum  
dat:nt:adža xf l'afit al:  
inw sirug:a . ad:ay inw ,

We roll flour and put it  
in a steamer. We put the  
steamer on another pot  
where there is sauce and  
vegetables and meat and

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

<p>datnsrus ytzlaft , ns:ut simryan .  mš tnga sug:r: nd:ra dasnt:ini  ablblul .</p>	<p>and leave it in the fire  until the couscous (the  flour pellets) is cooked.  When it is done, we put  sauce on it. If it is  made of corn flour, we  call it "ablblul".</p>
--	---

11.3 Borrowing Some Mint from the Neighbor.

<p style="text-align: center;"><u>zhra</u></p> <p>axalti fadma tn:am im:a  šasd ša nn:ɛnaɛ isaydd:an  ša ynbyawn .</p>	<p>Aunt Fatma, my mother  asks if you could give  some mint because she  has guests.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>fadma</u></p> <p>kžmd beda at:sud yul lk:as .</p>	<p>Come in first of all and  have a glass of tea.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>zhra</u></p> <p>la , ursuləy .</p>	<p>No. I have no time.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>fadma</u></p> <p>hat il:a yuzd .</p>	<p>It is ready.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>zhra</u></p> <p>g:ɔy iym:a aditny  mš ɛt:ry .</p>	<p>I am afraid lest my  mother beat me if I am  late.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>fadma</u></p> <p>adasiniy nk: ay šmyumzn  γas kžmd . bismil:ah .</p>	<p>I'll tell her that I de-  layed you. Just come in.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>zhra</u></p> <p>bismil:ah .</p>	<p></p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>fadma</u></p> <p>may dγurun did:an ?</p>	<p>Who came to your house?</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>zhra</u></p> <p>ut:ma duryazns .</p>	<p>My sister and her husband.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>fadma</u></p> <p>mandiksnt ?</p>	<p>Which one (among them)?</p>

Unit 11

lʕziza . l:a yʕl lbarak:a .	<u>zhra</u>	Aʕziza. Thank you.
igam s:aht . ha n:naʕ .	<u>fadma</u>	You are welcome. Here is the mint.
adamiš r:bi lxir .	<u>zhra</u>	Thank you.
ula šm:in azhranw .	<u>fadma</u>	You are welcome.

11.4 Review Exercises

11.4.1. Translate into English:

- 1) many trb:ad tamaziɣt ?
- 2) ylik:ul ymalik:an .
- 3) riɣ adrb:aɣ tamaziɣt mlih .
- 4) is il:a ša n:a ys:n tafraंसist da ?
- 5) s:nɣ tafraंसist dšwi ntmaziɣt .
- 6) s:nɣ išwi ntaɣrabt .
- 7) s:nɣ tafraंसist dt:fhamɣ ag:d tamaziɣt mš dasawl: md:n š:wi šwi.
- 8) s:nɣ itaɣrabt dšwi ntmaziɣt .
- 9) is il:a ša n:ay it:awan: ?
- 10) is t:l:a šan trbat: na yit:awan: ytad:art ?
- 11) isašišb lhal da ?
- 12) ičžbi lhal da bz:af sad .
- 13) is tl:a šan tad:art l:šri ?  
(/šru/ 'to rent' /l:šri/ 'for rent')
- 14) šhal ayt:ɣimad da ?  
(/q:im/ 'to stay' /t:ɣima/ habitual form)
- 15) sb šhur .

11.4.2. Translate into Berber.

- 1) What do you call this in Berber?
- 2) What do you call that in Berber?
- 3) Repeat, please.
- 4) I don't understand what you are saying.

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

- 5) I like your food very much.
- 6) I like the couscous very much.
- 7) I like the tea very much.
- 8) Americans do not drink mint tea.
- 9) Americans drink a great deal of coffee.
- 10) Many Americans do not put sugar in their tea.

### 11.4.3. Translate into English.

- 1) dant:g:a iful:usn dd:ažin dr:uz . urdant:g:a šan d:am .
- 2) arumn:γ urid: am: wa . iga am: win ntmdint .
- 3) izil lhal da bz:af .
- 4) inγayi laz .
- 5) uriynγi ša l:az dγi .
- 6) gi yul lk:as watay sah:a , walayn:i adurdikst:g:a bz:af ns:k:r .
- 7) s:ird aya lq:amiža sah:a .
- 8) g d:am iymnsi hat l:an ša ninbyawn .
- 9) is tl:a lq:hwa da ?
- 10) many lbušta ?
- 11) k:ray adaš snstγ abrid .
- 12) is tl:a šan tasq:ayt da ? /tasq:ayt/ 'water faucet'.
- 13) is γurun ša l:hm:am da ?
- 14) is γurun ša l:ikul da ?
- 15) la , walayn:i il:a gγrmin: yadnin .

### 11.4.4 Translate into Berber.

- 1) Who sells kerosene here?
- 2) Give me 1/2 litre (/nš:itru/) of kerosene.
- 3) Give me a package (/lq:bsa/) of tea and a cone (/lq:alb/) of sugar.
- 4) Give me some bread, a package (/lbak:ya/) of cigarettes and some matches (/luq:id/).
- 5) Is there a place to buy cigarettes (/s:ak:a/) here?
- 6) Yes, there it is.
- 7) How much is all this?
- 8) Do you have change (/s:rf/)?
- 9) No, I don't. Bring the money tomorrow or whenever you have change.



Unit 11

---

- 10) How much are the cucumbers?
- 11) 10 Rials.
- 12) Weigh one kilo (/k:ilu/).
- 13) I want to buy a teapot (/abr:ad/) and six glasses.
- 14) Wait (/g:any/) until Thursday and buy them in the market.
- 15) When is the market day in Midelt?
- 16) Which bus (/lk:ar/) goes to Meknes?
- 17) The blue one.
- 18) The first one.
- 19) The last one.
- 20) What village is this?
- 21) Is this the way to Midelt?
- 22) Yes, it is.
- 23) How far is Ayt Oumghar?
- 24) Go up (keep on going) (/g:afy/ 'to ascend'), (/altu/ 'yet')
- 25) I have a headache.
- 26) Do you want aspirin?
- 27) Do you want me to bring you some medicine (/d:wa/) from the city?
- 28) I want to buy some oranges.
- 29) What time is it?
- 30) It is 9:30.

11.5 Answer the following questions using words from the list below:

- |               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| ma dat:g:ad ? | What do you (sg.) do? |
| ma dayt:g:a ? | What does he do?      |
| ma dat:g:a ?  | What does she do?     |
- (Also ask questions similar to the above using: uncle, cousin , nephew...etc.)

List

lmalik:	king
~ agl:id	
lwazir	minister
l'aml	governor
lxlift	administrative job
lq:ayd	caid
š:ix	sheikh

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

am̄ar	head of a village
aʁsk:ri	soldier
abulisi	policeman
amxzni	soldier of the makhzen
bu lbusta	postman
lfq:ih	a learned man
d:alb	a school teacher
lq:adi	cadi
lmuhāndiz	engineer
axd:am	worker, laborer (m)
taxd:amt	laborer (f.)
aʁs:as	guard
taʁs:ast	(fem.)
amksa	shepherd (m)
tamksawt	shepherd (f.)
afl:aḥ	farmer
anž:ar	carpenter
axb:az	baker (m)
taxb:azt	baker (f)
abn:ay	mason
bu lq:hwa	coffee shop owner
bu thanut:	shopkeeper
aʁt:ar	wandering salesman
bu lhm:am	public bath attendant (m)
m:lhm:am	(fem.) of above form
bu tarda	washerwoman
m:tarda	washerwoman
agz:ar	butcher
axr:az	cobbler or shoemaker
adbib	doctor
aḥž:am	barber
amzil	blacksmith (mainly small jobs)
aḥd:ad	blacksmith
abrdʁi	saddle-maker
bu š:fnž	doughnut maker
ask:ak	goldsmith
bu tiyni	tailor
axy:ad	tailor

Unit 11

bu tuymas	dentist
anš:ad	poet, singer
bu sari	forest guard
ašt:ah	dancer (m)
tašt:aht	dancer (f)
azd:am	wood gatherer (collector) (M)
tazd:amt	wood collector (f)
ash:ar	magician (m)
tash:art	magician (f)
amzda	weaver (m)
tamzdawt	weaver (f)
amq:abl	caretaker (m)
tamq:abl	caretaker (f)
amhdar	student, pupil
ams:utr	beggar (m)
tams:utrt	beggar (f)
adl:al	wandering salesman
tadl:alt	wandering saleswoman
ašw:al	harvester (person)
abr:ah	town crier
amkašf	foreteller (m)
tamkašft	foreteller (f)

11.6 Translate

Once Jeha gave a piece of iron to his uncle so that he might keep it for him. After a very long period of time, Jeha went to his uncle's house and said "I want the iron which I stored with you". His uncle's wife said to him "The mice ate it". Jeha and his uncle sued each other before the king. Jeha said to the king "I gave a piece of iron to Uncle Aly one day. And now I ask him to give it to me and he tells me that the mice ate it". The king said to Jeha "Mice can eat the iron". Then the King said to Jeha, "I give you permission whereby if you find a mouse, work on it until you catch it and kill it." Jeha said "All right". The king gave him a paper bearing his signature and stating that Jeha is to dig anywhere wherever there is a mouse. Jeha went and brought some laborers to dig under the Court. After a while some guards came and jumped on Jeha and

hit him. They said to Jeha "What are you doing? Are you crazy to dig under the Court?" He told them "Here is the paper. The king gave me permission". They took him to the king. The king said, "What did you do, Jeha?" Jeha said, "The mouse which ate the iron that time when I complained to you and which you said could eat iron, I found today under the Court. Now I was digging so that I can pull it out." The King laughed and said, "It is all right, Jeha. Let us forget the past. Come here, I'll pay you for your iron." And the king gave him a lot of money.

11.7 Translate:

- 1) in:aš il:a yun urgaz in:aš iša ša ymndi iyut t:md:ut: adastntxzn .
- 2) l:iy t:isal mani ymndi tn:as tšantn iyrdayn .
- 3) in:aš id:a urgaza γl lq:ayd t:afad adidəa tamd:ut:n:a .
- 4) in:as lq:ayd "sb:hna əl l:ah asidi . dr:g: udmnš zy γifi !" .
- 5) in:aš in:as urgaza ilq:ayd "isurid: hšum γifš asidi lq:ayd ? tiwyi tmd:ut: imndi šg: tin:idi adγifš dr:gγ udminw ! mat:a wawala !" .
- 6) izəf lq:ayd ik:r xf lkrsi iyrđ iwəs:as in:as "awy argaza γl lhbs !" (/lhbs/ 'prison')
- 7) in:aš id:ad uəs:as yamz argaza yawit γl lhbs . iwa asadi safi .

A Fairy Tale

## 12.1

in:aš il:a yun urgaz iyr̄a bz:af γurs lhk:ma g:ut nthiturt  
 dyun š:qf dyut ntšašit . in:aš iq:im al:iy ira adim:t iws:a  
 arawns in:ayasn "ayarawinw , ad:ay m:tγ , kul:ši bduyat:  
 mn̄yir s:nduq:in: , un:a tihadan diyun hay:i šiyas s:xd̄ ."   
 q:imn al:iy ran adbdun in:asn yun nt:a l:ast:inin hm:u"nk:in  
 riγ aditšim s:nduq:in: ". n:anas"awd:i , hab:atnγ  
 iws:ayay xf s:xd̄ ". in:asn "nk: riγ s:xdn:a xs šatit ".  
 in:aš šinas s:nduq:n:a , irzmt , yafn: diks tahiturt , yafn:  
 diks tašašit , yafn: diks yun š:qf , yafn: diks yut t̄xnšiyt  
 l:k:if . yasitn , yasy tamzwarut: š:qf , id:u γr br:a ,  
 nt:a īm:rt slk:if , ikmu al:iy išma , nt:a yxwa iγdn:a  
 diks il:an̄ , yafn: igas d:hb , ig talyaq:ut: nd:hb , id:u  
 γr dat nyut ntms̄riyt nyun lmalik: iq:im arit:g: am: lq:āidan:a  
 l:ayšm:u ad:ay ixwu , if:γasd d:hb . tan:aytid il:is l:malik: ,  
 tn:as iysm̄n:s "d:u awyid argazin: , s:ilitid ". id:u  
 is:ilit in:as " ini n̄am iyl:is l:malik:". yaliy . tn:ayas  
 ixs:aš adityd am: un:a dat:g:ad br:a " inzγd š:qfn:s ,  
 inzγd taxnšiytn:a l:k:if , l:atit:̄m:ar ad:ay išma al: išm:l ,  
 ixwu iγdn:a , igas d:hb , igas talyaq:ut: nd:hb . tamzt  
 tk:sas š:qfn:a , tn:as iysm̄ "s:ufγt̄ , z:̄ct̄ , šas āsmud ,  
 tz:̄ct̄: adid:u γr br:a ." tk:sas ayn:a ntad:γn:s , tz:̄ct̄ ,  
 id:u īayd γr s:nduq:ns , yasid tašašit . iqrt: xf ixfn̄s .  
 s:ā urisin: may dat:xd:m , id:u γr s:uq: , ik: xf yun urgaz ,  
 iw:t: subariq: . argazn:a iw:t: subariq: , arisγuyu  
 urgazn:a ". mayiw:tn ? mayiw:tn ?" in:a "labas γuri ,  
 tašašiyta urdayit:an:ay bnamd̄ ". arik:at ayt s:uq: , al:iy  
 isk:r šiy:an nž:uqt ys:uq: , id:u , īayd ikžm , ik: lbab ,  
 izry xf īs:asn ntad:art nil:is l:malik: . id:u ikžm ,yaly  
 safl:a , yawdn: il:is l:malik: ,ik:s tašašit in:as "mslxir ".  
 tn:as "mani t̄:k:id "? in:as "zriγ ". tn:as "imani ȳs:asn "?  
 in:as "uriyan:ayn ". tn:as "maytgid al:iy uršan:ayn ?"  
 in:as "tl:a γuri yut ntšašit . l:at:t:g:ay xf ixfinw  
 urdayit:an:ay aγ:d yun ". tn:as "awid adrāay ". išast:  
 tgrt: xf ixfn̄s t:n:as "isdayit:an:ayd ?" in:as "urdašmt:an:ay ".  
 t̄ras diyiws:asns , iysm̄ns tn:as "s:ufxt̄ šas tayrit w:t:

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

al: uriyiy adik:r , ts:ufxt: adid:u ". iw:t: , is:ufxt ,  
 id:u aryal: al:iy iw:hl , id:u i'ayd diY yasid tahiturt  
 asiq:iman ys:nduq: . iwa uris:in mag:t:g:a swin:a nthiturt ,  
 l:at:it:asy igrt: xf iyirns , ihr:ft: . šwi iw:hl is:ut: ,  
 in:a adyn' šwi ads'yunfaY . nt:a iq:ima yifs tf:Yasd yut l'frit  
 tn:as . "maytrid ?" in:as "riY an:iliY ytad:art nil:is  
 ugl:id ". tasit tsrstin: ytad:art nil:is ugl:id . in:as  
 iyl:is ugl:id "hay:i ". tn:as "mani t:k:id iy'as:asn "?  
 in:as "tl:a Yuri yut nthiturt l:aYifst:YimaY tf:Yd Yuri  
 l'frit , ayn:a riY at:gY , at:g ". tn:as "awid adra'ay ".  
 išas tahiturt:n:a iyl:is ugl:id , tut yifs aq:ždim . nt:at  
 tq:ima , if:Yd l'frit in:as "maytrid alal:a ". tn:as  
 "hm:u , riY at:tgrd Yr t:lt lxalya ". mani ayib:as il:a  
 tas:a'atn:a ykašf yifs id: adit:ugr yun g:arawns Yr t:lt  
 lxalya , yamr il'afarit bnuntas yut nt:ad:art ž:uždnt:  
 yt:lt lxalya swaman , slmak:la skul: ši , diks mužud . yaYn:  
 hm:u t:lt lxalya , id:un Yr tad:artn:a , yafn: a'as:as  
 g:mil:bab . in:as "yal:aḥ awd:i ! šhal aya št:yanayY ,  
 t'et:rdi , šhal mn'am aya dYi ! hayaš tisura ntad:artnš .  
 d:u at:q:imd ". ikžm Yr tad:art , yafn: lmak:lat mužudin ,  
 k:u lbit diks lmak:la n:ayra , l:ayt:ta , is:w , iq:im  
 al: yun was: aris:ara al:iy yufa yut nž:rda , al:iy yufa yun  
 wurti diks aman , diks anu , diks d:ilyat , diks kul:  
 n:u' . iwa iq:im ign adis'yunfa šwi , ha yun snat n'hm:amin  
 arsawalnt . tn:as yut iyut "mr tan:ayd š:žrtin: un:a diks  
 itšan l:ast:k:r: waš:iwn ". tn:as t'hm:amtn:a yadnin  
 "mr tan:ayd tan: , un:a diks itšan l:ast:k:sn waš:iwnn:a ".  
 yadžtnt hm:u al:iy dat:sumnt , k:snt i'ban:nsnt , drnt  
 sanu , yasyasnt ayn:a ntafriwin:snt n:as dat:afrawnt . nitni  
 f:Ynd: urdufint i'ban: . n:ant "mayay yusin i'ban:n:Y ,  
 adaxtnid irar , ayn:a yra adastng ". in:asnt "nk: ".  
 n:antas "awayad i'ban:n:Y ". išasnt i'ban:nsnt . n:antas  
 "rzu maytrid ". in:as "riY aditrarnt Yr tmazirtinw ".  
 asint: s:iwdnt:in: itmazirtns , id:u yawy tazartn:a yluq:t  
 nd:užanbir , ytgrst uril:i latazart la walu . yawit: ,  
 igrd šrat: ntazarin ytrwa , k:nd: am:as ntad:art ugl:id .  
 i'ad:rasnt ugl:id yamžtnt , itš nt:a yut , t:š tmd:u't:ns

yut ,ttš il:is yut . nitni tšantnt , k:r:asn waš:iwn .  
tšantnt , k:r:asn waš:iwn . ik:r ugl: idn:a ybr:h kul:  
imay il:a ša nd:alb , may il:a šawsh:ar , may il:a ša  
nyuwn is:n: , in:asn "un:ayik:sn yiṛnša n:a diyi il:an ,  
at:ṛnuṛ " . l:aykdžm ša g:sh:ar: nṛd: ša yt:lba al:  
uryufi mas iga , yamzt ib:yas ix f adurif:ṽ adyini l'ibns  
imd:n , baynahwa k:r: waš:iwn iwgl: id . yal:ah yadžtn  
hm:u al:iy urq:imin laysh:ar: la walu . id:un: hm:u ṽr  
imi ntad:art l:mxzn , in:asn "riṽ adkžm ad:awaṽ agl: id " .  
n:anas "mayšid yiwin , ṽnq:n ish:ar: , td:ud šg:intin  
sd:rbalin:š amws:x . d:u ybrdan:š ! in:asn "walu " .  
n:anas "hat adaš ib:y ix f " . in:asn "un:a yra " . š:kžmnt ,  
in:as "šhalay itak:ad ?" in:as "may šyaṽn "? in:as "mšd:  
adid:awad adaš nstṽ ayn:a diyi il:an . urid:awad f:ṽ " . in:as  
"ak:daway " . in:stas aš:iwn , k:r:as waš:iwn . in:as "wax:a .  
ak:daway fimr:a , walak:ayni sš:ṛt . in:as "mat:a š:ṛt ?"  
in:as adašṽ ṛbomy:a ntṽrit , ak:wṽ ṛbomy:a ntṽrit tž: id ."  
in:as "wax:a ." yamz agl: id , iš:kžmt ṽr yun l:bit ,  
iw:t: , išas tiṽryin , al:iy idžiw , iw:t: ṛbomy:a  
ntṽrit , išas yut ntazart , it:št: , ṽaydnas waš:iwn .  
in:as "iwa xl:si ši tiṽradinw add:uṽ . in:as "tsulaš il:i " .  
in:as "awd:i il:iš tuṽr ṽifi bz:af , tuṽras lxdmtns ,  
walakin:i ix:at: nt:at adasṽ ṛbomy:a ntṽrit " . in:as  
"wax:a " . iṽrd iyl:is in:as "ha may šmit:dawan , ublhq:  
sš:ṛt , s:bomy:a ntṽrit " . tn:as at:amzṽ " . yamzt: hm:u ,  
iš:kžmt: ṽr lbit , in:as "iwa ts:nd mayam dit:d:un izil ?  
awyd tahiturtinw , tawidid tašašitinw , tawidid š:q:finw ,  
t:xnšiyt l:k:if , ašmtdaway . uritnit:iwiyd , at:q:imd  
swaš:iwn al t:m:d: " . tawyasd tašašitns , tawyasd tahiturtns ,  
tawyasd š:qfns dlk:ifns tšastn , iw:t: s:bomy:a ntṽrit ,  
išas yut ntazart ytl:i n:a dyiw ytmazirtn:a . tž:y . in:asn  
"xl:sati add:uṽ " in:as "tsulaš tmdut:inw altu , tsul  
ag:nt:at k:r:as waš:iwn ." yamzt: id , in:as "tamd:ut:  
ix:at: tsomy:a ntṽrit ." yamz tamd:ut: , išas tsomy:a ntṽrit ,  
al:iy t:iwt mlih , išas yut ntazart , ṽaydnas waš:iwn . nt:a  
yž:y in:as ugl: id ihm:u in:as "awd:i dyi nk:in xatṽ dyi ,  
at:q:imd ṽuri adaš šṽ lmmlak:a , adašawly il:i , tq:imd ṽuri

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

at:gd agl:īd , at:hk:md g:ḍyarinw , nk:in yas adq:iṃ  
 adhduy . " iwa yamẓ hm:u , išas il:is , yawlt: , igas  
 taṃra . iʃfu yifṣ rb:i x̣f hm:u . iq:im ikzm taxamt  
 ugl:īd . ig agl:īd nt:a sixfnṣ . s:la ʃln:bi .

(The informant for this story is 50 years old, a native speaker of Tamazight; Tribe: ayt Ayache).

ỵr	to read
lhkma	wisdom
g:ut (<y + yut)	in one (f)
tahiturt	sheep skin
š:qf	pipe (for smoking)
tašašit	hat
m:t	to die
ẉs:a	to advise, to ask
araw	offspring
bdu	to divide, to share
mṇyir	except (Arabic)
hada	to touch (tiḥadan 'touched it - part!')
s:xḍ	curse
l:ast:inin	he is called, (they call him)
aditšim	you will give me (pl)
awd:i	so and so (Vocative Oh,you)
af	to find (yafn:=he found there)
taxnšiyt	bag
lk:if	kif
tamzwarut:	first (f.)
amzwaru	first (m.)
kmu ~ šmu	to smoke
xwu	to empty
iʃd	ashes
d:hb	gold
talyaq:ut:	sapphire
dat	in front
tamṣriyt	palace (also, an upper room)
arit:g:	to do ( g)
f:y	to go out



Unit 12

ismɣ	Negro servant
aly	to go up (s:ily)
nzɣ	to pull
z:ʕ	to dismiss
aʕmud	a stick
s:aʕ	but
abariq:	slap (on the face)
ʕuyyu	to shout
bnadm	persons - people
ʃiy:an	much
ʒ:uqt	gathering (of people) crowd
aʕs:as (pl. iʕs:asn)	guard
afl:a	upstairs -up-over- above
k:s	to take out
raʕa	to look at
taʔrit	stick
iʔiy	to be able to
aryal: (<al:)	to cry
iʔir	shoulder
hr:f	to carry
s:u	to make the bed or spread something on the floor.
ʕunfa	to rest
agl:id	sultan
l:aʔfst:ʔimaɣ	on it I sit
Note: verbal structures such as this are transcribed as one word. Here:	
l:a	present tense prefix
ʔif	on
-s	it
t:ʔima	VH of /q:im/ 'to stay or sit
-ɣ	inflection for P <sub>1</sub> N <sub>s</sub>
srs	to put
aq:ʒdim	sitting
kaʃf	to foretell
ʕt:r	to be late

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

tasarut: (pl. tisura)	key
lmak:lat	food
ž:rda	garden ( Fr. jardin)
d:ilyat (sg. dilit)	vine
afraw	to fly
tafriwin	wings
rzu	to ask
tazart	figs
tagrst	winter
s:if	summer
tifsa	spring
lxrif	fall
tarwa	canal
ʿad:r	to meet
br:h	to announce
ash:ar	magician
iḡnša	illness
baynahwa	that (Arabic)
dawa	to cure
ʿnq:	to get tired
ws:x	to make dirty
fimr:a	at once, immediately
š:rt	condition
xl:s	to pay
wʿr	to be hard
ublhq:	but
ž:y	to be cured
xatr	to grow old
hkm (~hšm)	to govern
adʿar	place

12.2 Translate:

- 1) il:a γurs yun š:qf dyut ntšašit .
- 2) iwš:atn b:asn adbdun kul:ši mnγir š:nđuqn:a .
- 3) ira hm:u adyamz š:nđuqn:a xftniwš:a b:asn .
- 4) tk:sas il:is l:malik š:qfns t:xnšiytns t:šašitns iħm:u .
- 5) igra hm:u tašašitns xf ixfnš arik:at ayt s:uq: sibařiq:n .
- 6) yumr b:as nħm:u il:farit adbnun yut tad:art izil: yt:lt  
lxalya iħmu ad:iksizdy .
- 7) yiwy hm:u šrat: ntazarin yluq:t nd:užanb ytgrst urtl:i  
latazart la walu , urtl:i yawitntid al: tamazirtns , al:  
tamsriyt l:malik , igratnt ytrwa ntad:art l:malik .
- 8) yiwyhħm:u tazarin un:a tntitšan l:astk:r: waš:iwn .
- 9) yiwyhħm:u šrat: ntazarin yađnin , un:a tntitšan las t:kr:  
waš:iwn .
- 10) in:as lmalik iħm:u "q:im γuri at:awald il:i , tgd agl:id "

12.3 Answer the following questions:

- 1) mag: l:an γr b:as nħm:u ?
- 2) maxf iwš:a b:ans nħm:u arawns ?
- 3) mag:ra hm:u ?
- 4) mas n:an aytmas ?
- 5) mag: ufa hm:u ys:nduq: ?
- 6) imag:a mnbod ?
- 7) mag: žran l:iy išma ?
- 8) mastn:a il:is ugl:id iyšmγns ?
- 9) mas tga il:is l:malik iħm:u ?

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

- 10) ima γr id:a hm:u mnbəd ?
- 11) imag:a ys:uq:
- 12) imag:a l:iy d:isw:q: ?
- 13) imas tga il:is ugl:id lmrt:n:a .
- 14) imag:a l:iy astk:s tašašitns ?
- 15) mag: žran l:iy iq:ima xf thiturtns ?
- 16) mas in:a hm:u ilʹfriyt ?
- 17) may tga il:is ugl:id ihm:u lmrt:a ?
- 18) imag: žran ihm:u l:iy astk:s il:is l:malik tahiturtns ?
- 19) mas yumr b:as nhm:u ilʹfarit ?
- 20) mag: an:ay hm:u yž:arda ?
- 21) masnt iga hm:u ithm:amin ?
- 22) mas gant ihm:u l:iy asntirura tafriwin:snt ?
- 23) mag: iwy l:iy id:a hm:u γr tmazirtns ?
- 24) mag:a stazarinn:a ?
- 25) may tntitšan ?
- 26) imasn ižran ?
- 27) imay tnidawan ?
- 28) max ?
- 29) mimš astžra al:iy iga hm:u agl:id ?
- 30) mag: iwl hm:u ?

sidna yusf

## 13.1 The Story of Saint Joseph

in:aš il:a sidna yusf us:d:iq: , in:aš l:ayl:a ħurs  
 snat ntaytš:in . in:aš yut turwas sb̄a yšir:an , yut turwas  
 yun . in:aš tn:a n:a yurun ħas yun , sidna yusf n:it ,  
 in:aš i:z: xf b:as sidna yusf . in:aš iq:im al: yun was:  
 in:aš arit:warya am:i l:an sb̄a itran , yili yuk: aytnixulfn .  
 in:aš al:iy id:a yiwđ win:a , in:aš ifafad ylq:istns  
 ytwaryit: , in:aš ik:r arasit:q:is imm:is , in:aš in:as  
 "awd:i art:waryaġ amm:i ,"...in:aš tl:a l:aġurštš:ġad tašna  
 n:ayadnin ... in:as "amm:i art:waryaġ am:i l:an sb̄a itran  
 il:a diksn yun ixulftn , al:iy idyiwd , fafayd dġi šg:  
 tsuld at:gd axatar naytmaš šg: aġra ygn aġl:idsn ". in:aš  
 arts:ġad tašna , in:aš tq:im , tk:rd yun was: , tn:aš  
 art:ru , in:aš n:anas "may šmyaġn aym:a al:iy t:rud ?"  
 in:aš tn:as "mayd: tarwa uruġ nk:in , uruġ sb̄a i:r:imn ,  
 tarw tašna ħas yun , han mas in:a b:as , han mas in:a b:as ,  
 han mas tn:a mays . nk: urdiyun uriwġ ħas lxdiyt . dġi  
 han sidna yusf aġra igin aġl:idsn:un , kn:i at:gim ħas  
 ihz:ar:ns . in:aš n:anas "aym:a l:iyd: ħas ayn:a and:u  
 at:nzl ". in:aš tn:ayasn "iwa walu , ad:ay urastgim ša  
 at:tzlim , isinġ isurknuriwġ ". in:aš k:r: n:anas isidna  
 yusf us:d:iq: , n:anas "awd:i ixs:a adaytšd sidna yusf  
 and:u anġmr ". in:aš in:as awd:i tagmra urawnak:aġ ša  
 adigmr yusf imz:iy , uriġiy iša l:ewari , uriġiy ilažbal .  
 dġi yusf urn:iġ adawntšġ ša , at:yay fad , at:yay laž ".  
 in:aš n:anas "walu ilazm adaxt:šd anawy kulšī , anawy  
 lwin:ġ , anawy aman , anawy ... an:a yiwġhl nq:im , ħas  
 anmun anġmr ." in:aš in:as "iwa mand:iyun aġ:t:dman: ?"  
 in:aš in:as sidna y:q:ub "hay:i dmnġ . nk:in adis:munġ  
 urtt:aġ aġ:d yut lħašt ". in:aš id:u in:aš art:d:un ... in:aš  
 in:as "wax:a , hay:i šiġawnt , d:ut munat ." in:aš d:un  
 in:aš asin lwinnsn , asin kulšī , al: idn:a amzwaru nsin .  
 in:aš ask:ans in:aš d:un al:iy n:iwdn sari axatar , in:aš  
 q:imn art:mdašar: mast:g:an , ran xlas: at:nġin , urufin  
 mimšas gan . in:aš art:mdašar: , in:aš šwi yašyis:n , in:aš  
 iġraš iysq:ub in:as "ay:q:ub mani lħahd n:a tšid iyb:a dġi

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

l:at:inim ša l:hašt , may tram aditgim " . in:aš in:as  
"awd:i ḍyi sbr urit:g: rb:i ɣas lxir . hayi l:iy l:ayifš  
k:atɣ , walayn:i hat zy:r:i bz:af . ḍyi sbr . urt:g:d:  
yağ:d yut l:hašt ." in:aš d:un , in:aš šwi inɣitn fad bz:af ,  
in:aš d:un ɛrmn xf yun wanu . in:aš artfr:dn , arfr:dn ,  
in:aš al:iy n:ufan aman diks nt:a anun:a in:aš aqdim aḡ:a .  
in:aš n:anas iwa "dr šg: ayusf aday t:awid aman ." in:aš  
in:as "yal:ah " . in:aš nt:a idr , in:aš rarín ɣifs  
tayt:ayt xf wanu . rarín ɣifs yun isl:i . in:aš rdmnt ɣifs ,  
in:aš d:un . in:aš igas sidi rb:i in:aš igas t:asiḡ ḡ:anu ,  
in:aš urɣifst:ut:iyn iknn:ayn . in:aš d:un , in:aš išasd  
rb:i lmak:la sanun:a , išasd usu , išasd aḡ:d yut l:hašt ,  
urtimr:it sidi rb:i yağ:d yut l:hašt . iwa in:aš q:imn  
ask:a ɛaydn: wil:i aytmas , in:aš iḡat:rasnd . in:aš  
in:as "ahiw , maniyat yusf n:axfkn wš:ay ?" in:aš n:anas  
"awd:i ngayis: lmiḡad nn:a aday diḡat:r ɣr tizi w:ayflan ,  
nk:ad ɣifs urtidnufi , nyal id:is ḍyiwd da " . in:aš  
in:asn "walu , ayn:a tgam ɣas lɣdr aytɣdr " . in:aš n:anas  
"walu , ngayis: lmiḡad ɣr da , ḍyi hayaɣ nd:a and:u anraḡa  
isurdižbir sadɣar " . iwa in:aš d:unnsinn: yž:bln:a , ḡin  
ɛnwa am:i daturz:un , in:aš šawrdatrz:un , ɣas q:iman s:n:  
ayn:a ytsik:n , in:aš s:bah , in:aš iyɣ sidna yusf kul:ši  
it:yur , iluhuš , in:aš in:asn "awriw d:uyat at:s:aram ,  
un:a yufan ayn:a yil:a yusfinw , nɣd: adidyawy lxbarns ,  
id:ud ɣuri " . in:aš d:un kul:ši luhuš , in:aš ars:aran ,  
ars:aran , in:aš walu . in:aš la t:yur la yuš:an: , la...  
in:aš ars:aran , in:aš n:anas "awd:i sidna yusf uriq:imi  
afl:a w:ašal ." in:aš iq:im , in:aš id:ud yun yidr .  
axatar , in:aš šhal mn ɛam ayɣurs il:an , in:aš id:ud ɣr  
sidna yusf in:aš in:as "ilazm šg: aḡ:s:n: timizar , aḡ:s:n:  
an:a yiwɛr lhal , ḍyi at:d:ud ." in:aš in:as "awd:i  
haq:iqa s:nɣ timizar zman l:iy sulɣ swaln:inw skul:ši ,  
walayn:i ḍyi ɛmiɣ urɣiyɣ add:uy adraḡay " . in:aš isik:as  
afus xf wal:nns , in:aš iḡayd arit:an:ay mlih . in:aš id:u  
arit:dur , arit:dur al:iy iḡnq: , in:aš iḡayd: ɣurs .  
in:as "awd:i , sidna yusf urik:i afl:a w:ašal . ḍyi afl:a  
w:ašal hat urik:i . ḍyi rb:i adɣifš ifr:ž " . iwa in:aš  
d:und yits w:aḡrabn , in:aš d:und ḡ:brid , in:aš l:iy iwɔn

mnul wanun:a , in:aš ašabar waṣrabnn:a , in:aš inṣitn fad ,  
 in:aš q:imn šwi , in:asn yun "zman k:iy sya , q:lī iyun  
 wanu il:a ḡ:dyar w:ayflan , ya:ah and:uyat ṣurs ". in:aš  
 d:un , in:aš d:un , in:aš artfr:dn , šwi k:sn taṣamust  
 iwanun:a , in:aš grin wan: ṣr saman , grin d:lu in:aš nt:a  
 gran d:lu , in:aš išb:rasnd sidna yusf dks . in:aš l:iy  
 dyuly , in:aš in:as wal:i n:a igran asq:n in:as "ayaṣrinw  
 yiwid rb:i yun ismṣ at:awiṣ ". in:aš in:as "urgiy walu ismṣ .  
 dṣi nk: aytma ayiṣran ḡ:anuya . uma urgiṣ walu ismṣ .  
 urgiṣ aḡ:dhah ." in:aš l:iyas in:a ayn:a , in:aš iwt:  
 subariq: . in:aš l:iy tiw:t subariq: in:aš yaznasnd sidi  
 rb:i yut gnut , in:aš al:iy dat:msamahṣ yran adxlun .  
 in:aš il:a sidna yusf am:asnsn , il:a ṣas amšis: , urinsi  
 aḡ:dhah . in:aš uras ižri walu . in:aš šwi al:iy , al:iy  
 ḡan amšis: , in:aš yaṣul sidi rb:i ifr:ž ṣifsn . in:aš d:und ,  
 in:aš iwa imunis:nd , in:aš d:und al:iy n:ruhn ušabarn:a  
 ṣr... ydiwṣn ṣr tmazirtn:a ṣr dd:an , in:aš ik:r sidna yusf ,  
 in:aš id:u tharšt yut tmṣart tl:a tga tad:artns , in:aš  
 l:at:iri at:ḡ ša l:ḡašt , in:aš ik:r ṣurs nt:a slq:dra nsidi  
 rb:i , in:aš tg fimr:a , tili mužud , last:ini k:rd aḡmd  
 aman , in:aš yinas sig:r . in:aš tafn: lhwayžns kul:ši  
 ṣm:rnt swaman , in:aš l:astsnuy azry luq:tn:a adizd , in:aš  
 tk:rd , in:aš tafn: kul:ši azry l:ayt:d:u ṣas sladn nsidi  
 rb:i , ariz:ad iyxfns . in:aš tk:r tn:as awd:i argazad urid:  
 ša ysmṣ aḡ:a . ḡan s:iyd aya , ṣd: ša . in:aš tk:r , td:u  
 ṣr sagl:id uṣṣarn:a , in:aš tn:as "awd:i il:a ṣuri yuk:  
 urgaz han maydayt:g:a , han maydayt:g:a , an:a sn:iṣ  
 dayt:k:r ." in:as "ixs:a aditidatwid adan:ayṣ ." in:aš  
 id:ud ṣr lmalik:n:a , in:aš in:as "awd:i ma zy tgid ?"  
 in:as "awd:i nk: han may ṣifi yarun , han may ṣifi yarun ."  
 in:as "iwa ixš:a at:q:imd ." in:as " dṣi art:waryay ..."  
 asin:a lmalik:n:a . in:as "...art:waryay is l:an sbṣa yiyun ."  
 in:as "tšintn sbṣa n:a yuhl: . dṣi ixš:a aditrzmd mat:a  
 wya . sbṣa n:a šhanin , tšintn sbṣa n:a whl:in' . ixš:a  
 aditinid mat:a lmṣntn:a ." in:aš in:as "sbṣa ysg:asn  
 l:at:ili s:rft , sbṣa isg:asn urtili ." in:as "iwa may  
 nt:g:a ?" in:as "ixš:a anšal imndi ysbṣa ysg:asn n:ay il:a  
 ymndi hma ḡ:sḡ:asn n:ay uril:i ymndi yxš:a ad:t:d:un md:n ,

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

šg: lmalik: aytgid , adasnt:faɖ imd:n ". iwa in:aš išas  
lmalik: tisura , išas lflus isidna yusf . in:as "iwa laz  
at:d:ud at:šald imndi ". iwa in:aš iqim arit:šal , arit:ɛm:ar  
lahryan kul:ši , arit:ɛm:ar arixz:n , in:aš asg:asn:a  
ydd:an isg:asn n:ay uril:i unbdū , in:aš ik:r ariz:nza diy  
lmalik: , aryak:a imd:n sun:a sišal luq:tn:a sidna yusf ,  
in:aš as:n:a ydd:an aytmas adšal: imndi , in:aš d:und ɣr  
tmazirtn:a n:ay il:a sidna yusf , in:aš iq:im nt:a , in:aš  
yiwɖ: yakztn . in:aš iɛbrašn al:iy asniɛbr , in:aš ik:r yuk: ,  
in:as , imšk:a , in:as "rɛ:i awd:i sidna yusf uš:d:iq: may  
yifs yarun asg:asn:a n:ay id:a il:a b:as l:atyurz:u , urs:in:  
mayik:a , uril:i may il:a še l:xbar". in:aš in:asn "awd:i  
may il:an g:in:a . l:iy t:d:am , imndin:un ayrt:d:am ,  
amzat at:šalm imndin:un . uma sidna yusf maxil:an diks idb:r  
iyxfns ". in:aš arit:g:a al:iy tayrart tang:arut: , in:aš  
igras diks lɛbra iwmz:yan , in:aš nitni gran ilbhaym , in:aš  
n:an "td:a lɛbra ". in:aš amzntn , ft:šntn , nzɣnast:id  
iwmz:yan , in:aš n:anas "iwa šg: at:q:imd ak:yan:ay lmxzn ".  
in:aš iq:im , ins ɣurš , in:aš ask:a , in:aš yar tabrat: ,  
in:aš igast: g:am:as ntyrart , in:aš in:as "iwa l:ayhnik: "  
in:aš d:und , in:aš idn:a n:a yn:ruhn , in:aš in:as b:as  
in:as "šdiy r:iht nsidna yusf as:a ,td:ayid r:ihtns ".  
iwa in:aš n:anas "ab:a l:ah arthbld . šhal mɛam aya id:a  
sidna yusf ? dyi tq:imd arayt:inid ihi r:ihtns ihi..." in:as  
"walu . tutid r:ihtns as:a ". in:aš nitni d:and: tayt:šin ,  
rzmnt tayrart , in:aš afint tabrat: , in:aš n:anas "han  
yut tbrat: "in:aš yamzt: b:as , nt:a yumzt: , in:asn "ha  
tabrat: nsidna yusfinw aya ". in:aš yamzt: iq:rat: , al:iy  
t:iq:ra . in:aš il:a iɛma simt:awn n:a dayt:ru , k:uyas: ,



k:uyas: , xf sidna yusf . in:aš yamz tabrat:n:a , is:lfis:  
 isik:t: xf wal:nns , in:aš igas sidi rb:i al:n tuždidin .  
 in:aš isayd arit:an:ay , in:aš id:ud in:as "dyi awdid  
 hay:i q:dyař w:ayflan ..." iwa in:aš id:ud , in:aš as:n:a  
 ydyiwđ tamazirtn:a , in:aš ik:r sidna yusf , ik:r ig g:un  
 s:nđuq: yut t:swira ukš:id am: sidna yusf . in:aš as:n:a  
 ydid:a , n:anas "awra haš sidna yusf " . in:aš yamz  
 akš:idn:a stasa , in:aš yamzt artit:hñ:ad yuřs , in:aš al:iy  
 tiwt: ytirza kul:ši yirza akš:idn:a , in:aš vad l:iy irza  
 akš:idn:a , yirura wan:ady ntasa , in:aš vad if:yđ yuřs  
 sidna yusf . in:aš al:iy is:imsl:am kul:ši , in:as "han  
 may yifi yarun , han may yifi yarun " . in:aš ik:r lmalik:n:a  
 im:t , in:aš ik:r izrid yut tmtuř: , l:as t:inin zulixa ,  
 vlahq: nt:at išas rb:i šhal nz:in asiša , tsca wtscin  
 aydis:ufy . išas nt:at tsca wtscin n:it n:adis:ufy . in:aš  
 ik:r is:lfas sidna yusf , in:aš tsayd tg tarbat: , in:aš  
 yamz sidna yusf lmlk:ya l:malik:n:a . iwa han an:a sn:y  
 aya ylhdiyť nsidna yusf .

l:a	emphasis particle
tayťš:in	women
arw	to give birth
turwas	she gave him children
tn:a	the one who
warya	to dream
am:i	like
atri	star
aytnixulfn	was different from them
awđ	to reach

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

fafa	to wake up
s:γd	to hear
naytmaš	of your brothers
aγra	future participle particle "who will"
ign	future participle of /g/
ru	to cry
aγ	to reach
šm-	to you (f.)
mayšmyaγn	what reached you? what is the matter?
m:a (im:a)	mother /a + im:a --> aym:a/ mother!
mayd:	but (for sarcasm or anger)
lxdiyt	failure
ahz:ar	servant
l:iyd:	since
zl	to lose
gmr	to hunt
mziy	to be small
iyiy	to be able to
ɣari (p. lswari)	mountain
fad	thirst
laz	hunger
ilazm	must
lswin	food
mun	to accompany
ɣmn	to guarantee
artt:aγ	she will not reach
id	night

Unit 13

ns	to spend the night
ask:a	tomorrow
ask:ans	the next day
mdašar	to consult
ašy	to be aware
saħd	to promise
zy:r	to tighten
erm	to know of
frd	to sweep, clear up
dr	to go down
tayt:ayt	lid
isl:i	stone
t:asiš	room (here=roomy)
t:ut:y	to fall
aknn:ay	rock
lmak:la	food
usu	bedding
mr:t	to torture
wil:i	those
aytnas	his brethren
saq:r ~ saq:r	to meet
ahiw	a vocative expression
tizi	a pass
yal	to think
γdr	to betray
žbr	to come back
snwa	on purpose
rzu	to look for

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

s:ara	to take a walk
uš:n	jackal
ašal	earth
yidr	a huge animal (probably imaginary)
al:n	eyes
ašabar	caravans
tayamust	lid
šb:r	to cling
asq:n	rope
aya:rinw	gee!
ag:dhah (=walu/)	nothing
azn	to send
tignut	storm
samh	to forgive (msamah = recip.)
xlu	to destroy
am:as	among, between
ruh	to reach
hars	to prevent
tamyart	old woman
lq:dra	the will (power)
fimr:a	right away
agm	to bring water
sig:r	look !
sny	to put on
azry	mill
zd	to grind
s:iyd	holy man
aru	to write
warya	to dream

Unit 13

yiyun	oxen
rzm	to open
shu	to be healthy
šal	to buy grain
hma	in order to
tf	to distribute
lhri	warehouse
akz	to recognize
rzu	to look for
g:in:a (= y + ayn:a)	in that
db:r	to manage
taṣṣart	sack
amz:yan	small one
ft:š	to search
lmxzn	the government
šdu	to smell
ihi (~uhu)	no
ṣr /~ q:r:a/	to read (/q:ar/VH of /ṣr/)
imt:awn	tears
s:lf	to caress
t:šwira	photograph
tasa	love (lover)
hn:d	to hug
z:in	beauty
aydis:ufuṣ	which he invented
lmlk:ya	kingdom

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

### 13.2 Translate

- 1) l:an γurs sb̄a iṣir:an .
- 2) iεz: yusf bz:af xf b:as .
- 3) iwarya yusf am:i l:an sb̄a ytran yili yun ixulftn .
- 4) tn:asn tašna adzln ymatsn .
- 5) is:ufγas yusf twaryit:n:a ilmalik: .
- 6) iṣas lmalik:n:a tisura l:ahryan isidna yusf .
- 7) iεma b:as nsidna yusf l:iy urdiεayd yusf .
- 8) igra yusf yut tbrat: ytyrart nymas amz:yan .
- 9) mimš tga zulixa al:iy t ayd tga tarbat: ?
- 10) mimš iga yusf al:iy iga lmalik .

### 13.3 Answer the following questions:

1. ṣhal ntutmin ag:l:an γr sidna yusf ?
2. ṣhal l:wašun ag:l:an γr tmd:ut tamzwarut: ?
3. ṣhal l:wašun ag:l:an γr tmd:ut: tis:nat ?
4. isiεz: sidna yusf xf b:as ?
5. mag: warya b:as nsidna yusf ?
6. mag:a b:as nyusf l:iy difafa ?
7. imasn isl:an ?
8. mag: n:a b:at:sn xf sidna yusf daytmas ?
9. istfrh tašna ?
10. masn tn:a tašna iwarawns at:gin ?
11. mas n:an aytmas nyusf ib:at:sn ?
12. masn in:a b:at:sn ?
13. max al:iy iṣa b:at:sn yusf iyatmas ?
14. maygan ayt mas nsidna yusf ?
15. mas in:a yusf iyεqub ?
16. mas iga sidi rb:i isindna yusf g:anu ?
17. masn in:a b:ansn iyṣir:an:s l:iy dεaydn ?
18. imas n:an iṣir:an ib:ansn ?
19. mas in:a yidr ib:as nyusf ?
20. mag:ufan yusf ?
21. may tyal tmyart is tiga ?
22. imas in:a sidna yusf ?

23. max al:iy tiwy tmyart sidna yusf sagl: id ?
24. mag: warya ugl: id ?
25. imas in: a sidna yusf xf twaryit: n: a ?
26. mas iša ugl: id isidna yusf ?
27. masn iga yusf iyatmas l: iy dd: an adšal: imndi ?
28. mag: a b: as st: swira nyusf ?
29. mag: žran iwgl: id ?
30. mag: žran iyusf ?





### III. Phonology (Ayt Seghrouchen)

Phonology (Ayt Seghrouchen)

The phonological features discussed for Ayt Ayache are pretty much the same for Ayt Seghrouchen. The student has to keep in mind that

- (1) /k/ and /g/ are stops in Ayt Seghrouchen and fricatives in Ayt Ayache; /k:/ and /g:/ are tense counterparts of the stops /k/ and /g/ in Ayt Seghrouchen
- (2) lax /q/ and /g/ do not occur in Ayt Seghrouchen
- (3) following a tense /k:/ or /g:/, the vowel /u/ has a centralized allophone [ü] in Ayt Seghrouchen (see Drill 2)
- (4) for some speakers the sequence /lt/ is pronounced as a side fricative, i.e. /lt/ is pronounced with friction that causes air to escape at both sides of the tongue (see Drill 2 below).

\* \* \*

Other than that the two dialects are alike in their phonological systems.

Following are three drills on the phonology of Ayt Seghrouchen. The first drill presents similarities of Ayt Seghrouchen with Ayt Ayache and the second drill presents differences from Ayt Ayache. The third drill is a general one that includes elements from the first two drills and other items for practice. Each drill is read three times. The second reading is spaced for practice.

Phonology (Ayt Seghrouchen)

---

Drill 1

lbab	door
ib:as	his father
isalt	he asked him
isalt:	he asked her
t:alab	the demand
tizi	a pass
tizi	pubic hair
dawa	to cure
d:aw	under
tsbṛ	she was patient
l:atṣb:ṛ	she is patient
sbṛ	be patient!
s:ḅṛ	patience
tfṛ	she pushed
l:atfṛ:	she is pushing
sh:	to be healthy
s:h:	cause to be healthy
ša	some
š:a	whoa! (for a mule or a donkey to stop)
t:u	to forget
t:t:u	VH of /t:u/
s:t:u	Causative of /t:u/
adit:sd:a	he will attack
tṛẓ	Embroider!
t:ṛẓ	embroidering

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

qdən	they registered the marriage
mism ?	how?
tlq:dnt	you (fp) picked up
lq:hwa	coffee
lcahd	promise
ms:	to lack sugar or salt
lcaž	ivory
la	no
labas	fine
labud:a .	It is necessary.
ladab	politeness
mi ?	who, what?
mid:n	people
misdid	thin
mizay	heavy
anq:z	a jump
inš:adn	singers
anu	a well
anud:m	sleep
asrsr	ringing
iybaln	water springs
hw:l	to worry
hasb	to count
fs:l	to cut into pieces
bařš	to congratulate
bdr	to mention
uđuf	catching

Phonology (Ayt Seghrouchen)

---

uħdi	me alone
wahli	long ago
wis:ṛḅɛa	the fourth
xm:m	to think
yaɫ:ah	let us go
zawg	to ask protection
ẓg:ɣ	to be red
zɛf	to be angry
z:waq	resigns
ẓd	to weave
zuṛ	to visit
z:al:	to pray
ʒhd	to be strong
ɛard	to invite
ɛfu	to forgive
l:ayt:ɛiʃ	he lives
iɣab	he was absent
l:ayt:ɣab	he is absent
g:d	to be afraid

Drill 2

kada	a lot
ikb:	he poured
l:ayt:kb:a	he pours
kfa	to be enough
t:kfa	VH of /kfa/
kul:	every, each

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

kul:ha	everyone
ik:mu	he smoked
ik:r	he got up
tk:s	she took out
gmgn	to mumble
gr:ʕ	to burp
igz:r	he butchered
agz:ar	butcher
ang:aru	last (m)
sk:ura	Sekoura (name of a village)
k:ud	as long as
l:ayg:ur	he goes
ig:unzr	he got a nosebleed
ultma	my sister
xalti	my maternal uncle
altu	not yet

### Drill 3

s:alamuʕlik:um .	Hello. (to a man by a man)
ʃbaḥlxir .	Good morning.
bs:lama .	Goodbye.
mism:ʃ ?	What is your (ms) name?
istiwit ?	Are you married?
mrḥba .	Welcome. (said by a host)
ʃaḥ:a .	Thank you.
samḥi .	Excuse me.
mbruk	Congratulations.
bl:ʕas s:lam imḥnd .	Greet Muhnd for me.

Phonology (Ayt Seghrouchen)

---

nšaːl:ah	If God wills.
baraːk:a	enough
ʃafi	all right
tmnya	eight
tamarikaniyt	American (f)
maniyr ?	where to? (i.e. where are you going?)
waːdx s:uq:	I am going to the market.
as: l:h̄d: ag:žin s:uq: isuša.	Sunday is the market day of Isousha.
iq:ɾf l̄hal inw:anbir .	It's cold in November.
təžbi lq:amižayu taml:alt .	I like this white shirt.
tnyut d:ist .	He has a stomach ache.
isyu taqb:ut: taq:hwit .	He bought a brown djellaba.
inyi l̄az .	I am hungry.
t:lata ql: xmsa	2:55
ɾ:bːa zuzt:	4:00 sharp
mat:a luq:t ?	When?
mandiwnt ?	which one of you (f) ?
itilmɾat uril:i s:uq: ˠlahq: tilmirat iyr̄m amzy:an aytžū .	There is no market place in Tilmirate because it is a small village.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

imaziɣn imslm ayžin , l:at:zəl:an , l:at:zum ,  
lat:sd:aqn .

Berbers are Moslems; they pray, fast and give alms.

kul:iɣm wax:a adimzi , l:at:ili dis ša nthanut: .

Each village, even if it is small, has a shop.

\* \* \*





#### IV. Texts from Ayt Seghrouchen

Unit 14

14.1 Greetings

s:alamu◀lik:um .		Hello. (To a man by a man.)
◀lik:ums:alam .		R. (R.= response to). Hello.
	* * *	
l:ahi◀awn .		Hello (to or by a woman).
l:aysl:m .		R. to Hello.
	* * *	
sbahlxir .		Good morning.
sbahlxir .		R. to Good morning.
	* * *	
mslxir .		Good Evening.
mslxir .		R. to Good evening.
	* * *	
ns ylman		Good night (to m.s. or f.s.).
tmunt dlman <sup>1</sup>		R. to above.
~ tmunt ds:lant .		
s:lant	peace	
nsm ylman <sup>2</sup> .		Good night (to m.p.)
nsnt ylman .		Good night (to f.p.)
tmunm ds:lant .		Good night (to m.p.)
~tmunm dlman .		Good night (to m.p.)
tmun:t ds:lant .		Good night (to f.p.)
~ tmun:t dlman .		Good night (to f.p.)
	* * *	
l:ayhn:ik: .		Good bye (to m.s.)
~ bs:lama .		
bs:lama	with peace	
amanl:ah .		R. to Goodbye.
l:ayhn:išm .		Goodbye (to f.s.)
l:ayhn:išun .		Goodbye (to. m.p.)
l:ayhn:išunt .		Goodbye (to f.p.)
	* * *	
maš ižu lhal <sup>3</sup> ?		How are you (m.s.)?

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

mam iẓu lhal ?	How are you (f.s.)?
mas iẓu lhal ?	How is he/she?
mawn iẓu lhal ?	How are you? (m.p.)
mašnt iẓu lhal ?	How are you? (f.p.)
masn iẓu lhal ?	How are they? (m.)
masnt iẓu lhal ?	How are they? (f.)

\* \* \*

labas .	Fine.
lhmdul:ah .	Fine.
nhmd irb:i .	Fine.
labas nhmd irb:i tas:aṭtu *.	Fine.

\* \* \*

may tɛnit ?	How are you? (m.f.s.)
mag: ɛna ? (<may iɛna)	How is he?
may tɛna ?	How is she?
may tɛnam ?	How are you (m.p.)?
may tɛnant ?	How are you (f.p.) ?
may ɛnan ?	How are they? (m.)
may ɛnant ?	How are they (f.)

labas tɛnit lxir .	Fine. (to m.f.s.)
labas tɛnam lxir .	Fine. (to m.p.)
labas tɛnant lxir .	Fine. (to f.p.)

\* \* \*

maš tẓu s:aḥt ?	How are you (m.s.)?
mam tẓu s:aḥt ?	How are you (f.s.)?
mas tẓu s:aḥt ?	How is he/she ?
mawn tẓu s:aḥt ?	How are you (m.p.)?
mašnt tẓu s:aḥt ?	How are you (f.p.)?
masn tẓu s:aḥt ?	How are they (m.)?
masnt tẓu s:aḥt ?	How are they (f.)?

labas .	Fine.
labas nhmd irb:i .	Fine.
lhmdul:ah .	Fine.

\* \* \*

Unit 14

labas γrs <sup>5</sup> ?	How are you (m.)?
labas γrm ?	How is he/she ?
labas γm:x ? (<γr + n:x)	How are we?
labas γrun ?	How are you (m.p.)?
labas γršnt ?	How are you (f.p.)?
labas γrsn ?	How are they (m.)?
labas γrsnt ?	How are they (f.)?
lhmdul:ah .	Fine.
	* * *
yaš labas ?	How are you (m.s.p.)?
yam labas ?	How are you (f.s.p.)?
nhmd irb:i .	Fine.
	* * *
may tɛnit dubrid (<may tɛnit dabrid)	How was your trip? (m.f.s.)
may tɛnam dubrid ?	How was your trip? (m.p.)
may tɛnant dubrid ? (<may tɛnant dabrid)	How was your trip? (f.p.)
labas tɛnit lxir .	Fine.
	* * *
lwašun labas ?	How is the family?
mani lwašun ma labas ?	How is the family?
labas isal ɛlik: lxir .	Fine.
ɛlik:	Arabic 'on you (sg)'
mani šun kul:ši ma labas ? <sup>6</sup>	How are you (m.) all?
labas nhmd irb:i .	Fine.
	* * *
mismn:š ? <sup>7</sup>	What is your name? (m.s.)
misminw ?	What is my name?
mismn:š ?	What is your name? (m.s.)
mismn:m ?	What is your name? (f.s.)
mismn:s ?	What is his/her name?
mismn:x ?	What are our names?

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

mismn:un ?	What are your names? (m.p.)
mismn:šnt ?	What are your names? (f.p.)
mismn:sn ?	What are their names? (m.)
mismn:snt ?	What are their names?
muhnd . <sup>8</sup>	Proper name (m.)
mam:a .	Proper name (f.)
* * *	
mani zy tžit ? <sup>9</sup>	Where are you from?
mani zy žix ?	Where am I from?
mani zy tžit ?	Where are you from? (m.f.s.)
mani zg:žū (<zy ižū ?)	Where is he from?
mani zy tžū ?	Where is she from?
mani zy nžū ?	Where are we from?
mani zy tžim ?	Where are you from? (m.p.)
mani zy tžint ?	Where are you from? (f.p.)
mani zy žin ?	Where are they from? (m.p.)
mani zy žint ?	Where are they from? (f.p.)
* * *	
mani zy tžit ?	Where are you from? (m.f.s.)
zg:ayt s <sub>y</sub> ruš:n .	From Ayt Seghrouchen.
mat:a y <sub>r</sub> m ?	Which village?
tilmirat .	Tilmirat.
* * *	
mani tzdyt ?	Where do you live?
g:ayt bniš:u .	In Ayt Bniš:u.
itilmirat .	In Tilmirat .
* * *	
mšhal il <sub>m</sub> rn:š ?	How old are you? (m.s.)
tlatin sam .	30 years old.

Unit 14

šrin sam .	20 years old.
lɛmrinw rɛawtlatin sam .	I am 34. My age is 34.
ɣri xmsawxmsin sam .	I am 55.
* * *	
istiwit ? <sup>10</sup>	Are you married?
~ istmlšt ?	
y:ih iwix .	Yes, I am married.
ihi uriwixš .	No, I am not married.
ihi uriwix ša .	No, I am not married.
* * *	
is ɣrš lwašun ?	Do you have children?
is ɣrš ša l:wašun ?	Do you have any children?
la , url:in ša l:wašun .	No, I don't have any children.
y:ih ɣri idž w:rba . <sup>11</sup>	Yes, I have one boy (son).
y:ih ɣri išt ntrbat: .	Yes, I have one girl (daughter).
arba	boy
tarbat:	girl
y:ih ɣri idž w:rba dišt ntrbat: .	Yes, I have a boy and a girl.
y:ih ɣri snat l:wašun .	Yes, I have two boys (sons).
y:ih ɣri snat ntšir:atin .	Yes, I have two daughters.
y:ih ɣri tlata l:wašun .	Yes, I have three children.
y:ih ɣri tlata ntšir:atin .	Yes, I have three daughters.
idž	one (m.)
išt	one (f.)
snat	two (m.f.)
tlata	three (m.f.)
mismn:snt ?	What are their names?
mam:a , niša , drabha .	Three proper names.
mšhal ilɛmrn:snt ?	How old are they?

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

mam:a γrs ts° snin .	Mam:a is 9,
°iša γrs sb° snin .	°iša is 7,
rabha γrs xms snin .	rabha is 5.
* * *	
mrhba .	Welcome, (said by a host).
irhbaš lxir .	R. (to m.s.)
irhbam lxir	R. (to f.s.)
irhbawn lxir	R. (to m.p.)
irhašnt lxir	R. (to f.p.)
* * *	
sah:a	Thank you.
bla ažmil	Don't mention it.
uraš žix ažmil .	Don't mention it.
samhi , °d:bxš bz:af .	Excuse me, I caused you a lot of trouble.
samhax , n°d:bšun bz:af .	Excuse us, we caused you (m.p.) a lot of trouble.
°d:b	to torture (here: 'to bother'.)
The form / samhax/ 'excuse us' may be used for first person singular as well.	
urašžix ša .	Don't mention it (I did not do anything for you).(sg)
urawn:ži ša .	We did nothing for you (pl).
urašžix ša wžmil .	I did not do any favor for you.
urawn:ži ša .	We did nothing for you.
* * *	
l:ayž°l lbaraka . <sup>12</sup>	A thank-you expression said to your host after tea or a meal.
~ l:ayxlf .	
xlf	to compensate
ižaš s:aht .	R. (to m.s.)
ižam s:aht .	R. (to m.p.)



Unit 14

ižawn s:aht .	R. (to m.p.)
ižawnt s:aht .	R. (to f.p.)
* * *	
hašak: .	A restricted thank-you expression said when someone pours water for you to wash your hands before or after dinner.
sz:k:l:ah .	Don't mention it.
hašak:	to m.s.
hašam	to f.s.
hašawn	to m.p.
hašasunt	to f.p.
* * *	
mbruk	Congratulations
mbruk	Congratulations ( Ar.)
mbruk aʿr:im	Congratulations on the boy, (baby.).
mbruk taʿr:imt .	Congratulations on the baby girl.
mbruk tad:art .	Congratulations on the house.
mbruk tafunast	Congratulations on the cow.
bubarš lʿid . <sup>13</sup>	Happy feast.
lʿid	feast
* * *	
samhi	Excuse me.
samhi	Excuse me.
samhas	Excuse him/her.
samhax	Excuse us.
samhasn	Excuse them (m.)
samhasnt	Excuse them (f.)
* * *	
bl:γas s:lam imuhnd	Greet Muhnd for me.
bl:γ l:ah s:lam	R. to the above.
The above responses are Arabic loans. <sup>14</sup>	
* * *	
ibl:γašd: <sup>15</sup> mulaydris s:lam .	Mulaydris greets you.
* * *	

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

la .		No.
~lala1 .		No.
~ihi .		No.
y:ih .		Yes.
~yah .		Yes.
	* * *	
n'am		Yes, in response to someone calling your name.
	* * *	
nša'1:ah		If God wills.
	* * *	
wax:a		All right.
	* * *	
barak:a		Enough.
	* * *	
safi		Finished, ok, all right.
	* * *	

### 14.2. Grammar, Drills, Additional Phrases and Expressions.

A.	mism   inw	What is my name?
	mism n:š	What is your name? (m.s.)
	mism n:m	What is your name? (f.s.)
	mism n:s	What is his/her name?
	mism n:x	What are our names?
	mism n:un	What are your names? (m.p.)
	mism n:šnt	What are your names? (f.p.)
	mism n:sn	What are their names? (m.)
	mism n:snt	What are their names? (f.)

### B. Some Proper Names

Male: ɛli	Female: ɛiša
muhnd	rabha
ɛq:a	yamna
lhusayn	rqiy:a
hd:u	mam:a

rh:u	mam:a
hmd	zn:u
š'id	tifa
lhsn	xdiža
šbdl:a	
dris	

C. mani zi tžit ?	Where are you from?
zg:ayt sγruš:n .	I am from the tribe of Ayt Seghroushen.
mat:a yγrm ?	Which village?
tilmirat .	From the village of Tilmirat.

D. Some Ayt Seghroushen Villages.

tilmirat  
taltrza  
ayt hm:u yhya  
imhawšn  
sk:ura  
ayt mhnd uhmd  
ayt šli wyusf  
isuša

E. γri snat l:wašun t:rbat:	I have two boys and a girl.
γri snat ntšir:atin durba	I have two girls and a boy.

γri	I have
γrš	You have (m.s.)
γrm	You have (f.s.)
γrs	he/she has
γn':x (<γr + n:x)	we have
γrun	you have (m.p.)
γršnt	you have (f.p.)

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

γ rsn  
γ rsnt

They have (m.)  
They have (f.)

	m	f
one	idž	išt
two	snat	snat
three	tlata	tlata

	s.	p.
boy	arba	lwašun
girl	tarbat:	tišir:atin

F. dris γrs sḅ snin .

Dris is seven years old. (Dris has seven years.)

Numerals (3-10)

tlata (tlt) 3  
 rḅa (rḅ) 4  
 xmsa (xms) 5  
 st:a (st:) 6  
 sḅa (sḅ) 7  
 tmnya (tmn) 8  
 tṣa (tṣ) 9  
 ʕšra (ʕšr) 10

The forms in parentheses are the ones used before /snin/ 'years':  
 e.g., in the construct "four years old" /rḅ snin/

Unit 14

G. amarik:ani ay žix

	m.s.	f.s.	m.p.	f.p.
Berber	amaziṛ	tmaziṛt	imaziṛn	timaziṛin
Arab	aʕrab	taʕrabt	aʕrabn	taʕrabin
Moslem	amslm	tamslmt	imslmn	timslmin
American	amarikani	tamarikaniyt	imarikaniyn	timarikaniyn
European	rum:y	tṛum:it	irum:in	tirum:yin
Jew	uday	tudayt	udayn	tudayin

iž  
ay

to be, to do  
who

žix  
tžit  
ižu  
tžu

I am  
you (s.) are  
he is  
she is

nžu  
tžim  
tžint  
žin  
žint

we are  
you are (m.p.)  
you are (f.p.)  
they are (m.)  
they are (f.)

14.3 Review Conversations

14.3.1.

A. lhusayn: s:alamuʕlik:um aʕli .  
ʕli: ʕlik:ums:alam .

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

- lhusayn: maš ižu lhal ?  
 ɛli: labas lhmdul:ah maš ižu lhal ?  
 lhusayn: labas nhmdirb:i mani lwašun ma labas ?  
 ɛli: labas alhusayn adxš isal lxir .  
 lhusayn: yaš labas ɣrun q:ah ?  
 ɛli: labas alhusayn .  
 lhusayn: iwa l:ayhn:ik: .  
 ɛli: amanl:ah .
- B. muhnd: mismn:š ?  
 ɛq:a: ɛq:a wɛli .  
 muhnd: mani zi tžit aɛq:a ?  
 ɛq:a: zg:ayt sɣruš:n .  
 muhnd: mat:a yɣrm ?  
 ɛq:a: tilmirat .
- C. yamna: iwa mrhba , mrhba .  
 lhsn: irhbam lxir .  
 yamna: mani lwašun ma labas ?  
 lhsn: labas, adxmisal lxir ayamna .  
 yamna: mbruk: tad:art .  
 lhsn: l:aybark: fik:m .
- D. mam:a: mismn:m ?  
 ɛiša: ɛiša .  
 mam:a: mšhal ilɛmrn:m ?  
 ɛiša: ɛšrin ɛam .  
 mam:a: istiwit ?  
 ɛiša: y:ih .  
 mam:a: is ɣrm sa l:wašun  
 ɛiša: y:ih ɣri snat l:wašun .  
 mam:a: mani zi tžit ?  
 ɛiša: zg:ayt mhnd uhmd .  
 mam:a: mat:a yɣrm ?  
 ɛiša: zlul .

Unit 14

14.4 Supply the missing responses in the following conversations.  
This part will only be read once.

A. muḥnd: s:slam:lik:um .

lḥusayn: \_\_\_\_\_

muḥnd: maš ižu lḥal ?

lḥusayn: \_\_\_\_\_

muḥnd: mani lwašun ma labas ?

lḥusayn: \_\_\_\_\_

muḥnd: iwa l:ayhn:ik: .

lḥusayn: \_\_\_\_\_

B. mam:a : šbaḥlxir .

ʿiša: \_\_\_\_\_

mam:a : mam ižu lḥal ?

ʿiša: \_\_\_\_\_

mam:a : mbruk: aʿr:im .

C. ʿli: l:ahiʿawn .

yamna: \_\_\_\_\_

ʿli: labas ?

yamna: \_\_\_\_\_

ʿli: mani lwašun ma labas ?

yamna: \_\_\_\_\_

ʿli: ibl:γamd: sʿid s:lam .

yamna: \_\_\_\_\_

ʿli: iwa l:ayhn:išm ayamna .

yamna: \_\_\_\_\_

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

D. ⵎⵉ : may tɛnit dubrid ?

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

ⵎⵉ: mani zi tʒit ?

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

ⵎⵉ : is ɣrš ša l:wašun ?

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

ⵎⵉ : mšhal ?

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

ⵎⵉ: mšhal ilɛmrn:s ?

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

ⵎⵉ: mismn:š ?

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

ⵎⵉ : iwa mrhba mrhba .

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

ⵎⵉ: l:ayʒɛl lbarak:a .

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

ⵎⵉ: iwa l:ayhn:ik:

stranger: \_\_\_\_\_

14.5 Conversation

sbah lxir aⵎⵉ .                      muhnd

Good morning, Aly.

ⵎⵉ

sbah lxir amuhnd .

Good morning, Muha.

maš ižu lhal ? iyayt tad:art

How are you? And how is the family?

labas ɣrsn ?

ayt tad:art                      family

ayt uxam                         family



Unit 14

	muhnd	
iwa lhmdul:ah , isal ʕlik lxir aʕli . maniʕr ?		Fine, thank you. Where are you going?
maniʕr		where to?
	ʕli	
waʕdx s:uq: nsk:ura		I am going to the souk of Skoura.
waʕd		to go to (towards)
	muhnd	
maʕr ?		What for?
	ʕli	
n:ix adsx: <sup>16</sup> ʕa ns:k:ar dʕa nz:it , dʕa nʕ:abun , z:nzx ʕa ymndi . ʕafi . iʕk: maniʕr ?		I want to buy sugar and some oil and some soap. I want to sell some wheat and that is it. And where are you going?
n:ix		I want (</ini/) I intend
ads:x: (<ad + sy + x)		
	muhnd	
adwaʕdx iʕran , umnbd zrix ʕr tad:art .		I am going to the fields, then I'll go home.
	ʕli	
iʕk: urt:sw:aqt ?		Aren't you going to the market?
	muhnd	
l:at:sw:aqx ayt ʕlihm .		I usually go to Beni Alahem market.
	ʕli	
isisul it:ʕm:ar as: l:xmis ?		Is it still held on Thursday?
	muhnd	
y:ih .		Yes

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

	ɛli	
iwa l:ayhn:ik .		Goodbye.
	muhnd	
amanl:ah		Goodbye.

14.6. Additional Sentences.

A. us:an The days (of the week)

- as: l:h̄d: ag:žin s:uq: isuša .  
 Sunday is the market day of Isousha.

- as: l:tnayn ag:žin s:uq: uhrmm:u .  
 Monday is the market day of Ahermoumon.

- as: l:tlata ag:žin s:uq: imuz:ar.  
 Tuesday is the market day of Imouzzar.

- as: l:arb̄ ag:žin s:uq: nsk:ura .  
 Wednesday is the market day of Skoura.

- as: l:xmis ag:žin s:uq: naytɛlihm .  
 Thursday is the market day of Ait alihm.

- as: l:žm̄a l:ag:urn mid:n adz:al:n lxudbt .  
 On Friday, people go to perform Friday prayers.

- as: ns:bt uril:i s:uq: ʔr ayt sʔrus:n .  
 No Ayt Seghourshen market is held on Saturday.

B. <u>lašhur</u>		The months (of the year)
<u>dadyaw</u> y uma		My brother will
ilyn:ayr .		marry in January.
dad:t̄ id ultmaš		Your sister will
ʔr da ifbrayr .		come here in February.
ɛid		to go back, return
dadirah̄ ɛm:is		His (paternal)
ʔr frans imars .		uncle will go to
		France in March.
rah <sup>17</sup>		to go
tk:ud: <sup>18</sup> im:as		His mother visited
ʔl:ahlinw ibril .		my family in April.
k: (i/u)		to pass

rahxd: zi marikan imay:u .	I came from America in May.
i <sup>o</sup> dl lhal iyunyu .	The weather is nice in June.
ilul iyulyuz .	He was born in July.
ihma <sup>19</sup> lhal i yušt ilmuyrib .	It's hot in August in Morocco.
tlul <sup>20</sup> ištānbir .	She was born in Sep- tember.
dadyawy mm:is n <sup>o</sup> m:i iktubr .	My cousin will marry in October.
iqrf lhal inw:anbir .	It is cold in Nov- ember.
l:aytšat <sup>21</sup> udfi il <sup>o</sup> ri idužanbir .	Snow falls in the mountains in December.
o <sup>o</sup> dl	to repair, be good
lal (u)	to be born
hma (i-a)	to be hot
 C. <u>Colors</u>	
sγix išt l:qamiža taml:alt .	I bought a white shirt.
aml:al	white (m.)
t <sup>o</sup> žbi lq:amižayu <sup>22</sup> tabr:ant	I like this black shirt.
abr:an	black (m.)
ušid: <sup>23</sup> abr:ad:in aziza .	Give me that green tea-pot.
tazizawt	green (f.)
tsyu <sup>24</sup> s:b:ayd tizg:aγin .	She bought red shoes.
azg:aγ	red (m.)

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

isʁu taqb:ut:	He bought a brown
taq:hwit .	djellabah.
aq:hwi	brown (m.)
tiʁy:alin l:at:ibyant	Women here like yellow
tiʁs:abin tiwrajin .	head-bands.
tiʁy:alin	women
bʁa (/i-a/) <sup>25</sup>	to want
D. <u>ahlaš</u>	Illness
inʁi uzl:if	I have a headache.
nʁ (i/u)	to kill
azl:if	head
tnʁuš tʁmst	You have a toothache.
tiʁmst	tooth
tiʁmas (pl)	
tnʁut d:ist	He has a stomach ache.
tadist	tummy
inʁut: uzl:if	He has a headache.
tnʁi tit: ~tnʁuyi tit:	My eye hurts.
tit:	eye
al:n (pl. f.)	
inʁuš uɖar <sup>26</sup>	Your leg hurts.
ɖar	leg, foot (C.S. /uɖar/)
nʁint imž:an	His ears hurt.
amž:uʁ	ear
imž:an (pl)	
inʁut: ufus	Her arm hurts.
fus	hand, arm (C.S. ufus)
inʁi wdad ~inʁuyi wdad	My finger hurts.
ɖad	finger (C.S. /uɖad/-- /wdad/ after a vowel).
inʁuš ufud	Your knee hurts
fud	knee (C.S. /ufud/)
inʁut wul	He has trouble with his heart, stomach

ul  
 tnɣut: tsa  
 tsa  
 tnɣut: tiwa  
 inɣut budxšam  
 tl:a dis tms:i  
 tims:i

heart  
 She has liver trouble.  
 liver  
 She has a backache.  
 He has a cold, flu...  
 He has fever, tem-  
 perature...  
 temperature, fever

Conjugation of Verb "nɣ" (/i/u/)

	nɣ	ix
t	nɣ	it
i	nɣ	u
t	nɣ	u
n	nɣ	u
t	nɣ	im
t	nɣ	int
	nɣ	in
	nɣ	int

inɣi laz ~ inɣuyi laz  
 inɣi fad ~ inɣuyi fad .

I am hungry.  
 I am thirsty.

Notice: Variants occurring with first person pronominal suffixes in A.S.

inɣi ~ inɣuyi  
 inɣax ~ inɣuyax

It (m.) killed me  
 It (m.) killed us.

E. tas:aɣt , luq:t  
 mšhal tas:aɣt ?  
 lwhda .

Telling Time.  
 What time is it?  
 It's one o'clock.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

lwhda wxmsa	1:05
lwhda wčšra	1:10
lwhda wrbč	1:15
lwhda wčšrin	1:20
lwhda wxmsawčšrin	1:25
lwhda wns:	1:30
z:už	2:00
z:už q:l: xmsawčšrin	1:35
z:už q:l: čšrin	1:40
z:už q:l: rbč	1:45
z:už q:l: čšra	1:50
z:už q:l: xmsa	1:55
z:už učšra	2:10
z:už urbč	2:15
t:lata q:l: xmsawčšrin	2:35
t:lata q:l: xmsa	2:55
t:lata	3:00
t:lata wns:	3:30
r:bča zuzt:	4:00 sharp
r:bča nišan	4:00 sharp
r:bča gd:gd:	4:00 sharp
lxmsa wrbč	5:15
lxmsa wxmsawčšrin	5:25
s:bča wxmsa	7:05
t:mnya wčšrin	8:20
t:sčud uns:	9:30
lhdačš: q:l: xmsa	10:55
lhdačš uxmsawčšrin	11:25
t:načš:	12:00
t:lata y:id	3:00 p.m.
t:sčud ns:bah	9:00 p.m.

lšra nš:bah	10:00 p.m.
t:našš:	noon
d:ha	noontime (11:30 a.m. to 3:00 p.m.)
t:našš: y:id	midnight

G. imušan (/amšan/ s.g.)

Places.

mani əli ?	Where is Aly?
irah ɣl:əri . (<ɣr + ləri)	He went to the mountain.
mani mam:a ?	Where is Mamma?
twaəd ižran .	She went to the fields.
iwaəd lɣabt .	He went to the forest.
twaəd iɣzr .	She went to the river.
iwaəd tamzyida .	He went to the mosque.
iwaəd tasirt .	He went to the mill.
iwaəd s:uq:	He went to the market.
iwaəd inurar .	He went to the threshing grounds.

\* \* \*

14.7 Interrogation.

A. Question Words.

may ?	what?
mat:a ?	what?
mi ?	who, what?
mani ?	where?
maɣr ?	where to?
mat:a luq:t ?	what time?
milmi ~mlmi ?	when?
wim:i ? (<win mi)	whose?
tim:i ? (<tin mi)	whose?
wig:ilin ?	whose?
mism ?	How?
šhal ?	How much?

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

mšhal ?	How much?
mšta ?	How much?
mah ?	Why?
mah azg:a...?	Why...?
maymi ?	Why?
<b>B. <u>Interrogative Particles</u></b>	
is	Do, is...?
<b>C. <u>Inflected Interrogative Expressions.</u></b>	
mandg:it	
(man + dy + it---->mandg:it)	
man	which
dy	in
it-	plural affix formative
mandiwn ?	Which one of you (m.)?
mandiwnt ?	Which one of you (f.)?
mandinx ?	Which one of us?
mandisn ?	Which one of them (m.)?
mandisnt ?	Which one of them (f.)?



NOTES

1. Notice that inflection for  $P_2 N_S G_{m,f}$  in Ayt Seghrouchen (A.S.) is /t----t/, whereas in Ayt Ayache (A.A.) it is /t---d/. See #9 below for complete /-PNG-/ paradigm.

2. Imperative paradigms for (2nd Person) in A.S. and A.A. are:

<u>A.S.</u>				<u>A.A.</u>
rwl		run!	you (m.f.s.)	rwl
rwl	m	run!	you (m,p.)	rwl
rwl	nt	run!	you (f,p.)	rwl
				at
				nt

3. a. Notice Verb 'to be, to do' is /ž/ in A.S. and that its (VH) /t:g:/, whereas A.A. has /g/ (v.) and /t:g:a/ (VH)
- b. Notice the pronominal affixes associated with /ma-/ 'what', e.g. /maš ižu ?/, /'what to you (m.s.) did he do?'/ differ from those in A.A. in 2nd person plural, masculine and feminine. There is a difference also (not shown in the sentences referred to here) in first person plural. The full paradigms are here shown for comparison:

<u>A.S.</u>		<u>A.A.</u>
mayi	what to me	mayi
maš	what to you (m.s.)	maš
mam	what to you (f.s.)	mam
mas	what to him	mas
mas	what to her	mas
max	what to us	max
mawn	what to you (m.p.)	mawn
mawnt~ masnt	what to you (f.p.)	maknt
masn	what to them (m.)	masn
masnt	what to them (f.)	masnt

The same pronominal paradigm (associated with /ma/ 'what?' here what 'to') is identical with the affixes associated

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

with intransitive verbs:

<u>A.S.</u>			<u>A.A.</u>
is:iwl	i	he spoke to me	isiwl   i
is:iwl	aš	he spoke to you (m.s.)	isiwl   aš
is:iwl	am	he spoke to you (f.s.)	isiwl   am
is:iwl	as	he spoke to him	isiwl   as
is:iwl	as	he spoke to her	isiwl   as
is:iwl	ax	he spoke to us	isiwl   aγ
is:iwl	awn	he spoke to you (m.p.)	isiwl   awn
is:iwl	awnt ~	he spoke to you (f.p.)	isiwl   aknt
is:iwl	asnt		
is:iwl	asn	he spoke to them (m.)	isiwl   asn
is:iwl	asnt	he spoke to them (f.)	isiwl   asnt

4. /tas:a<sup>o</sup>tu/ 'this hour' is the A.S. form that is equivalent to /tas:a<sup>o</sup>ta/ in A.A. Similarly /tad:artu/ 'this house' (A.S.) and /tad:arta/ (A.A.). Notice this u/a contrast.

5. /γrš/ 'to you' (m.s.) is composed of /γr/ + /-š/. A.S. /γr/ is equivalent of A.A. /γur/ the particle meaning 'have or to', also denoting possession.

6. a. Notice: The paradigm of pronominal affixes associated with /mani/ 'where'? is the same one associated with transitive verbs. Compare:

<u>A.S.</u>			<u>A.A.</u>
isal	i	he asked me	isal   i
isal	š	he asked you (m.s.)	isal   š
isal	šm	he asked you (f.s.)	isal   šm
isal	t	he asked him	isal   t
isal	t:	he asked her	isal   t:
isal	ax	he asked us	isal   aγ
isal	šun	he asked you (m.p.)	isal   kn
isal	šunt	he asked you (f.p.)	isal   knt
isal	tn	he asked them (m.)	isal   tn
isal	tnt	he asked them (f.)	isal   tnt

Unit 14

b. Notice /kul:š̌i/

In. A.S. lax /k, g, ḳ and g̣/are stops whereas they are fricatives in A.Ā.

7. The pronominal affixes associated with nouns in A.S. and A.Ā. are here shown for comparison:

<u>A.S.</u>			<u>A.Ā.</u>
tafunast	inw	my cow	tafunast inw
tafunast	n:š̌	your (m.) cow	tafunast nš̌
tafunast	n:m	your (f.) cow	tafunast n:m
tafunast	n:s	his cow	tafunast ns
tafunast	n:s	her cow	tafunast ns
tafunast	n:x	our cow	tafunast n:γ
tafunast	n:un	your (m.) cow	tafunast n:un
tafunast	n:š̌nt	your (f.) cow	tafunast n:knt
tafunast	n:sn	their (m.) cow	tafunast nsn
tafunast	n:snt	their (f.) cow	tafunast nsnt

8. On the matter of proper names A.S. /muħa/ and /fadma/ are not common among the A.S. Instead they have /muħnd/ and /mam:a/.

9. A.S. /iž/ 'to be, do' is equivalent to A.Ā. /g/ . Compare:

<u>A.S.</u>		<u>A.Ā.</u>
žix	I did, was	giγ
tžit	you (s.) did, were	tgid
ižu	he did, was	iga
tžu	she did, was	tga
nžu	we did, were	nga
tžim	you (m.p.) did, were	tgam
tžint	you (f.p.) did, were	tgant
žin	they (m.) did, were	gan
žint	they (f.) did, were	gant

Notice that /iž/ has an i/u ablant whereas /g/ has i/a ablant.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

Also compare:

<u>A.S.</u>		<u>A.A.</u>
uržix	I did not do	urgiy
urtžit	You (s.) did not do	urtgit
uriži	He did not do	urigi
urtži	She did not do	urtgi
urnži	We did not do	urngi
urtžim	You (m.p.) did not do	urtgim
urtžint	You (f.p.) did not do	urtgint
uržin	They (m.) did not do	urgin
uržint	They (f.) did not do	urgint

The past tense ablant is /i/ in both dialects.

Also compare:

<u>A.S.</u>		<u>A.A.</u>
adžx	I will do	adgx
at:žt	you (m.) will do	at:gd
adiž	you (f.) will do	adig
at:ž	she will do	at:g
an:ž	we will do	ang
at:žm	you (m.p.) will do	at:gm
at:žnt	you (f.p.) will do	at:gnt
adžn	they (m.) will do	adgn
adžnt	they (f.) will do	adgnt

10. On the matter of the expression 'to get married' in A.S. and A.A.:

A.S. and A.A. /awy/ 'to take along'.

Thus: A.S. /iwix/ "I am married"; A.S. /uriwix ša/ 'I am not married' (Lit: I took along (a wife)).

Also A.S. /mlš/ < Ar. /malaka/ 'to own, possess' is exclusively used in A.S. to mean 'to be married'.

Thus: /mlšx/ 'I am married'. (A.S.) /urmlišx/ 'I am not married' (A.S.)

Unit 14

Compare the forms that occur in A.A. which are derived from the verb /awl/ 'to get married' /iwly/ 'I am married'; /uriwily ša/ 'I am not married'.

11. Cardinal Numerals 1-3 in A.S. and A.A.

A.S.			A.A.		
Berber		Arabic	Berber		Arabic
<u>m.</u>	<u>f.</u>	<u>Invariable</u>	<u>m.</u>	<u>f.</u>	<u>Invariable</u>
idž	išt	wahd	yun	yut	wahd
snat	snat	tnayn	sin	snat	tnayn
tlata	tlata	tlata	šrad	šrat:	tlata

12. /l̥baraka/ Notice again / k g k̥ ḡ / are fricatives in A.A. but stops in A.S.

13. a. The k/š correspondence in the two dialects is worth mentioning. Here:

A.S. mbruk: /    A.A. tanbaršt:

b. Notice the difference in the congratulation structure:

A.S. mbruk: aʁ:im      Congratulations on the baby boy.

A.A. tanbarst: daʁ:im    Congratulations on the baby boy.

14. Most of the greetings are Arabic loans. Some are Berberized loans, others are non-Berberized loans: e.g.

a. Berberized Arabic loan:

bl:γas s:lām imuhnd      Greet Muhnd for me.

Notice /bl:γ/ and /s:lām/ are Arabic forms /-as/ 'to him' /i-/ 'to' are Berber forms

b. Non-Berberized Arabic loans:

bl:γ l:ah s:lām      R. to above greeting

bl:γ l:ah slamk

In particular notice Arabic /slamk/ 'your (s.) greeting' could have been /s:lamm:š/ had the loan word been Berberized.

15. Compare /d:/ in A.S. and /d/ in A.A., 'particles of proximity'

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

16. A.S. /γ/ + -x-/ --> /-x:-/

This occurs in case of a verb whose final radical is /-γ#/ when /-x/ of first person singular inflection is realized.

e.g.           A.S. /sγ/           'to buy'  
                              /adsx:/       I will buy

Compare A.A. /-γ + γ-/ ----> /-q:-

A.A. /sγ/   'to buy'  
          /adsq:/   I will buy

17. Each of the two dialects under consideration has a different form for the verb 'to go'

A.S.

/rah/                   'to go'  
/g:ur/                 Habitual form  
/sir/                   Imperative  
/arah/                 Imperative

e.g.

adrahx                 I will go  
rahx                    I went  
irah                    he went  
urirah                 he did not go  
l:ayg:ur               he goes, he is going

sir, sirm, sirnt                 go! (sg, m.pl., f.pl.)  
arah, arahm, arahnt            go! (sg., m.pl, f.pl.)  
g:ur, g:urm, g:urmt           Energetic Imperative Paradigm

Compare A.A.

/d:u/                   to go  
/t:d:u/                 Habitual Form  
/d:u/                   Imperative

e.g.

add:uy                 I will go  
d:iγ                    I went  
id:a                    he went  
urid:i                 he did not go

dayt:d:u                      he goes, he is going  
 d:u, d:uyat, d:unt            go! (sg, m.pl., f.pl.)  
 t:d:u, t:d:uyat, t:d:unt    Energetic Imperative paradigm

18. Notice the difference in abla t for verbs of the /k:/ subtype:

A.S.		A.A.
k:ix	I passed	k:iγ
tk:it	you (sg.) passed	tk:id
ik:u	he passed	ik:a
tk:u	she passed	tk:a
nk:u	we passed	nk:a
tk:im	you (m.p.) passed	tk:am
tk:int	you (f.p.) passed	tk:ant
k:in	they (m.) passed	k:an
k:int	they (f.) passed	k:ant

The past negative mode ablant is /i/ in both dialects, e.g.

<u>A.S.</u>		<u>A.A.</u>
urk:ix	I did not pass	urk:iγ
urik:i	he did not pass	urik:i

From now on we will refer to the above type (affirmative past tense) abla t of A.S. as i/u, whereas that of A.A. is referred to as i/a abla t.

19. /hma/ 'to be hot' in A.S. has an i/u ablaut, the same as in A.A. /hmu/ 'to be hot'. Compare:

<u>A.S.</u>		<u>A.A.</u>
i/a	and	i/a
hma	to be hot	hmu
hmix	I am hot	hmiγ
thmit	you (s) are hot	thmid
ihma	he is hot	ihma
thma	sne is not	thma

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

<u>A.S.</u>		<u>A.A.</u>
nhma	we are hot	nhma
tḥmam	you (mp) are hot	tḥmam
tḥmant	you (fp) are hot	tḥmant
hman	they (m) are hot	hman
hmant	they (f) are hot	hmant

20. /lal/ 'to be born' has (a-u) ablaut in A.S. and A.A. as well.

21. /w:t/ 'to hit' in A.S. has Habitual Form /tṣat/ whereas /w:t/ in A.A. has Habitual Form /k:at/.

22. /l:qamiža/ 'shirt' in both dialects. /-u#/ in A.S. is equivalent to /-a#/ in A.A. meaning 'this' are suffixed to nouns: e.g.

A.S. /lq:amiža + u/ --->lq:amižayu 'this shirt'

A.A. /lq:amiža + a/ --->lq:amižaya 'this shirt'

23. Compare Verb /s/ (i/a) in A. A. and /uš/ (i/u) in A.S.

<u>A.S.</u>		<u>A.A.</u>
ušix	I gave	šiy
tušit	you gave (sg)	tšid
yušu	he gave	iša
tušu	she gave	tša
nušu	we gave	nša
tušim	you (m.p.) gave	tšam
tušint	you (f.p.) gave	tšant
ušin	they (m.) gave	šan
ušint	they (f.) gave	šant



Unit 14

---

24. /sɣ/ 'to buy' (i/u) in A.S. and (i/a) in A.A.

25. /bɣa/ i/a in A.S. 'to want'; the form used in A.A. to express the same semantic connotation is /iri/ 'i/a 'to want'.

26. A number of masculine singular nouns in A.S. do not have /#a/ in the form of the noun; however, their construct state has an /#u-/ and the plurals have an /#i-/. e.g. A.S.

<u>Sing. Noun</u>	<u>Construct State</u>	<u>Plural</u>	
ḍar	uḍar	iḍarṇ	foot or leg
fus	ufus	ifas:n	hand
ḍad	uḍad	iḍudan	finger
fud	ufud	ifad:n	knee
šal	ušal	_____	land, earth
haq:aṛ	uhaq:aṛ	ihaq:aṛn	raven
ḡanim	uḡanim	iḡanimn	reed
šurdu	ušurdu	išurdan	fleas
baḡus	ubaḡus	ibuḡas	monkeys
buḡlal	ubuḡlal	ibuḡlaln	snails
yur	uyur	_____	crescent

The corresponding forms of some of the above mentioned nouns in A.A. are:

<u>Sing.Noun</u>	<u>Construct State</u>	<u>Plural</u>	
ḍar	uḍar	iḍar:	foot or leg
afus	ufus	ifas:n	hand
adad	uḍad	iḍudan	fingers
afud	ufud	ifad:n	knee
ašal	ušal	_____	earth



15.1

s:uq:

itilmirat uril:i<sup>1</sup> s:uq: əlahq:<sup>2</sup> tilmirat iyr̄m amz:y:anay tzu ,  
 dis<sup>3</sup> xas<sup>4</sup> išt r:b̄ein<sup>5</sup> mad tnayn ur̄b̄ein ntxant<sup>6</sup> . tmz:i<sup>7</sup> ,  
 ul:idisit:əm:ar<sup>8</sup> šan s:uq: . maša mid:n<sup>9</sup> ad:ay řaynin<sup>10</sup>  
 adsw:q:n ,l:at:wac̄adn imuz:ar imr̄mušn din<sup>11</sup> it:əm:ar̄n<sup>12</sup>  
 as: l:tlata , nxd:<sup>13</sup> wac̄dn ayt əlihm din it:əm:ar̄n as:  
 l:xmis , nxd: l:an idin<sup>14</sup> ig:urn<sup>15</sup> řr sk:ura din dgt:əm:ar̄  
 s:uq: as: l:ar̄b̄c̄ . maša tb̄c̄d sk:ura šwi . iwa asidi ,  
 mid:n din it:inin adwac̄dn s:uq: , l:at:k:rn ziš<sup>16</sup> , nin<sup>17</sup>  
 xlbhaymn:sn . l:ag:urn xisrdan , sb̄:h̄n<sup>18</sup> ziš řr s:uq: ,  
 awin ak:idsn<sup>19</sup> tayr̄art t:af<sup>20</sup> adt:d:əm:řn<sup>21</sup> slmq:điyat<sup>22</sup> .  
 iwa asidi , ad:ay řayawđn řr s:uq: , mš iwđn ziš ,  
 l:at:afn s:uq: isul uriəm:ir̄ . iwa mš uriwđn n:it ziš ,  
 nx<sup>23</sup> afntin:<sup>24</sup> n:it iəm:r̄ , s̄yn adin<sup>25</sup> řas̄yn , wac̄dn amřar̄  
 adz̄řn<sup>26</sup> lbiru , adz̄řn isl:ant ša ntbratin<sup>27</sup> , adz̄řn  
 isul:iytsal lq:ayd xhd:<sup>28</sup> , adz̄řn isil:a ša miždid<sup>29</sup> .  
 iwa ad:ay řakm:ln<sup>30</sup> , tšn<sup>31</sup> dis amšli<sup>32</sup> , rw:h̄nd:<sup>33</sup> ,awind:  
 q:ah<sup>34</sup> adin asnřayx̄s:n am<sup>35</sup> s:k:ar , am z:it d̄s:abun .  
 lxdrt<sup>36</sup> ul:it:s:ar̄n əlahq: tl:a řrsn . l:as:aynd: xas adin

ul:iyrsnit:ilin . iwa awind: ilwašunn:sn adin stnyas:frhn ,

syn ~~sa~~ yeban: mš iq:r:b leid , ieban: imiždidn , iwa

rw:hnd: yr tilmirat .

1. ili (i/a) to exist, be

2. əlahq: because

3. dis in it (sg)

Compare A.A.: /diks/ 'in it' (sg)

4. xas just, only

Compare A.A. /yas/ 'just'

Also, notice the voiceless (A.S.) / voiced (A.A.)

Correspondence. Also, compare inflection for 1st person singular A.S. /-x/, A.A. /-ɣ/.

5. išt r:bain (<išt nr̄bain) 'Some forty...'

6. taxant tent, house

Notice the nasal correspondence: A.S. /n/ A.A. /m/  
in /taxamt/ 'tent'.

7. mz:y (VH /t:mzy/) to be little, small

8. /ul:i-/ is negative prefix used with (VH).

9. mid:n (A.A. /md:n/) people

10. ɣa- a future particle that  
occurs after relative pronouns, question words and  
conjunctions.

/ad:ay/ 'when' Here /ad:ay ɣa + inin/ 'when they  
will say (i.e. intend).

11. (a) din (A.A. /n:a/) that, which, who  
e.g.

A.S. aryaz din irahn əm:i ag:žū  
'The man who left is my uncle'

A.A. argaz n:a yd:an əm:i ag:a  
'The man who left is my uncle'

(a) -din (A.A. /-n:a/) that

e.g.

A.A. tad:artdin tin əm:i ay tžū  
'That house belongs to my uncle'.

- A.A. tad:artn:a tin ʕm:i ay tga  
'That is my uncle's house'.
12. Notice the rule /-r + n#/ --->/-r:#/ does not apply to A.S. Compare A.S. /it:ʕm:arn/ and A.A. /it:ʕm:ar:/ Pres.participle of /ʕm:r/ 'to fill'
13. nxd: (A.A. /nʔd:/) or  
Notice x/ʔ correspondence
14. idin (A.A. /win:a/) the ones (m.) which  
udin (A.A. /un:a/) the one (m.) which  
tidin (A.A. /tin:a/) the ones (f.) which  
td:in (A.A. /tn:a/) the one (f.) which
15. g:ur VH of /rah/ 'to go'
16. ziš (A.A. /zik:/) early  
Notice A.S. /š/ and A.A. /k:/ correspondence.
17. ny to mount
18. sb:h to leave early
19. ak:d with  
Notice: /ak:d muhnd/ 'with Muhnd', but /ak:ids/ 'with him'. Study the following paradigm /ak:d/ + pronominal suffixes.  
(ak:idi, ak:idš, ak:idm, ak:ids, ak:idnx, ak:idun, ak:idšnt, ak:idsn, ak:idsnt)
20. t:af (A.A. /t:afad/) in order to
21. Notice: the particle of proximity in A.S. is /d:/ whereas in A.A. it is /d/.

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

- |     |  |   |
|-----|--|---|
| 22. | lmqđiyt / lmqđiyat   | Articles bought at a shop or at the market.     |
| 23. | nx   | Aorist particle, 'then'                         |
| 24. | /-n:-/   | In both dialects is the particle of remoteness. |
| 25. | adin (followed by a verb)  | what, that, which (relative)                    |
| 26. | zṛ  | to see  |
| 27. | tabrat:/tibratin (pl.)   | letter  |
| 28. | hd:  | somebody  |
| 29. | miždid/ tmiždit: (f.)<br>imiždidn (m.p.), timiždidin (f.p.)  | new<br>(f.p.)                                   |
| 30. | km:l (A.A. /šm:l/)<br>Notice A.S. /k/ and A.A. /š/. Also compare #16 above.  | to finish                                       |
| 31. | tš (i/u)<br>Imperative A.S. /itš, itšm, itšnt/<br>Compare A.A. tš (i/a) 'to eat', Imperative A.A. /tš, tšimt, tšint/ | to eat  |
| 32. | amšli (A.A. /imšli/)   | lunch   |
| 33. | rw:h   | to go back in the evening                       |
| 34. | q:ah (A.A. /kul:š/)  | Here: All, everybody, everything                |
| 35. | am (A.A. /am:/)  | like  |
| 36. | lxđrt (A.A. lxudrt/)   | vegetables.                                     |

15.2

at:ay<sup>1</sup>

l:as:n<sup>2</sup> imaziyn bz:af w:at:ay . l:an q:ah<sup>3</sup> idin ift:rñ<sup>4</sup>  
 iṣ:bah swat:ay , sunt yr umšli , sunt yl leaṣr<sup>5</sup> , sunt  
 yr umnsi<sup>6</sup> . mism<sup>7</sup> ag:t:uṣdal<sup>8</sup> wat:ay ? nx<sup>9</sup> tawid:  
 tmt:uṭ: ṣ:iniy:a , dlkisan , dubr:ad , dlmq:raš<sup>10</sup> ,  
 dlmžmr<sup>11</sup> , ṭ:ar:bain<sup>12</sup> w:at:ay , ds:k:ar . l:at:nawn<sup>13</sup>  
 waman ilmq:raš al yanun , iž uryaz at:ay , dn:ṣnaṣ ,  
 ds:k:ar g:br:ad , ikb:<sup>14</sup> aman zy lmq:raš g:br:ad ,  
 is:rs<sup>15</sup> abr:ad xlmžmr al yayṣdl , iq:as<sup>16</sup> , izaydas  
 s:k:ar mš asixṣ: , zṣma<sup>17</sup> , mš ims:<sup>18</sup> wat:ay . iwa mš  
 izid<sup>19</sup> n:it , ul:iasit:g: ša . ikb: iyayt tad:art adsun .  
 ad:ay ilin inužiwñ<sup>20</sup> nxd: ad:ay yili sal lfrñ<sup>21</sup> , ižitn<sup>22</sup>  
 mid:n l:at:mug:an<sup>23</sup> waman ilḅabur<sup>24</sup> . nx tiliyas leafit  
 zg:ad:a<sup>25</sup> . ad:ay s:n mid:n at:ay, alt:žum:uṣn<sup>26</sup> xmag: zr:an<sup>27</sup>  
 g:γrm itqbilt dkul:šiši .

NOTES

1. at:ay (A.A. /atay/) tea
2. sw (i/u) (/swix/, /iswu/) to drink  
 Compare: A.S. /sw/ has /s:/ VH  
 A.A. /sw/ has /s:a/ VH

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

- |     |  |  |
|-----|--|--|
| 3.  | q:aḥ (A.A. /aḡ:d/)  | Here: even                                 |
| 4.  | fdṛ (VH is: A.S. /ft:r/,<br>A.A. /fd:r/)  | to take breakfast                          |
| 5.  | ḷasṛ   | Time of afternoon<br>prayer, around 4 p.m. |
| 6.  | amnsi (A.A. /imnsi/)   | dinner                                     |
| 7.  | mism   | how?                                       |
| 8.  | ag:t:uḡdal (</ay it:uḡdal/ - here:<br>/t:uḡdal/ is passive VH of /ḡdl/<br>'to fix, to repair')   | it is fixed                                |
| 9.  | nx (always followed by a<br>verb in the Aorist).<br>This particle is just a linking particle in the sense that<br>it need not be translated into English most of the time. | Aorist particle.                           |
| 10. | lmqraḡ   | kettle                                     |
| 11. | lmḡmṛ   | coal burner                                |
| 12. | ṭar:bḡt / ṭar:bḡin   | box  |
| 13. | nw (VH: A.S. /t:naw/; A.A.<br>/t:nwa/)   | to be cooked                               |
| 14. | kb:  | to pour                                    |
| 15. | s:rs (A.A. /srs/)  | to put                                     |
| 16. | q:as   | to taste                                   |



17. zɛma let us say
18. ms: (VH: /t:msis/) to need sugar or salt
19. ziḍ to be sweet (food or drink)
20. anuži (A.A. /anbyi/) guest  
 Compare:  
A.S. tanužiyt f.s. A.A. tanbyiwt  
 inužiwn m.p. inbyawn  
 tinužiwin f.p. tinbyawin
21. lfṛh feast
22. ižit (A.A. /ɛd:a/) (impersonal) to be abundant
23. t:mug:a passive of /ž/  
 'to be done, made'
24. lɓabuṛ big water pot, samovar
25. zg:ad:a (</zy ad:a/) from below  
 ad:a bottom
26. džum:ɛ (VH: /t:žum:uɛ/) to talk, chat  
 al- (A.A.: /ar-/) inchoative particle
27. žra (/i-a/); A.A. /žru/ (i/a) to happen  
 VH: A.S. /žr:a/; A.A. /t:žru/

15.3

rndan<sup>1</sup>

imaziyn imslmn<sup>2</sup> ayžin l:at:zał:an l:atsd:aqn<sup>3</sup> alt:š:arñ<sup>4</sup>  
 alt:wačadn lhidž<sup>5</sup> alt:zum:n . l:at:zum:n išhr r:ndan din  
 idf:rn<sup>6</sup> šhr nščban, ad:ay ikm:l šhr nščban, zrn<sup>7</sup> mid:n yur<sup>8</sup>  
 miždid, l:ayt:xš:ayasn adbdan adt:zum:n dutšan:s<sup>9</sup> . nx  
 k:rn ziš zdat<sup>10</sup> l:fžr<sup>11</sup> tšn s:hur<sup>12</sup>, s:liln<sup>13</sup> imawnn:sn<sup>14</sup>,  
 bdan alt:zum:n . ixš:asn urt:t:n , urs:n , urt:k:mun<sup>15</sup>,  
 bčda drusn<sup>16</sup> imaziyn din itk:mun . urt:g:n q:aḥ adin t:šthan<sup>17</sup>  
 al: lmyrb<sup>18</sup>, ad:ay iwd:n<sup>19</sup> t:alḥ , raḥn mid:n z:ałn qbl  
 adf:rn . ad:ay z:ał:n , bdan alft:rn sthrit<sup>20</sup> t:amzwarut:  
 din z:ruyn<sup>21</sup> stini<sup>22</sup> , s:dfrnas<sup>23</sup> lq:hwa duḡrum , q:imn  
 al: luq:t l:šša , tšn amsi . q:imn als:n at:ay al šša  
 l:uqt , k:rn adžn:<sup>24</sup> k:rnd: dax<sup>25</sup> ḡr s:hur , tšn adin  
 asništahn<sup>26</sup>, čidn<sup>27</sup> adžn: . iwa am:in:<sup>28</sup> al: izry rndan .  
 ad:ay izry rndan , čy:dn<sup>29</sup> mid:n . lčidu<sup>30</sup> l:ast:inin  
 lčid amz:yan .

1. Compare: A.S. /rndan/, A.A. /rmdan/ Ramadan
2. Compare: A.S. /imslmn/, Moslems (m)  
 A.A. /inslmn/

(A.S.: /amslm/, /tamslmt/, imslmn/, /timsmlin/ /A.A.:  
/anslm/, /tanslmt/, /inslmn/, /tinsmlin/. (m.s., f.s.,  
m.p., f.p.))

It is interesting to compare #1 and #2 above:

#1 A.S. /n/ - A.A. /m/

#2 A.S. /m/ - A.A. /n/

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 3. sd:q                               | to give alms   |
| 4. š:r                                | to give tithe  |
| 5. lhidž                              | pilgrimage   |
| 6. dfr (VH: /df:r/)                   | to follow  |
| 7. zr (i/u) VH z:ar                   | to see   |
| 8. yur (c.s. uyur)                    | crescent   |
| 9. dutša (A.A. /ask:a/)               | tomorrow   |
| dutšan:s                              | the following day  |
| 10. zdat (A.A. /dat/)                 | before, in front of  |
| Compare A.S. zi zdat and A.A. zy dat. |  |
| 11. lfžr                              | dawn   |
| 12. s:hur                             | last meal before day-<br>break during the month<br>of Ramadan. |
| 13. s:lil (A.A. /slil/)               | to wash, rinse   |
| 14. imi / imawn (pl.)                 | mouth  |
| 15. kmu (VH. /t:kmu/) (A.A. /šmu/)    | to smoke   |

- |     |  |                                |
|-----|--|--------------------------------|
| 16. | drus (VH /t:drus/)   | to be rare                     |
| 17. | štha (i/a) (VH /t:štha/)                                       | desire                         |
| 18. | lmγrb  | sunset                         |
| 19. | wd:n (VH /t:wd:an/)  | to call for prayer             |
| 20. | tahriřt  | Moroccan soup                  |
| 21. | z:ry<br>(VH. /z:ruy/)  | Caus. of /zry/ 'to pass'       |
| 22. | tini (A.A. /tigni/)  | dates                          |
| 23. | s:dfřnas   | Caus. 'make it followed by'.   |
| 24. | žn (i/u) (VH /džan/<br>Compare (A.A. /gn/ (i/a) and VH /g:an/) | to sleep                       |
| 25. | dax (A.A. /diγ/)   | again                          |
| 26. | štab (<Ar./katab/)   | to write. Here: to have handy. |
| 27. | εid (A.A. /εayd/)  | to return, go back             |
| 28. | am:in: ( A.A. amšis:)  | like this                      |
| 29. | εy:d (VH. /t:εy:ad/)   | to celebrate the feast.        |
| 30. | lεid<br>Notice: /lεidu/ "this feast". Compare (/A.A. /lεida/)  | the feast                      |

15.4

ižran

maz t:čišn<sup>1</sup> imaziyn ? imaziyn l:at:čišn zy thṛ:at:<sup>2</sup> ,  
 zy lṛrs<sup>3</sup>. zəma s:žr<sup>4</sup> , t:h:r:at: imndi t:mzin , dlxdrt  
 ušafi . iwa asidi , g:nbdū , l:at:ilin imndi ak:d<sup>5</sup>  
 tmzin γmint<sup>6</sup> ya<sup>7</sup>, urasntixs: xas at:ntimžr<sup>8</sup> babatsnt .  
 l:ayt:ili išrz<sup>9</sup> idžrst<sup>10</sup> əlahq: imndi ak:d tmzin l:aym:int  
 xas swaman w:nzar. iwa n:ixaš g:nbdū almdžrn,als:rwatn<sup>11</sup>  
 alz:uz:urn<sup>12</sup> alžm:ən imndi t:mzin . iwa asidi nx irah  
 s:bah , nx ik:r butad:art din γr l:an ižran , irah nt:a  
 ak:d ayt tad:artn:s,mr:a<sup>13</sup> latg:ur tmṭ:ut:ns nxd: ti:y:alinn:s  
 mš γrs l:ant snat , mun:t ak:ids<sup>14</sup>, mžrnt,im:a<sup>15</sup> l:ayt:ili  
 γrs uxm:as<sup>16</sup> din ak:ids imdžrn,nxd: l:ag:urnd: mid:n din  
 ak:ids imdžrn alasnitšitš<sup>17</sup> idž l:qdr<sup>18</sup> zg:idin<sup>19</sup> imžr,nxd:  
 altnit:xl:as slflus . aday γaymžr imndin:s inq:ltn<sup>20</sup> , adin  
 am<sup>21</sup> t:inin anq:l . nx nq:ln imndi awintnid: al anrar ,  
 s:rsntn,žnis:n taf:iwin<sup>22</sup> al:γaymžr kul:ši q:aḥ urasit:γima  
 ma γaymžr , is:rut imndi din d:is:rs itaf:iwin,iz:uz:rtn ,  
 iəbrtn , ižm:tn is:l:at<sup>23</sup> ušafi . maša luq:tdin n:it l:ayt:ili

d:ra ul:itt:xr:afn<sup>24</sup> al: mnbəd . umnbəd ixš: urnt:t:u<sup>25</sup>

isl:an wurtan dindi l:ant s:žur nt:f:ah dlmšmaš dbuɣwida

dwadil dr:m:an<sup>26</sup> ds:žur l:fakya . ulad s:žuru l:at:uxr:afnt

ak:d d:ra,iwa safi .

- |     |   |                                |
|-----|---|--------------------------------|
| 1.  | ɣiš (VH: /t:ɣiš/)   | to live on                     |
| 2.  | tahr:at:  | agriculture                    |
| 3.  | lɣrs  | tree planting                  |
| 4.  | s:žrt / s:žr ~ s:žur (pl)   | tree                           |
| 5.  | ak:d  | with, and                      |
| 6.  | ɣmi (VH: /ɣm:i/)  | to grow                        |
| 7.  | ya<br>e.g. isirah ya ?  | already<br>Is he already gone? |
| 8.  | mžr (A.A. /mgr/)<br>Compare VH /mdžr/ A.S.; /mg:r/ A.A.; also #24 in 15.3 | to harvest                     |
| 9.  | šrz (A.A. /krz/)<br>Also compare VH /šr:z/ A.S.; /kr:z/ A.A.              | to plow                        |
| 10. | tažrst (A.A. /tagrst/)  | winter                         |
| 11. | s:rut VH /s:rwat/   | thresh                         |
| 12. | z:uz:r VH /z:uz:ur/   | to winnow                      |
| 13. | mr:a  | once                           |

14. ak:d with  
 ak:idi with me  
 ak:ids̃ with you (m.s.)  
 ak:idm with you (f.s.)  
 ak:ids with him/her
- ak:idx with us  
 ak:idun with you (m.p.)  
 ak:ids̃nt with you (f.p.)  
 ak:idsn with them (m.)  
 ak:idsnt with them (f.)
15. im:a either
16. axm:as / ixm:asn share cropper (gets  
 1/5 of the crop)
17. alasnitšitš he gives them  
 Here: /tšitš/ is VH of /uš/ 'to give'
18. lqdr amount
19. zg:idin (</zy adin/) from that
20. nq:l to transport grains; to  
 transplant
21. amu to which
22. t:af:a / taf:iwin heap of grains
23. s:l:t /s:l:at big basket
24. xr:f(VH /t:xr:af/) to harvest
25. t:u to forget
26. r:m:an pomegranate

15.5

V.

thanut: uɣɣm<sup>1</sup>

kul: iɣɣm wax:a adimz:i , l:at:ili dis ša nthanut: .  
 may d:t:awin mid:n zy thanut:din ? ulid:<sup>2</sup> zɛma<sup>3</sup> am ša  
 nthanut: tamɣ:rant ntndint , maša l:atafn dis mid:n edin  
 asnit:xš:an g:ɣɣm:sn , am s:k:ar , am z:it , am š:abun  
 din ss:iridn<sup>4</sup> iɛban:n:sn , am tšmɛiyin<sup>5</sup> , ɛlahq: bz:af  
 y:ɣɣman imaziɣn isul urtnyiwd t:risinti<sup>6</sup> , zɛma asid:<sup>7</sup> .  
 iwa alɣrsnt:ilint tšmɛiyin , als:ididn<sup>8</sup> stšmɛiyin dlanbat<sup>9</sup> .  
 buthanut: , l:ayt:ili ɣrs lgayz din t:ibɣan mid:n ilanbatn:sn .  
 l:at:ilin ša w:aɛɣabn l:at:kmun , ɛlahq: drusn imaziɣn din  
 it:k:mun , iwa alɣrsit:ili ulad<sup>10</sup> g:ir:u<sup>11</sup> ɣr buthanut: ,  
 alɣrsit:ili luq:id ɛlahq: luq:id ixš: itudrin<sup>12</sup> , itxamin .  
 mak:d<sup>13</sup> dnin ? ul:i ɣrs t:ili lxdɣt , ɛlahq: ul:iasnt:xš:a  
 lxdɣt , l:at:ili ɣrsn g:ftisn:sn<sup>14</sup> , g:urtann:sn<sup>15</sup> .  
 mak:d dnin arɣ:i ? tiftilin<sup>16</sup> l:anbat , taz:ažin<sup>17</sup> l:anbat  
 l:at:ilint ɣrsn , ulad lanbat l:at:ilint ɣrsn , maša  
 wax:a t:ilint thunayu timzy:anin , l:azr:in<sup>18</sup> iɛt:arn<sup>19</sup>  
 g:ɣɣman , l:ag:urnd:<sup>20</sup> l:az:nzan lhlwa<sup>21</sup> ilwašun



Unit 15

imz:y:an: , alz:nzan tisbniyin<sup>22</sup> . ad:ay γaynint tcy:alin  
 adsynt ša zğ:ç:ar , l:ant tidin asit:awin lflus . maša  
 l:ant ulad tidin asit:awin šwi nđ:uft<sup>23</sup> . nx tušas iwç:ar  
 šwi nđ:uft , tiniyas uši içq:ayn<sup>24</sup> , nxd: itlms:ak:<sup>25</sup> ,  
 nxd: tisura<sup>26</sup> . tl:a td:in asit:awin udi , tl:a td:in  
 asit:awin imndi , irdn , iwa hadamakan .

1. ayrm ~iyrm village (A.S.)  
 Construct State: (uyrm ~ iyrm) A.S. Compare A.A.  
 /iyrm/.
2. ulid: It is not (precedes  
 nominal expressions)
3. zçma that is to say
4. s:ird VH /s:irid/ to wash
5. tašmçiyt / tišmçiyin candle
6. t:risinti (m.) electricity
7. asid: (m.) light
8. s:id: VH /s:idid/ to get light
9. lanba/ lanbat (pl.) kerosene lamp
10. ulad (A.A. ağ:d/) even
11. g:iç:u (A.A. /g:ar:u/) cigarettes

- |     |  |                        |
|-----|--|------------------------|
| 12. | tudrin (A.A. /tad:rwin/)   | houses                 |
| 13. | mak:d ?<br>mak:d dnin ?  | what else<br>what else |
| 14. | aftis /iftisn  | big gardens            |
| 15. | urtu/ urtan  | orchard                |
| 16. | taftilt/tiftilin   | wick                   |
| 17. | z:až (<Ar.)  | glass                  |
| 18. | zry VH /zr:y/  | to pass                |
| 19. | a <sup>ʕ</sup> t:ar /i <sup>ʕ</sup> t:arn  | peddler                |
| 20. | g:ur (VH)  | to go                  |
| 21. | lhlwa  | sweets, candy          |
| 22. | tasbniyt / tisbniyin   | head cover for women   |
| 23. | taduft   | wool                   |
| 24. | a <sup>ʕ</sup> q:a / i <sup>ʕ</sup> q:ayn  | bead                   |
| 25. | lms:ak: / itlms:ak (pl.)<br>Notice the use of /it-/ plural prefix in A.S. and /id-/<br>in A.A. | pin                    |
| 26. | tsarut: /tisura<br>Compare /tasarut:/ 'key' in A.A.  | needle                 |
| 27. | iwa hada makan (<Ar.)  | Well, that is all.     |

16.1

I.

aḥidus<sup>1</sup>

ad:ay yili ša l:frḥ<sup>2</sup> am ša ntmyra , l:at:g:n mid:n aḥidus .  
 nx raḥnd: q:aḥ idin is:n adnš:dn<sup>3</sup> , yrnd: iš:yux<sup>4</sup> , yrnd:  
 iymdyazn<sup>5</sup> ,yili udin itšatn<sup>6</sup> al:un<sup>7</sup> , raḥnd: q:aḥ idin  
 it:g:n aḥidus , s:rsn mid:n adžn at:ay d:aw nša wxam  
 amq:ran, q:imn dis mid:n din in:an adžn aḥidus , la  
 yryazn la tiy:alin , mludufn<sup>8</sup> zg:fas:n , bd:n<sup>9</sup> , žn idž  
 nr:if<sup>10</sup> nxd: snat , alt:myud:un<sup>11</sup> am:u dwam:u<sup>12</sup> , alt:nš:adn ,  
 altšatn bariq<sup>13</sup> . il:a wdin asnitšatn al:un , altšt:aḥn .  
 iwa asidi mš l:an imdyazn , il:a mani t:bid:idn ayt uḥidus ,  
 žn arba t:rbat: , durba t:rbat: , durba t:rbat: , am:idin  
 nx tili trbat: žar<sup>14</sup> snat l:wašun , yili wrba žar snat  
 ntšir:atin . aha<sup>15</sup> idin is:n iwḥidus , l:at:ilin g:am:as ,  
 iwa altšatn siḍarn<sup>16</sup> , alt:ḥudurn<sup>17</sup> ,alt:nš:adn . il:a  
 mani s:usumn<sup>18</sup> , bd:n , yini ḥd: ša l:may:t<sup>19</sup> alt:γaykm:l ,  
 ibda wal:un alitšat , idn dax alt:št:aḥn , q:imn mid:n ,  
 k:ud<sup>20</sup> t:kb:an at:ay t:žum:u:n , dš:n<sup>22</sup> , t:fr:ažn<sup>23</sup> . iwa  
 q:imn mid:n al: lfžr<sup>24</sup> q:aḥ , iwa kul: idžimun dlman ,

iwačd tad:artn:s . mš isul šawhidus dutšan:s , nx čidnd:

žn dax<sup>25</sup> aħidus , frħn , št:ħn , tšn , al:γaykm:l lfrħ .

iwa lud:inin<sup>26</sup> , kul: idž ičid γr tad:artn:s .

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. aħidus                                   | Berber dance                        |
| 2. lfrħ                                     | feast                               |
| 3. nš:d (VH /t:nš:ad/)                      | to sing                             |
| 4. š:ix / š:yux (pl)<br>š:ixa / š:ixat (pl) | singer (m.)<br>singer,dancer (f.)   |
| 5. amdzyaz / imdyazn (pl.)                  | singer                              |
| 6. w:t (VH /tšat/)                          | to hit                              |
| 7. al:un                                    | tambourine                          |
| 8. mluduf                                   | to hold one another<br>by the hand. |
| 9. bd: (VH /t:bid:id/)                      | to stand up                         |
| 10. r:if                                    | line of dancers                     |
| 11. myud:u                                  | to rock                             |
| 12. am:u dwam:u                             | this side and that<br>side          |
| 13. bařiq (Compare A.A. /abařiq:/)          | palm of the hand                    |
| 14. žar                                     | between                             |

15. aha	and then
16. ɖar / idarn	foot
17. hɔdr (VH /t:hɔdur/)	to bend
18. s:usm (VH /s:usum/)	to stop talking
19. lmayt	solo singing
20. k:ud	so long as, while
21. kb: (VH /t:kb:a/)	to pour
22. tɕ (VH /ɖɕ:/)	to laugh
23. fr:ž	to look at, to watch
24. lfžr	dawn
25. dax (Compare A.A. /diɣ/)	again
26. lud:inin	and then

16.2

iɕban:<sup>1</sup> w:ryaz

aryaz ɣr imaziɣn , l:ayt:iɣad<sup>2</sup> lq:amiža nxd: išbr<sup>3</sup> ,

zɣ:afl:a<sup>4</sup> l:ayt:iɣad taqb:ut:<sup>5</sup> , duslham<sup>6</sup> zɣ:afl:an:s , iq:n<sup>7</sup>

s:rawl , iž r:žt xuzl:if nxd: š:aš<sup>9</sup> . l:an idin it:g:n

tšaš:iyt<sup>10</sup> , maša drusn , drusn bz:af . l:at:q:n: s:rawl

sd:k:a<sup>11</sup> , maša s:rawldin ds:rawl imaziyn . l:an idin it:iraḍn  
s:rawl ntndint , alast:g:n s:mta<sup>12</sup> , adin mu nt:ini stmaziyt  
tahz:ant<sup>13</sup> . maša l:an ulad idin asit:inin s:mt:a . l:an  
mid:n din it:iraḍn tibdciyin<sup>14</sup> . nx žn tabdciyt zg:afl:a  
l:qamiža , žn taqb:ut: tmsdit:<sup>15</sup> zg:afl:an:s , žrn<sup>16</sup>  
afl:an:s aslham . ad:ay yili usm:id<sup>17</sup> idžrst , l:at:iraḍn  
tiqb:a timizayin<sup>18</sup> , tmuzurin<sup>19</sup> nḍ:uft , maša ad:ay yayili  
ša l:frḥ , nxd: ad:ay yarahn adz:aln , nx irḍn taqb:ut:  
tmsdit: , žn zg:afl:an:s aslham misdid . iwa šafi ,  
ayu ayri at:inix xiḥban: w:ryaz .

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. iḥban:                   | clothes  |
| 2. irḍ (VH /t:iraḍ/)        | to wear  |
| 3. išbr / išbran            | long inner shirt                                     |
| 4. afl:a                    | up   |
| 5. taqb:ut:                 | man's djellaba                                       |
| 6. aslham                   | Berber cloak , capelike                              |
| 7. q:n                      | to close; here: to wear,<br>e.g. pants, shoes, socks |
| 8. r:zt (Compare AA /r:st/) | turban   |
| 9. š:aš                     | modern turban  |

- |     |  |                     |
|-----|--|---------------------|
| 10. | tšaš:iyt   | cap                 |
| 11. | d:k:a /itd:k:a (pl)                                      | trousers inner belt |
| 12. | s:ṃta/its:ṃta (pl)                                     | belt                |
| 13. | tahz:ant / tiḥz:amin                                     | belt                |
| 14. | tabḍiy:t  | Berber vest         |
| 15. | misdid / imisdidn  | thin (m.)           |
|     | tmisdit: / timisdidin                                    | thin (f.)           |
| 16. | žr (VH /g:ar/)   | to throw            |
|     | Compare A.A. /gr/ and VH /g:ar/; also compare #8 in 15.4 |                     |
| 17. | ašm:id   | cold                |
|     | lhmut:   | heat                |
| 18. | mizay / imizayn  | heavy (m.)          |
|     | tmizayt / timizayin                                      | heavy (f.)          |
|     | z:ay (VH /t:izay/)                                       | to be heavy         |
| 19. | muzur / imuzurn  | fat (m.)            |
|     | tmuzurt / timuzurin                                      | fat (f.)            |
|     | zur (VH /t:zur/)   | to be fat           |

16.3

ṃayt:g:n mid:n df:iṛ<sup>1</sup> umnsi

ad:ay tšn mid:n amnsi , nx ʕṃ:rn kima<sup>2</sup> lqaʕida ša l:k:as

w:at:ay , nx q:imn , ʕṃ:rn abr:ad amzwaru , alt:žum:uʕn<sup>3</sup> ,

ʕṃ:rn wis:snat , q:imn alt:žum:uʕn , ʕṃ:rn wis:tlata ,

t:un ixfn:sn , sawdn em:rn wis:rba , q:imn asidi alt:žum:uɛn .  
max s:awaln q:ah ? mš danbdu , l:as:awaln xunbdu sixfn:s ,  
zema amžr , dusrwt , dmšhal ntyrarin<sup>4</sup> ag:usi wu<sup>5</sup> dwu  
iyndi nxd: timzin . iwa f:yn , wasdn anrar , džin<sup>6</sup>  
tisdnan<sup>7</sup> itad:art , als:awaln xuydin tnit:hm:am amuyu nn:a .  
iwa asidi , s:iwln xtržwin , s:iwln xwug:už<sup>8</sup> mš xsg ik:u  
yyzr<sup>10</sup> is:xsrasn<sup>11</sup> tiržwin , s:iwln xlxrif din tnit:ržan ,  
s:iwln xuydin yaxr:fn . iwa s:iwln xunzar , adin yušu  
rb:i danzar , iwa q:imn alt:žum:uɛn asidi am:n: ,  
ul:is:awaln la xuydin it:ini r:adyu , ula walu . adin  
tnit:hm:an xas ižrann:sn , duydin zy t:cišn . iwa q:imn  
als:awaln al išt l:uq:t , k:ul: idž iwaɛd tad:artn:s ,  
k:rn adžn: t:af<sup>12</sup> ad:k:rn s:bah ziš<sup>13</sup> adsidn<sup>14</sup> adwaɛdn  
ižran .

- |                           |               |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| 1. df:ir                  | after, behind |
| 2. kima                   | as, like      |
| 3. džum:ɛ (VH /t:žum:uɛ/) | to chat       |
| 4. tayrart /tiyrarin (pl) | sack          |



5. wu this one (m.)  
win: that one (m.)
- tu this one (f.)  
tin: this one (f.)
6. dži (Compare A.A. /adž/) to leave, let
7. tisdnan women
8. ug:už / ug:užn dam
9. xs (A.A. /ɣifs/) on it (m.)
10. iyzr / isaf:n river  
Compare: A.A. /asif/ and pl. /isaf:n/ 'river'
11. xsr (VH /t:xsir/) to be out of order
12. t:af (Compare A.A. /t:afad/) in order to
13. ziš (Compare A.A. zik:/) early
14. eid (Compare A.A. /eayd/) to return

16.4 lxdnt<sup>1</sup> ntmt:uṭ:<sup>2</sup>

mag:žin lxdnt ntmt:uṭ: ɣr ayt sɣruš:n ? iwa tamt:uṭ:

l:atšud:a<sup>3</sup> , l:at:ažmd:<sup>4</sup> aman , l:atzd:m<sup>5</sup>... nx tk:r

tmt:uṭ: ziš , tzd<sup>6</sup> imndi nxd: timžin nxd: adin yušu ɣb:i ,

tg:<sup>7</sup> aɣrum ilfaḍur<sup>8</sup> , ts:nut<sup>9</sup> itfant<sup>10</sup> . ad:ay fɣrn ayt

tad:art nx ts:ird iq:šušn , tɛdl tad:art , tɛ: aɣrum  
iwmšli , tdžit<sup>11</sup> adil:xs<sup>12</sup> , tɛraḥ twaɛd iɣzr ad:tažm  
aman . nx tawy ak:ids ayd:id<sup>13</sup> , dunfif<sup>14</sup> , duɣɣ:af , tɛraḥ  
ad:tažm . ad:ay ɣatažm ts:nw aɣrum ɣ:fr:an<sup>15</sup> ad:ay ɣayl:xs .  
iwa tnsb it:ažin nxd: tž utšu . mš xš:n iyš:uɣn<sup>16</sup> l:at:asy  
asɣun<sup>17</sup> duyɣ:im<sup>18</sup> twaɛd lxlə<sup>19</sup> ad:tzdm . tamd:it:<sup>20</sup> ad:ay  
d:irw:h<sup>21</sup> lksb<sup>22</sup> nt:at: ag:tq:n:<sup>23</sup> iɛ:l:uš:n<sup>24</sup> diɣaydn<sup>25</sup> ,  
tɛ:y<sup>26</sup> tiɣt:n<sup>27</sup> dwul:i<sup>28</sup> . il:a mani tf:al<sup>29</sup> aɣt:a<sup>30</sup>  
alttɛt:<sup>31</sup> alt:k:s<sup>32</sup> . nt:at: uxl:aš: ag:tqabaln<sup>33</sup> q:ah<sup>34</sup>  
tad:art . il:a mani t:ɛawan aryazn:s am luq:t unbdū .  
l:atg:ur ɣr ižran ald:tnq:al imndi ɣr unrar duyɣin q:ah .  
iwa dayu<sup>35</sup> .

1. lxdnt (A.A. /lxdmt/) work
2. tamt:ut: (A.A. /tamd:ut:/) woman
3. šud:a ( i/a ) to do the cooking and all matters concerning cooking.
4. ažm (A.A. /agm/) to bring water from the river
5. zdm (VH /zd:m/) to collect wood

6. zḍ (i/u) (VH/ z:ad/)	to grind
7. ḡ: (i/u) (VH /t:ḡ:/)	to knead
8. lfadur	breakfast
9. s:nu (VH /s:naw/)	to cook
10. tfant	clay tray for baking bread
11. dži (A.A. /adž/) VH /t:dži/ A.S., /t:adž/A.A.	to let
12. l:xs	to get leaven
13. ayd:id / iyd:īdn (pl.)	waterskin
14. anfif / infifn	funnel
15. afr:an / ifr:an:	oven
16. ayš:ud / iyš:udn A.A. /akš:īd , ikš:īdn/	wood
17. asyun (A.A. /asq:n/)	rope
18. ayz:im / iyz:am	axe
19. lxla	wilderness
20. tamd:it:(A.A. /tadg:at:/)	evening
21. rw:h /VH t:rw:ah/	to go in the evening
22. lksb (m)	sheep and cattle

- |     |                                 |                                     |
|-----|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 23. | q:n (VH /t:q:n/)                | to close, to tie                    |
| 24. | a:l:uš / i:l:ušn (pl.)          | lamb                                |
| 25. | iγid / iγaydn                   | kid, goat                           |
| 26. | z:y (VH /t:z:y/)                | to milk                             |
| 27. | tγat: /tiγt:n                   | she goat                            |
| 28. | ul:i                            | sheep                               |
| 29. | f1 ( VH /f:al/)                 | to start the loom                   |
| 30. | azt:a / izdwan                  | loom                                |
| 31. | zd (VH /zt:/ A.S.; /zd:a/ A.A.) | to weave                            |
| 32. | k:s (VH /t:k:s/)                | to take out, take off,<br>take away |
| 33. | q:abl (VH /t:q:abal/)           | to take care of                     |
| 34. | q:aḥ                            | all                                 |
| 35. | iwa dayu                        | that is it                          |

16.5 ayt sγruš:n

ayt sγrušn taq:bilt tamq:řant ay řin mařa mř:aqn<sup>1</sup> . l:an

ayt sγruš:n ntiřikt , sidi řli,l:an ayt sγruš:n imuz:ar

nk:nđř , l:an ayt sγruš:n nayt řli wyusf , l:an ayt

sγruš:n g:ayt yusf uđd:u itahla , l:an ayt sγruš:n itls:int .

inu<sup>2</sup> kul:ši t:sm:an<sup>3</sup> dayt<sup>4</sup> ṣyruš:n . lqaʿidan:sn nitni  
 taq:bilt iq:ṣ̌hn<sup>5</sup> šwi bkri . tl:a g:am:as l:qbayl ɖurnas<sup>6</sup>  
 kul:ši walayn:i l:atsitarn<sup>7</sup> xmid:n luq:t l:ḥrb<sup>8</sup> bkri ,  
 aṃyi<sup>9</sup> din t:g:n bkri. ayt ṣyruš:n q:ṣ̌hn , l:atsitarn  
 xayt yusi , l:atsitarn ximṛmušn , xbṇyaẓya . l:az:isnt:g:dn<sup>10</sup>  
 kul:ši waḍžarṇ:sn . nitni ɣir<sup>11</sup> mid:n iks:abn.ktir<sup>12</sup> ɣrsn  
 iks:abn nitni dayṃn<sup>13</sup> l:at:ṛḥaln , tamurtn:sn<sup>14</sup> šwi ṭsm:d<sup>15</sup>  
 l:at:ṛḥaln luq:t ušm:id<sup>16</sup> l:at:hw:adn<sup>17</sup> ɣl:ɣabt<sup>18</sup> iwa luq:t  
 l:ḥmut:<sup>19</sup> l:at:cidnd:. iwa lmṣišṭn:sn tq̣r:<sup>20</sup> ḅ, tamurtn:sn ṭɖl ,  
 tamurtn:sn l:atnt:qw:aṃ ični<sup>21</sup> lmṣišṭn:sn itmurtn:sn tkfatn<sup>23</sup> .  
 zg:a il:a lmxzn is:nasn tizi,<sup>24</sup> q:ṣ̌hn ilbarud,<sup>25</sup> q:ṣ̌hn ak:mani<sup>26</sup>  
 taq:bilt iṛš:an<sup>27</sup> ak:d ixfn:s ušafi . taq:bilt it:was:n:<sup>28</sup>  
 ak:mani ušafi .

nitni ayt ṣyruš:n kul:ši t:sm:an ḍš:ṛfa,<sup>29</sup> ɖarwa<sup>30</sup>  
 m:ulay<sup>31</sup> ɖli bn ɖmṛ, nitni didrisiyn.<sup>32</sup> bkri daɖṛabn ayžin ,  
 walakin zg:a<sup>33</sup> l:an itqb:al ṇš:luḥ<sup>34</sup> als:awaln sṭšḷhiyt  
 azg:a<sup>35</sup> ɖida als:awaln sṭšḷhiyt . žin z:awit<sup>36</sup> g:am:as  
 imaziyn . imṛmušn l:as:awaln stmaziyt , ayt ɖlihm l:as:awaln

stmaziyt , ayt yusi l:as:awaln stmaziyt . q:imn nitni  
g:am:as , ša it:ɛl:am<sup>37</sup> ša,azg:a ɛidn kul:ši als:awaln  
stmaziyt . lašln:sn<sup>38</sup> daɛrabn<sup>39</sup> . nitni dar:a nsidi mulay  
ɛli bnɛmr . l:an ɣrsn s:adatn:sn<sup>40</sup> alxsnt:g:n l:am:a<sup>41</sup>  
kul: asg:as l:an wadžar:n:sn l:asnt:azn:<sup>42</sup> lfdl<sup>43</sup> ...  
adin asnyaynin ... l:asnt:d:ɛan<sup>44</sup> alit:km:al rb:i .  
žin taqbilt it:uwq:rn<sup>45</sup> ul:i xsnit:ɛd:a<sup>46</sup> hd:, altnxd:mn  
mid:n . luq:t nš:if , luq:t nthr:at: , luq:t nku:ši  
ak:udin<sup>47</sup> irahn adiyr itqb:al imrmušn ayt ɛlihm kul:ši  
ad:k:rn sumz:yan dumqran adasnmžrn adasns:rutn adasnxdmn  
tiržwin,mš il:a lbni at:nɛawn: ilbni.l:asnd:t:asin z:yarit<sup>48</sup> .  
tl:a z:awit nayt mulay ɛid durt:x l:asnd:t:asin imrmušn ,  
ayt ɛlihm , ayt warayn , iyzran , ayt ɛlihm , kul:ši .  
zg:sg:as ɣrusg:as alasnd:t:asin z:yarit kul:idž dmag:t:ɛ l:am  
itmzyida . ša l:asit:sl:am ix f l:mal , ša l:asit:ɛl:am  
afunas , ša l:asit:ɛl:am imndi , lflus . ad:ay d:wɛdn  
tamzyida l:atnis:tša buz:awit mlih<sup>49</sup> q:imn yumayn alasnitg:  
lhžabat<sup>50</sup> ilwašunn:sn alasnit:ari<sup>51</sup> alasnibd:a lhšana<sup>52</sup>  
alasnit:sam:a . udin isn:dn<sup>53</sup> xša nš:rif yinias "asidi

mš iyušu rb:i ša nd:r:iyt<sup>54</sup> hašadin sz:yaritn:š " .  
 i:cid l:asitšitš rb:i d:r:iyt alasit:azn lfdl . iwa  
 urasit:k:s imm:is az:ar<sup>55</sup> kas altidyayawy yr z:awit  
 l:asit:k:s az:ar ix:ras<sup>56</sup> ism isam:at . aha ad:ay  
 yrnsn irah š:rif aldist:nhl:an<sup>57</sup> alast:g:n n:ubt<sup>58</sup> .  
 iwa ad:ay yini š:rif adixdm tarža nxd: adimžr nxd: ...  
 wax:a adazn: kas arba amž:yan yl:mqd:m<sup>59</sup> imrmušn ininas  
 sir iniyasn nhdadž<sup>60</sup> adaxtušt šrin nx tlatin utr:as<sup>61</sup>  
 yinas mrhba rahnd: , mžrn ; žnasn amšli , d:can akidsn  
 mš n:an adxdmn tarža kadalik , mš n:an ads:rwtm kadalik ,  
 ślahq: š:rfa nz:awit ntilmirat š:rfa zy bkri altnxd:mn  
 mid:n walfn<sup>62</sup> adin . wax:a l:aylan:sn , tarwan:s urtnyuy  
 ša , šh:n<sup>63</sup> , ul:itnt:džin wadžar:n:sn adxdmn zy lždud  
 zy bkri zy mulay scid amq:ran . sidi mulay scid amq:ran ,  
 ik:ut:n:<sup>64</sup> nt:a ag:tfn<sup>65</sup> kul:ši š:luh l:a:tlas , imrmušn ,  
 ayt yusi ... wax:a adasn yini ... adin il:an , adasn yini  
 wax:a . nx yazn tabrat: išantq:bilt yiniasn byix lhažt  
 w:ayflani . urtyl:i<sup>66</sup> tfuyt<sup>67</sup> altidyawd umazan<sup>68</sup> ininas

"ntšni haḍr .adin tbyit nužd " . mlay s̄id it:was:n  
 ak:mani , ibd: xtqbiltn:s ibd: xwadžar̄n is:mṣulah<sup>69</sup>mid:n .  
 wax:a adim:t<sup>70</sup> r:uh<sup>71</sup>ad:ay iḥḍr mlay s̄id l:ayt:samah  
 uryaz ilḥq:n:s<sup>72</sup> .

tsul z:awitn:s γr ḍurt:x l:at:mš:a<sup>73</sup> . isul

idž m:m:is m:m:is ḍurt:x ag:ṭfn z:awit, lqaṣida nbkri

kif kif .

- |    |                                      |                                |
|----|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. | fr:q (VH /t:fr:aq/)                  | to differentiate,<br>to divide |
|    | (/mfr:aq/ Reciprocal; /t:mfr:aq/ VH) |                                |
| 2. | wu                                   | this one (m.)                  |
|    | tu                                   | this one (f.)                  |
|    | inu                                  | these ones (m.)                |
|    | tinu                                 | these ones (f.)                |
|    | win:                                 | that one (m.)                  |
|    | tin:                                 | that one (f.)                  |
|    | inin:                                | those ones (m.)                |
|    | tinin:                               | those ones (f.)                |
|    | udin                                 | the one which (m.)             |
|    | td:in                                | the one which (f.)             |
|    | idin                                 | the ones which (m.)            |
|    | tidin                                | the ones which (f.)            |
| 3. | sm:a                                 | to name                        |
|    | t:sm:an (should be /t:usm:an)        | they (m.) are called           |



4. /d-/ occurs before a noun or a verb for emphasis of a fact.

e.g.:

muhnd dusγruš:n ag:žū 'Mohamed is (really) from Ayt Seghrouchen'.

Compare to:

muhnd usγruš:n 'Mohamed, the man from Ayt Seghrouchen'.

dadirah muhnd 'Mohamed will (really) be going'.

Compare to:

adirah muhnd 'Mohamed will go'.

Compare all the above information to Note #39 below.

- |     |  |                       |
|-----|--|-----------------------|
| 5.  | q:sh (VH /t:q:sh/)   | to be solid           |
| 6.  | dur (VH /t:dur/)   | to turn, to be around |
| 7.  | sitr (VH /t:sitar/)  | to dominate           |
| 8.  | lhrb   | war, fight            |
| 9.  | amnyi / imyan /  | fight                 |
| 10. | gd (VH /t:gd/)   | to fear               |
| 11. | γir (<Ar.)   | only, just            |
| 12. | ktir (<Ar.)  | much, many            |
| 13. | daymn  | always                |
| 14. | tamurt (A.A. /tamazirt/<br>(/timizar/ pl. both in A.A. and A.S.) | country               |

15.	šm:d / t:šmid/(VH)	to be cold
16.	ašm:id	cold
17.	hw:d (VH /t:hw:ad/)	to descend
18.	lyabt / lywabi pl.	forest
19.	hma (VH /t:ihma/)	to be hot
	lhmut:	heat
20.	qr:b (VH /t:qr:ab/)	to be easy, near
21.	qw:m (VH /t:qw:am/)	to suffice
22.	i'ni	that is to say
23.	kfa ( VH /t:kfa/)	to be enough
24.	tizi	the value
25.	lbarud	bullets (here: war)
26.	ak:mani	wherever
27.	rš:a (VH /t:rš:a/)	to be stable
28.	it:was:n:	Passive participle of /s:n/ 'to be known'
29.	š:rif / š:rfa (pl.)	descendants of Mohammed the Prophet
30.	arw / t:arwa VH tarwa	to give birth to offspring offspring
31.	m:ulay (<nmulay) (Mulay is the title of /š:rif/)	of Mulay

Notice /n- + m-/ --->/m:/ in the dialects of A.S.

32. adrissi/ idrissiyn                      descendants of King Idris I
33. zg:a                                      when (Rel.)
34. ašlhi/ išlhiyn~ š:luḥ  
tašlhit                                      Berber  
Berber language
35. azg:a                                      until
36. z:awit / z:awyat                      Religious Center
37. ʿl:m (VH /t:ʿl:am/)                      to teach, to donate
38. laṣl                                      origin
39. The equational sentence in Ayt Seghrouchen:  
Examine the following sentences in the text:
- a) laṣln:sn daʿrabn                      **They are Arabs of origin.**
- b) nitni dar:a nsidi mulay ʿli bn ʿmr .  
nitni dar:a nsidi ʿli.                      **They are the offspring of Sidi Aly.**

Note the following differences:

- a) muḥnd daryaz                      'Mohamed is a man'
- b) muḥnd daryaz ag:žū 'Mohamed is (really) a man' (see #14 above)
- c) muḥnd aryaz ag:žū 'Mohamed is a man' (equivalent of [a] above)
- d) muḥnd aryaz .                      (this is not a sentence)
40. s:y:d / s:adat                      saint
41. l:am:a                                      Zawya ceremony

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

42.	azn (/af- <del>u</del> /) ; VH /t:azn/	to send
43.	lfdl	donation
44.	d:əa	to pray for
45.	wq:r ; VH /t:wq:ar/	to respect
46.	t:əd:a (<Ar.)	to attack
47.	ak:udin	whoever
48.	z:yarit	donation
49.	mlih	well, very much
50.	lhžab / lhžabat	amulet
51.	ari ; VH /t:ari/ Compare A.A. /aru/ ; VH /t:aru/	to write to write
52.	lhsana (<Ar.)	hair cutting, dressing
53.	sn:d , VH /t:sn:ad/	to lean against
54.	d:r:iyt	offspring
55.	k:s az:ar	to cut hair
56.	xy:r ; VH /t:xy:ar/	to choose
57.	t,nhl,a	to take care of
58.	n:ubt	turn
59.	lmqd:m	administrative job in the village

60. ḥdadḥ ; VH /t:ḥdadḥa/ to need
61. atr:as / itr:asn (pl) young man
62. walf ; VH /t:walaf/ to get accustomed to
63. ṣḥ::; VH /t:ṣḥ:a/  
Compare A.A. /ṣḥu/; VH /t:ṣḥu/ to be healthy
64. ik:ut:n he was (**lit.: he passed it (f) there**)
65. t:f; VH /t:tf/ to catch, to hold under one's authority
66. ṛli ; VH /ṛl:i/ to set, to ascend
67. tafuyt (A.A. /tafušt/) sun
68. amazan / imazan: messenger
69. s:msulah to reconcile (Recipro-Causative form)
70. m:t ; VH /t:mt:a/  
Notice VH can also mean 'to be sick'
71. r:uḥ soul
72. lhq: rights
73. t:mš:a ( Ar.) to go, to function well



17.1 ayt syruš:n

žurž: mismn:š ?

mulay lhusayn:mulay lhusayn .

žurž: mšhal ayvrš il:an ilcmr ?

mulay lhusayn: ši tscin cam .

žurž: mat:a tqbilt din zy tžit ?

mulay lhusayn: ayt syruš:n .

žurž: mat:a yvrš ?

mulay lhusayn: lšraf, iyvrš l:šraf .

žurž: mani l:an lšraf ?

mulay lhusayn: in:ahy:a<sup>1</sup> whrmm:u .

žurž: mzyan<sup>2</sup> . byix aditinit šwi xt:arix<sup>3</sup>  
 nayt syruš:n , mlmi aysalhn<sup>4</sup> , mism  
 ayžin iwmyi ak:d irum:in , wak:d<sup>5</sup> t:ux<sup>6</sup>  
 t:m:nyan bkri , wahwa<sup>7</sup> , duydin q:ah  
 xt:cq:alt , adin awnt:inin lahln:un  
 imq:ran: .

mulay lhusayn: adin axt:inin lahln:x imq:ran: , ntšni

dayt sɣruš:n haqiqa , dar:a m:ulay dris  
udin indln<sup>8</sup> difas,mulay dris amq:ran il:an  
izrhun . q:imn difas azg:a d:udfn<sup>9</sup> irum:in  
rwlñ lud:inin<sup>10</sup> alxsnt:adrñ<sup>11</sup> irum:in  
alt:m:nyan slbarud azg:a d:f:ɣn ilažbal  
zl:en<sup>12</sup> itqb:al . l:an ayt sɣruš:n ntls:int ,  
l:an ayt sɣruš:n ntišikt , l:an ayt  
sɣruš:n ntahla , l:an ayt sɣruš:n l:šraf .  
nitni bdun xixsan<sup>13</sup> , bdun xtqb:al , t:fn  
lbarud ak:d irum:in dilžbal . ayt sɣruš:n  
ntišikt t:fn lbarud diž:bl nbuyblan ,  
azg:a tsalh n:aḥy:a ntaza , dfaś , k:rn  
d:d:n:sn<sup>14</sup> , n:dnaśn<sup>15</sup> adrnaśnd: di alf  
utsemy:a wrb:ea wšrin ,awintnid: , fr:qn  
lmaln:sn irum:in,urasndžin ša ... zy  
lud:inin ntšni nšiš d:aw l:ḥimaya<sup>16</sup> ,  
itmurt din ɣr axd:udrn irum:in da .  
žurž: urwaśdn mani l:an durt:x al:ud:<sup>17</sup> udfn  
irum:in ?



- mulay lhusayn: alud d:udfn irum:in ead aywaedn lžbal .
- uma<sup>18</sup> nitni t:uxtn skn: <sup>19</sup>ilyrb.imzwuran:sn  
t:uxtn isays,n:awahi nfas,laylabiy:an:sn<sup>20</sup>  
t:ux skn: ifas . isul yn:x durt:x t:arix ,  
lšwad<sup>21</sup> ntmurtdin il:an difas . amšan  
dindi il:a sidi e'li buyanm di babftuh q:ah  
dwin ayt syruš:n slšwad skul:ši.
- žurž: ...maša l:an ša m:id:n itqbilt am durt:x  
itilmirat , din isuln t:q:aln xlmalik  
mulay lhasan ...
- mulay lhusayn: y:ih .
- žurž: am dad:aš<sup>22</sup> nxd:...
- mulay lhusayn: sidi e'li .
- žurž: luq:t m:ulay lhasan adi l:an ?
- mulay lhusayn: y:ih .
- žurž: adi l:an itilmirat .
- mulay lhusayn: y:ih y:ih .
- žurž: t:altrža . maša luq:d:in suln irum:in

urd:udfn .

mulay lhusayn: maymi<sup>23</sup> ? irum:in ilahd m:ulay hfid

ayd:udfn .

žurž: mag:ms mulay hfid ?

mulay lhusayn: ib:as m:ulay lhasan nxd: mad umas ...

aha dmulay lhasan ag:udrn n:it xmulay

hfid ag:t:ini t:arix . iluq:d:in n:it

zg:a isltn<sup>24</sup> mulay lhasan ag:zayd<sup>25</sup> sidi

muhm:d bn yusf l:at:inin alf utemy:a

wtsud .

žurž: ulid: luq:d:in . isul ad:irah df:ir

m:ulay lhasan mulay abdlaziz , irahd:

mulay yusf , mad muhm:d bn yusf .

mulay lhusayn: iwa inu s:nat abda t:uxtn diluq:d:in, walakin

mulay lhasan t:uxt ak:d irum:in . mulay

hfid ag:snyan iyfransawin ad:adfn dilmyrib .

is t:ux hž:mns<sup>26</sup> , ug:n<sup>27</sup> at:xdn<sup>28</sup> lqabayl .

t:ux džd:inw dmulay scid kul: wahd t:fn

išt l:žiht n:an:as an:aid dlmuluk, ha  
 hw:dn hžmn xfas, s:ifdn<sup>29</sup> yr bnimtir hžmn  
 zg:virin<sup>30</sup>, zayan, ad lud:inin: isnya  
 iyfransawy:in udfnd: dilmuγrib . zg:a  
 asnisnya udfnd:, k:rn nitni alt:harabn<sup>31</sup>  
 irum:in .

žurž: ist:ux t:mharabn ayt syruš:n t:qb:al  
 dnin ?

mulay lhusayn: y:ih t:ux t:mharabn ak:d ayt yusi,ak:d  
 ayt myilt ayt sfru dayt warayn dimrmušn .  
 nitni it:arixn:sn ifraša l:at:ininasn xas  
 iryazn l:hrb.urs:in: la adxdm la adrdm .

žurž: isl:ant ša ntqb:al din it:ilinzi lžiht  
 nayt syruš:n ?

mulay lhusayn: y:ih idin tnit:zurñ q:ah .

žurž: wahwa isl:ant ša ntqb:al din ul:i it:g:n  
 lhrb dayt syruš:n ?

mulay lhusayn: l:ant , l:ant .

žurž: ulid: luq:tu ašn:ix .

mulay lhusayn: y:ih luq:tdin , luq:tdin , walayn:i  
luq:tdin , t:ux t:zurntn bz:af . t:ux  
š:rfa lud:inin xas am lmalik qurt:x  
l:at:raynxsu .

žurž: imanis d:rahn ayt syruš:n ?

mulay lhusayn: am:n ašn:ix yurutu mulaydris din d:idžin  
sba w:ar:an:s . k:rn alt:m:nyan xlhukm.  
zg:a t:msxlan<sup>32</sup> rahnd: i'alawiy:n, t:fn  
lmlaka, mħantn<sup>33</sup> zy fas . day kul:idž  
mani n:if:γ džd:n:s·ntšni džd:n:x mulay  
'li bn 'mr if:γ yr tls:int . mulay 'li  
bn 'mr dax yurw ar:an:s . ar:an:s kul:idž  
mani yr irah . sidi 'li wyħya džd:n:x  
ntšni ayt syruš:n ntišikt dlšraf t:ilmirat  
if:γd: γl lmrs , yarw sidi 'li whmd yarw  
sidi mħnd uhmd . bz:af w:ar:an:s ayγrs  
urtns:inx q:ah . . .

žurž: tqd:t<sup>34</sup> adaxtinit ismawn iyrman q:ah ?

mulay lhusayn: iwa rbt:<sup>35</sup> ... , urtns:inx q:ah walayn:i  
 adawninix adawnd:bdix zy tahla . iwa  
 asidi l:an ayt syruš:n ns:bt , ayt  
 syruš:n nhrira asnt:inin . iyrmann:sn  
 tibrbarin , tazrut: , ayt yusf uhd:u ,  
 ayt msud , ayt sisa . zrid: yr da yn:x ;  
 iyrmn:x l:at:ininas lšraf (ayt mhnd uhd )  
 tzrit asidi yr tilmirat , din ižin ayt  
 cli whmd,tfazrt , tayzut: w:ad:a ,  
 tayzut: w:afl:a , isuša , cliya (ayt  
 cbdla ) , lmrs , sk:ura , mžniba . zy  
 mžniba twast: tals:int din dg:l:a mulay  
 cli bn cmr . ayt syruš:n ntl:nt  
 urs:inx iyrmann:sn .

žurž: tt:ut imhawšn .

mulay lhusayn: imhawšn dayt hm:uyhya nitni l:at:kn:an<sup>36</sup>  
 idrasn .

žurž: ayt ħm:uyħya dimhawšn šafi ag:t:kn:an  
 didrasn . wig:t:kn:an q:aħ didrasn ?  
 mlay lħusayn: ayt ħm:uyħya dimhawšn t:altrža, dsk:ura  
 ayt ʕli wyusf, ayt bniš:u .

1. n:aħiya / n:awahı region
2. mzyan good
3. t:arix history
4. šalħ to surrender  
N.B.: This refers to the date a certain tribe surrendered or, in other words, showed acceptance of the French occupation. This is the beginning of the period of French Protectorate in Morocco, 1912.
5. wak:d ? with whom?
6. t:ux used to  
 (t:uxi , t:uxš , t:uxšm , t:uxt , t:uxt: , t:uxax , t:uxšun , t:uxšunt , t:uxtn , t:uxtnt)
7. wahwa long ago
8. ndl , VH /n̄t:l / to bury
9. adf ; VH /t:adf/ to enter  
 Compare: A.A. /kžm/ to enter

Unit 17

---

10. lud:inin	at that time
11. adr ; VH /t:adr/	to chase, hide, bury, make descend
12. zl:ɛ ; VH /t:zl:aɛ/	to sprinkle, to scatter
13. iɣs:/ ixsan	bone; Here: part of a tribe.
14. d:d:	against
15. n:d	to turn around, to coil, wind
16. lhimaya	Protectorate
17. alud ~ al:ud:	until
18. uma	whereas
19. skn	to dwell
20. laylabiy:a	the majority
21. lšad / lšwad	paper
22. dad:a	grandfather (term of address)
23. maymi ?	why?
24. sltn	to be nominated king
25. zayd	to be born
26. hžm , VH /hž:m/	to attack

27. ag: ; VH /t:ag:/ to refuse
28. xdε ; VH /t:xdε / to be subject, to follow
29. s:ifd ; VH /s:afad/ to send
30. ayir / iyirn shoulder  
N.B.: Also used in the phrases:  
 zḡ:γiru - zḡ:γirin:  
 'From this side...from that side'.
31. ḥarḃ; VH /t:ḥarab/ to fight
32. xla / VH /xl:a/  
 msxla / VH /t:msxla/ Recipro-Causative Form
33. mḥa ; VH /mḥ:a/ to erase, eradicate
34. qd: ; VH /t:qd:a/ to be able to
35. rbεt: some
36. kn:a ; VH /t:kn:a/ to be called (to be given a second, i.e. additional name).

17.2 lmcīšt<sup>1</sup> naye syruš:n

Žurž: iwa s:iwlax šwi xlmcišt naye syruš:n .

mūlay lḥusayn: ayt syruš:n ntahla l:at:εišn<sup>2</sup> zitfl:aḥt<sup>3</sup>  
 l:ašr:zn<sup>4</sup> irdn , timzin , ibawn<sup>5</sup> , lεts<sup>6</sup>,  
 batata , iflfl , maṭiša . lḥasil<sup>7</sup> kul:ši



adin it:kn:an tafl:aht , l:at:cišnis:  
 ayt syruš:n ntahla . um:a ntšni ayt  
 syruš:n l:šraf , l:ant:ciš sšwi ntfl:aht ,  
 dšwi l:ksb clahq: tamurtn:x ul:i ttšitš  
 bz:af ntfl:aht , l:ant:cawan slksb .  
 isd ayt syruš:n ntilmirat , l:at:cišn  
 sšwi l:ksb , dšwi nthr:at: , maša g:utn  
 yrnsn idin ik:in l:škr , it:usm:an  
 "qudama lmuharibin" , it:cišn slantrit<sup>8</sup>  
 din asnttšitš fransa . ayt mžniba dwaman  
 ilila , il:a yrnsn lksb bz:af , il:a bnadm  
 din yr t:ili tlt:alaf , rbc:alaf ntixsi .  
 isd ayt tls:int , kadalik , l:an idin  
 ixd:mn ilm:adn<sup>9</sup> dilžiht nbnitž:it , l:an  
 idin ixd:mn ilbi:uš:ra<sup>10</sup> . dax laylabiy:an:sn  
 cawd l:at:cišn dilksb is:hra . l:aks:bn  
 bz:af, ayu ag:l:an .

žurž: ts:fk:rti s . . .

mulay lhusayn: l:at:g:n š:inac:an:sn<sup>11</sup> , l:at:g:n tihlasin<sup>12</sup> ,

l:at:g:n tizrbiyin , z:waqn:sn<sup>13</sup>  
damquli<sup>14</sup> , ulid: adin izw:iq:n<sup>15</sup> ns:uq: .

l:axd:mnt tcy:alinn:snt adin mlih .

ul:it:rayabn<sup>16</sup> lbi◀ , maša ad:ay in:haz<sup>17</sup>

bnadm , nx iz:nz taħlast . ul:i z:nzan

ša bz:af l:hwayžn:sn.iwa lmašisan:sn ,

urt:ini ist:šišn mzyan bz:af , ilt:ini

is naq:sn bz:af . am lmyrib ušafi .

l:ag:urn xlhd:<sup>18</sup> ndžhdn:sn . isd tudrin

urbd:ilnt ša , sulnt am tin zman<sup>19</sup> .

žurž: iniyi , url:in ayt syruš:n in:aħy:a  
w:žda ?

mulay lhusayn: l:an disnat iyrman in:aħy:a nr:if ,  
l:at:ininasn ayt ◀mr .

žurž: awaln:x ays:awaln mad awal nr:if ?

mulay lhusayn: la , awal nr:if . nitni bd:ln awaln:sn .  
lasln:sn dz:inx ag:žu , nitni ayt  
syruš:n g:utn zl:en . zg:a t:ux lbarud

ak:mani mani yiwd uryaz nx i:š bs:if<sup>20</sup>

ani<sup>21</sup> tl:a disn š:aža'a bz:af . ak:mani

iwdn ad:šn day q:imn dis . ak:manis tk:it

taft usruš:n .

- |  |                   |
|--|-------------------|
| 1. lmeišť  | life, living      |
| 2. iš ; VH /t:iš/  | to live           |
| 3. tafl:aht  | agriculture       |
| 4. šrz ; VH /šr:z/   | to plow           |
| 5. baw ; ibawn (pl.)<br>(Compare A.A. /abaw, ibawn/)               | fava bean         |
| 6. lšts<br>(Compare A.A. /lšds/)                                   | lentils           |
| 7. lhašil  | in short, briefly |
| 8. lantrit (<Fr. "la retraite")                                    | pension           |
| 9. lmedn ; lmadn (pl.)   | ore, metal        |
| 10. lbis uš:ra   | commerce          |
| 11. š:ina'a  | industry          |
| 12. taħlast ; tiħlasin (pl.)<br>(Compare A.A. /tašdift, tišdifin/) | rug               |
| 13. z:waq  | designs           |

zw:q ; VH /t:zw:aq/	to ornament
14. am <sup>o</sup> quli	reasonable
15. azw:iq ; izw:iqn	a messy design
16. raγb ; VH /t:raγab/	to approach
17. n:haz ; VH /t:n:haz/	to be in a fix (financial)
18. lhd:	the end, edge, limit
19. zman	long time ago
20. bs:if	by force
21. ani	because

17.3

laswaq:

žurž:

is l:an laswaq: g:ayt sγruš:n ?

mulay lhusayn: l:an . l:an win ayt sγruš:n ntahla

l:ayt:cm:ar γrn s:bt nbuzmlal . ayt

sγruš:n l:šraf l:aycm:r γrn s:uq:

uhrmm,u ltnayn . ayt sγruš:n ntilmirat

l:atsw:aq:n adrž, l:aycm:r slxmis; l:at:sw:aq:n

larb s l:aycm:r sk:ura . iyil:mrs

l:at:sw:aq:n ltnayn l:mrs.yim:žniba

žižu slhd:, yin tls:int urs:inx us:an

dindi m:rn laswaq:n:sn .

žurž: maymi ul:it:isint ayt tls:int la yymann:sn

la laswaq:n:sn ?

mulay lhusayn: bdnax ulitnt:awd .

žurž: urd:s:is mru<sup>1</sup> tk:it ?

mulay lhusayn: la . k:ix tals:int maša baš adisinx may

xd:mn nx . . . k:ixt:d xas utix zrixt:

safi .

žurž: may s:ayn mid:n is:uq: .

mulay lhusayn: iwa laswaq: is at:init is il:a šal lfrq

ša bz:af žarasn, uril:i .walakin ši haža

ydrusn . l:az:nzan dis lxdra<sup>2</sup>, tl:a dis

mašiša , iflfl , bačata , lbsl, taxsayt ,

lbrquq , lmšmaš diluq:tn:s, adil di luq:tn:s ,

d:l:aḡ , lbč:ix<sup>3</sup>, lfq:us<sup>4</sup> lxyar ,

t:hmira<sup>5</sup> , lbzar , lkamun , sk:ar ,  
at:ay , lq:hwa, ayu l:ayt:ili dilswaq:  
q:ahtn , walakin l:at:ilin imndi ,  
ibawn , irdn , timzin , l'ets , ž:lbaw ,  
lhum:z<sup>6</sup> , farina . l:ayt:m:nza warn<sup>7</sup> .  
dax ayt l'rb durt:x , l:az:nzan tinuda<sup>8</sup> ,  
t:zyawin<sup>9</sup> ntizdnt<sup>10</sup> , dax da g:hrmm:u ,  
l:az:nzan iznbiln<sup>11</sup> , alz:nzan š:wariyat<sup>12</sup> ,  
din t:g:n xlbhaym . ilmrs dax , n:ahy:a  
nsk:ura , dudrž , duydin l:as:ayn xas  
ayu ašn:ix , ak:d l:az:nzan lmal , əlahq:  
ləylaby:a is: ayt:əišn . maša laswaq: ,  
kul:ši kifkif , xas inu l:žihtu šwi  
l:az:nzan d:ra , ani l:at:g:n dr:a , ani  
yrsn aman bz:af , lžiht ntilmirat ,  
dsk:ura , dlmrs , l:az:nzan dax nitni  
is:uq: . am: ayt s'ruš:nu ntaħla duhrmm:u ,  
urysn ša nd:ra , urysn tiržwin . iwa

ayu ag:lan . aldisnt:m:nzan ičban,<sup>13</sup>  
 iryazn , dyin tcy:alin , d:fayn ,  
 lfuqy:at , lhwayž dindi džan:st ,  
 t:sbniyin , ifilan<sup>14</sup> , tixrsin<sup>15</sup> ,  
 imhr:fn<sup>16</sup> , ihz:amn , s:b:ayd , s:andalat<sup>17</sup>.  
 dax iryazn l:as:ayn lfuqy:a , dišbr ,  
 t:bdciyt , ds:rwal črbi , ds:rwal  
 azirar<sup>18</sup> , dlfišta , dt:rik:u , dlqamiža ,  
 dr:z:at , dt:rabš , dn:đadr<sup>19</sup> , dkul:ši ,  
 ds:wayc<sup>20</sup> , dkul:ši kul:ši .aysum<sup>21</sup>  
 kadalik , l:ayt:m:nza wlyfunasn , wlyw:ul:i  
 wlyhuliyn , dayu ag:l:an .

žurž: iwi ylyman ?<sup>22</sup>  
 mulay lhusayn: ihi . ayt syruš:n ul:itnt:g:n . ilyman  
 l:an γw:acrabn ndhra , n:ahy:a ngrsif  
 ds:hra . ulad tals:int l:an γrsn ilyman ,  
 maša ul:it:t:n aysumn:sn , xas is xsn  
 t:rhaln . ayu ag:l:an .

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. ɛmru ~ ɛmri                             | never                            |
| 2. lxdra (f)                               | vegetables                       |
| 3. lbt:ix abt:ix<br>Compare A.A. /aft:ix/  | melon                            |
| 4. lfq:us ~ afq:us                         | cucumber                         |
| 5. t:hmira (f)                             | paprika                          |
| 6. lḥum:ẓ (m)<br>Compare: A.A. /lḥimẓ/ | chickpea<br>chickpeas (coll.)    |
| 7. arn (m)<br>Compare: A.A. /ag:r:/        | flour                            |
| 8. tandut:(f)/tinuda (pl.)                 | platter made of                  |
| 9. tazyawt(f)/tizyawin (pl.)               | basket                           |
| 10. tizdnt (f)                             | kind of plant                    |
| 11. aznbil(m)/iznbiln (pl.)                | bag made of                      |
| 12. š:wari(m)/š:wariyat (pl.)              | bag made of                      |
| 13. iɛban: (mp)                            | clothes                          |
| 14. fuli(m)/ifilan (pl.)                   | thread, string                   |
| 15. taxrst(f)/tixrsin (pl.)                | ear-rings                        |
| 16. amhr:f(m)/Amhr:fn (pl.)                | Berber ornament worn by<br>women |



17. ş:andala (f)/ş:andalat (pl.) sandals
18. azirar izirarn (m.p.) long, tall  
tazirart tizirarin (f.p.)
19. n:d:arat (fp) glasses
20. s:ara(m)/s:waya (pl.) watch
21. aysum meat  
Compare: A.A. /aksum/
22. alym/ilyman/(m.p.) camel  
talynt /tilymin/(f.p.)

17.4

tamzyida

žurž: is da tl:a ša ntmzyida<sup>1</sup>, da ylšraf ?

mulay lhusayn: y:ih , tl:a . z:aw:itu n:it sixfn:s

l:at:kn:a t:amzyida , tamzyidan:sn ,

l:at:qran<sup>2</sup> dis lwašun , l:at:qran dis

lquran<sup>3</sup> šafi , ayu aydist:g:n . tl:a

šawd z:awit ntmndašř damn , l:at:qran

dis imħdrn<sup>4</sup> st:albn:sn , tin tls:int

kadalik , q:ahtnt l:ant stmzyidiwin ,

bla timzyidiwin il:an g:dw:ar.<sup>5</sup> l:at:qran

disnt imħdrn din ibɛdn xz:wawi ,  
 aldisnt t:zal:an mid:n , l:an disn  
 tmzyidiwin bz:af , ulid: xas išt .

žurž: is g:utnt tmzyidiwin dindi t:zal:an  
 lxuɖbt ?

mulay lhusayn: til lxuɖbt , ħra<sup>6</sup> yišt ag:l:an . tin  
 tmndašrɛ damn , din il:an ityzut: .

1. tamzyida (f)/timzyidiwin (pl.) Mosque
2. q:ra (VH) /t:qra/ to read, to study
3. lquran (m) Quran
4. imħdr (m)/imħdrn (pl.) pupil
5. adw:ar (m)/idw:arn (pl.) village (part of a village)
6. ħra ~ ħra only

17.5 lmdraša

žurž: is l:ant lmadaris<sup>1</sup> g:ayt sɣruš:n ?

mulay lhusayn: y:ih . kul: aɣrm g:ayt sɣruš:n tl:a  
 dis lmdraša . tl:a di s:bt nbuzmlal ,

tl:a di tẏrwalt , tl:a dg:ayt r:bc ,  
 tl:a di lšraf , tl:a di tilmirat , tl:a  
 di sk:ura , tl:a di lmrs , tl:a dg:suša ,  
 tl:a ymžniba . iwa ayu ag:l:an din:aḥy:ayu ,  
 ditls:int mays: .<sup>2</sup>

1. lmdraša (f)lmaḍaris (pl.) school
2. mays: (only form) I don't know.

17.6

lžamaša lqarawiy:a

žurž: is tl:a ša l:žamaša lqarawiy:a<sup>1</sup> .

mula y lhusayn: lžamaša lqarawy:a tl:a is:bt nbuzmlal ayt  
 sẏruš:n ntahla . walakin tin:x ts:ur<sup>2</sup>  
 ak:d lžamaša lqarawy:a yẏzran . ntšni  
 il:a ẏn:x xas idž l:murš:iḥ<sup>3</sup> ag:l:an  
 z:inx ilžamaša lqarawy:a iẏzran . isd  
 ayt sk:ura, tl:a ẏrsn lžamaša lqarawy:an:sn .  
 ayt lmrs , tl:a lžamaša lqarawy:an:sn ,  
 ayt tls:int dax , slžamaša lqarawy:an:sn .

nitni g:utn . ntšnilšraf ayřm imžin .

hra l:ant:awy idž l:muřš:iḥ .

žurž; mas t:kl:af<sup>4</sup> lžamaṣa lqarawy:a ?

mulay lhusayn: lžamaṣa lqarawy:a l:at:kl:af slmašaliḥ<sup>5</sup>

ntqbilt , l:ats:utur ilmẓn , tl:a ȳrs

lmizany:a<sup>6</sup> xaš:a<sup>7</sup> , l:at:g:n lbnyan<sup>8</sup> , am

lmaḍarisu g:dw:arṇ , l:at:kl:afn sibrdan ,

l:at:kl:afn slɔyun<sup>9</sup> , l:at:kl:afn slincaš

lwaṭani<sup>10</sup> , l:at:kl:afn st:aṣawun lwaṭani<sup>11</sup> ,

als:uturn lmašaliḥ nš:ṣb<sup>12</sup> . ayu ag:l:an .

1. lžamaṣa lqarawiy:a (f)                      the Village Council
2. s:ar ; VH /s:ar/                              to mix, to be mixed
3. lmuřš:iḥ (m)/lmurš:iḥin ~                  deputy  
itlmurš:iḥ  
Notice: A.S. plural prefix /it-/ ; A.A. /id-/
4. kl:f ; VH /t:kl:af/                            to entrust
5. lmslaḥa(f) /lmašaliḥ/ (pl.)                  the good, benefit
6. lmizany:a (f)                                    budget
7. x:aš: (<Ar.)                                    special

8. lbnyan (m) building (Noun Act.)
9. lē in (m)/lē yun/ (pl) spring  
Compare: A.A. /aybalu , taybalut: /
10. lināš lwaṭani (m) National Promotion Project
11. t:asawun lwaṭani (m) National Cooperation Project
12. š:eb (m) people

17.7

lḥm:am

žurž:

is il:a lḥm:am yr ayt sγruš:n ?

mulay lhusayn: iyrman urdisn lḥm:am , maša lswaq: ,

l:an disn . am uhrmm:u , l:an dis

snat l:ḥm:amat , sk:ura , il:a dis

lḥm:am . am bulman , il:a dis lḥm:am .

am ayt ṭls:int il:a γrsn lḥm:am .

1. hm:m ; VH/t:ḥm:am/ to bathe

lḥm:am (m) /lḥm:amat/ public bath

17.8

lq:hwa

žurž:

l:ant šal lq:hawi<sup>1</sup> g:γrmanu ?

mulay lhusayn: lq:hawi , la , dg:γman url:int .  
 walakin di lswaq: , l:at:ilint , l:az:nzant  
 lq:hwa , at:ay<sup>2</sup> , aγi<sup>3</sup> , t:ažin<sup>4</sup> ,  
 tahrirt , utšu , q:aḥ adin t:ḥdadžan  
 mid:n , l:as:nawnt dis . l:at:t:n mid:n  
 as: ns:uq: , alasnz:nzan , aldíst:t:n  
 amšlin:sn , lin:ahu<sup>5</sup> bɔdntxsn tudrin ,  
 nx tšn dis t:nacš:n:sn .

1. lq:hwa (f) /lq:hawi/ (pl.) coffee, cafe
2. at:ay (m) tea  
Compare A.A. /atay/
3. aγi milk  
Compare A.A. /aγ:u/
4. t:ažin(m) /t:wažn/ (pl) stew  
Compare A.A. /d:ažin/
5. lin:ahu (<Arabic) Because

17.9

ibrdan

žurž: at:qdr̄t adax̄tinit ša xibr̄dan<sup>1</sup> ?

mulay lhusayn: y:ih , ibrdan , am ayt sγruš:n ntahla ,

ʔrsn ibrdan , tqriban<sup>2</sup> yil lguḍrun<sup>3</sup>  
 q:ah . nitni xdmn ʔrsn lguḍrun .  
 walayn:i z:isn g:sawn<sup>4</sup> , uril:i šal  
 lguḍrun , xas lap:ist<sup>5</sup> , izri ʔl lžbal ,  
 l:ayzr:i ʔr imuz:ar imrṃsun , al s:ya  
 it:k: cawd , ik: adrž , iwaḍ tilmirat ,  
 izri ʔr isuša , dax isid zg:drž izri ʔr  
 sk:ura , iwaḍ lmrs , bulman . q:ah  
 inu dibrdan l:muwašalat<sup>6</sup> žar ayt sʔruš:n .  
 l:ayš:awaḍ zg:ʔrm ʔruʔrm , walayn:i  
 at:init is disn šal lguḍrun , urdisn  
 ša , ušafi . umnbḍd , nitni skn: di  
 lažbal haqiqa , tl:a ʔrsn lʔabt<sup>7</sup> , l:an  
 ʔrsn waman , l:an ʔrsn lžbal , tamurtn:sn  
 ad:is taft luḍa<sup>8</sup> , taftd:is lžbal .  
 laʔlabiya l:axd:mn dis ayt lʔabt ,  
 l:az:nzan lfixr<sup>9</sup> , iyš:uḍn , kul:ši .  
 tamurtn:sn tl:a dis bz:af l:ʔabt .

- žurž:                   max t:safarn<sup>10</sup> mid:n žar iyrman ?
- mulay lhusayn:       žar iyrman , s:ya yrudrž di t:umubil<sup>11</sup> ,
- zg:drž awn: xas isrdan .
- žurž:                   maymi ul:i t:nayn xiysan<sup>12</sup> ?
- mulay lhusayn:       t:ux yrən iysan . as:u<sup>13</sup> z:nzntn in:ahu
- urq:imn t:nayn<sup>14</sup> , urtq:im t:burida<sup>15</sup> ,
- urq:imnt lfištāt<sup>16</sup> am hadi šhal .
- l:at:nayn xisrdan , mš idru<sup>17</sup> xusrdun ,
- yasyxs lhml<sup>18</sup> , alxsixd:m . um:a yis
- ixs:as xas tamnit<sup>19</sup>.

1. abrid(m)/ibrdan/ (pl.)                   road
2. tqriban (<Arabic)                       almost
3. lgudrun(m) (<French "goudron")       paved road
4. g:sawn                                   to the top, to the upper part
5. lap:ist (<French "la piste")           track
6. lmuwašalat (p) (<Arabic)               communications
7. lɣabt(f)/lɣwabi~lɣabat/ (pl)           forest



8. luda (m) flat earth, ground
9. lfixr (m) coal  
Compare A.A. /lfaxr/
10. safr ; VH /t:safar/ to travel
11. t:umubil ~ t:unubil (f) car  
/t:umubilat/
12. yis ; /iysan/ (pl.) horse  
Compare A.A. /iy:is, iy:isan/ horse
13. as:u presently
14. ny ; VH /t:nay/ to ride, drive
15. t:burida (f) fantasia
16. lfišta (f) (< Spanish 'fiesta') feast  
/lfištāt/ (pl.)
17. dr ; VH /t:ar/ to descend, fall
18. lhml (m) (< Arabic) burden, load
19. tamnit (f) riding

17.10

timyriwin

žurž:

man luq:t ayt:g:n mid:n timyriwin yr

ayt syruš:n ?

mulay lhusayn:

laylabiy:a ntimyriwin , l:at:ilint

ilxřif , mani t:fd:an<sup>1</sup> mid:n anbdū .

aha nx yili ƣrsn imndi luq:tdin , yili

ƣrsn šwi l:flus , yili ƣrsn imndi . nx

z:nzn šwi zilfilaha , dšwi zi lmal , ani

it:šh:a , l:at:g:n timƣriwin di lxrif ,

ul:i ƣrsn it:ili š:ƣl<sup>2</sup> , ul:i ƣrsn t:ili

la taħr:at:<sup>3</sup> , la anbdū .

žurž: mism ayzr:int ?

mulay lhusayn: l:at:g:n išt nl:ila ƣr ib:as ntslit:<sup>4</sup> ,

nx řahn lahl usli , nx řw:hñ ƣr tslit: ,

awyn lmak:lan:sn<sup>5</sup> al dist:xm:arn ahidus

altšt:ahn<sup>6</sup> , alt:inin izlan , alt:inin

kul:ši . dutšan:s , nx řw:hñd: ƣl l'asř

ƣr usli , dax řahnd: lahl ntslit: , nx

žnasd: abrbur<sup>7</sup> , s:nint:d: xtažmart<sup>8</sup> ,

nxd: yis strit<sup>9</sup> , aha nx řahnd: t:xm:arn ,

ša zdatas , ša df:iras alt:ƣas:iwñ ,

is:đrt: idž utr:as , s:iddfnt: ƣl lbit ,

adfn lahl ntslit: adtšn: . aday tšn  
 f:γnd: dax γr uhidus , t:fn š:tih .  
 dax dutšan:s , xyiǰn:s , nx yadf usli  
 xtslit: , iwa nx k:rn dax s:ufγnd:  
 išbrn:s , aldist:xm:arn , alt:št:ahn ,  
 alt:by:an:<sup>10</sup> bin:ahu tamtuǰ: urt:ik:i  
 šal lγyar azg:a t:yiwd uryazn:s . iwa  
 nx šln<sup>11</sup> lud:inin: xn:ašatn:sn<sup>12</sup> ,  
 xuhidusn:s , alasin:in<sup>13</sup> sad ayg:urn  
 abridn:sn . iwa nx q:imn lahl ntslit:  
 altsb:š<sup>14</sup> , dax raħn .

žurž: tamγra , xas snat w:us:an ayt:k: ?

mulay lhusayn: tlt: y:am ayt:k: .

žurž: ul:it:k bzayd<sup>15</sup> ?

mulay lhusayn: ihi . udin γr il:a džhd<sup>16</sup> , l:at:k: al  
 sbš y:am . udin urasiqd:n , lat:k: tlt:  
 y:am , lʿada<sup>17</sup> , lʿada tlt: y:am . idž  
 was: t:ažrurt<sup>18</sup> , idž w:as: t:amγra ,

idž was: daxtam<sup>19</sup> .

žurž: iwig:s:uturn tarbat: ?

mulay lhusayn: ihi , ntšni ul:iyt:isin urba tarbat: ,

ul:it:isin trbat: arba . lahl w:ryaz ,

nx ininas tl:a trbat: yr flan , raħn

s:utrnt: , tm:ušasn , əaydn: , əaydn

ərqbn<sup>20</sup> . ad:ay ərqbn , dax əaydn: ,

awind: lxlaš , əaydn žn tliliwt<sup>21</sup> .

ad:ay žn tliliwt , luq:td:in tq:im al:

luq:t mani yayužd uryaz , nx irəħ ad:yasi

tamtut:n:s . ayu ag:l:an .

- |                           |             |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| 1. fd:a ; VH /t:fd:a/     | to finish   |
| 2. š:ɣl (m)               | occupation  |
| 3. taħr:at: (f)           | agriculture |
| 4. asli - islitn (m.p.)   | bridegroom  |
| taslit: - tislitin (f.p.) | bride       |
| 5. lmak:la (f)            | food        |
| 6. št:h ; VH /t:št:ah/    | to dance    |
| 7. abrbur (m) /ibrburn/   | face cover  |

8. taḡmart (f)/tiḡal:in/ (pl.) mare  
Compare: A.A. /tagmart/
9. trit (f) saddle
10. by:n VH /t:by:an/ to show, to prove
11. šl VH /k:a1/ to spend the day
12. n:ašaṭ (m)(<Arabic) fun, entertainment
13. asnin ~ asinin ~ asnin duṡša the day after tomorrow,  
the following day  
Compare A.A. /adizriwask:a/
14. sb:ʕ ; VH /t:sb:aʕ / to reach the seventh day  
of an occasion, e.g. baby's  
birthday
15. bzayd more than
16. dḡhd (m) force
17. lʕada (f) habit
18. taḡrurt (f) first day of the wedding
19. axtam (m) last day of the wedding
20. ʕrqb; VH /t:ʕrqb/ to celebrate engagement
21. s:lilw ; VH /s:liliw/  
tliliwt (f) /tililiwin(pl) to utter trilling sounds  
as manifestations of joy  
by Arab or Berber women.  
Trilling sounds of joy,  
ylyulation.

17.11

aħidus

žurž:

iwhidus mism ayt:g:n iwhidus ?

mulay lhusayn:

aħidus , nx k:rnd: mid:n , idž nš:f:<sup>1</sup>

s:ya , idž s:ya , nx ilin iryazn alt:xm:arñ ,

žrn<sup>2</sup> izli . ad:ay bdan g:ħidus , nx

adfntd: tsdnan<sup>3</sup> ġ:am:as iryazn , nx k:ntasd:

iwryaz išt s:ya , išt s:ya , alt:g:n

aħidusn:sn , l:adan:sn . l:ayt:ili

bu wal:un , nx yili bu š:iniy:a , im:a

nx yili bu lkamanža<sup>4</sup> . im:a adin ,

xlimkaniy:at<sup>5</sup> w:ryaz , adin iqdr ad:iħt:r .

il:a mani t:g:n š:ixat alt:št:ahnt bla

aħidus , il:a mani t:g:n aħidus , žn

š:ixat df:ir w:idin .

žurž:

iwig:tšatn al:un ? q:ahtn ?

mulay lhusayn:

ihi . xas š:ix w:al:un , ast:inin . ulad

izli , ul:itit:ini xas š:ix . nitni xas

is xs t:r:an<sup>6</sup> .

žurž:

imani yt:ili , itam:ast<sup>7</sup> mad xt:rf<sup>8</sup>

mulay lhusayn: itam:ast . nx ilin snat , idž s:ya ,  
 idž s:ya , t:af l:atmɛayarn<sup>9</sup> sizlan aha  
 nitni š:iɛrn:sn , ulid: adarin ,  
 adt:hasabn ismawn wu ɣr wu . š:iɛrn:sn ,  
 ɣrs lqdr bz:af , lin:ahu aryaz l:ayt:ini  
 xas zi lɛqln:s . nx irt:b<sup>10</sup> ilɛq:ln:s bla  
 adyari , bla walu aha alit:ini hsn zi  
 š:aɛir din it:arin , lin:ahu tira , kul:  
 wahd iqd: adirt:b š:iɛr . uma wu l:ayt:initid  
 zi lɛq:ln:s nišan<sup>13</sup> ul:iyt:ari ,  
 ul:iyt:xm:am<sup>14</sup> , irsd:<sup>15</sup> š:iɛr nt:an adin .

žurž: is l:an ša ynš:adn g:ayt sɣruš:n ?

mulay lhusayn: bz:af l:an bz:af . l:an imxy:rnn:sn  
 g:mxšun: , l:an g:ayt bnmusa , l:an  
 itilmirat,muhnd uḥmdan . . .

1. s:f:(n)(< Arabic) /laʃfuf/ (pl) row

2. žr ; VH /g:ar/ to throw  
 Compare: A.A. /gr ; VH g:ar/ to throw

3. tamt:uṭ: /tisdnan/(pl) woman  
Compare A.A. /ṭamd:uṭ:/ ; /tiwtmin/(pl)
4. lkamanža (f) /lkumanžat/ (pl) violin
5. limkany:a (f)/limkany:at/ (pl) possibility
6. r: ; VH /t:r:a/ to give back  
Compare A.A. /rar/ ; VH /t:rara/ to give back  
Also compare A.S. /timrira/ (pl); A.A. /tararit/(sg) 'vomiting'
7. tam:ast (f) middle
8. ṭ:rf (m) end (side)
9. ⵉayr ; VH /t:ⵉayar/ to insult
10. rt:b ; VH /t:rt:ab/ to organize
11. ḥsn (<Arabic) better
12. tira (fp) (</ari/'to write') writing  
Compare A.A. (/tir:a/< /aru/ ) to write
13. nišan straight, directly
14. xm:m ; VH /t:xm:am/ to shrink
15. rs ; VH /rs:/ to land, to come down...

17.12

tihuna

žurž: is l:ant šanthuna<sup>1</sup> g:γrman ?

mulay lhusayn: tihuna ? l:an iγrman din di t:ilint .



ayt s̄yruš:n ntahla , kul: aȳrm sthanut: .  
 ntšni da ȳn:x , uril:i ša ‹lahq: iqr:bax  
 s:uq: . di tilmirat tl:a thanut: ,  
 disk:ura l:ant thuna , dilmrs l:ant  
 thuna , g:suša l:ant thuna . kul: aȳrm  
 sthanut:n:s . xas da urȳn:x thanut: ,  
 ani axiqr:b s:uq: .

žurž: mays:aȳn mid:n zi thuna din ?

mulay lhusayn: l:as:aȳn am:n: ašn:ix s:k:ar mš asnixs: ,  
 lgaz , at:ay , lq:hwa , libzar ,  
 lkamun , t:hmiṛa , lxmira , lk:isan ,  
 z:ažat l:anbat , tiftilin , lanbat n:it ,  
 š:m̄ . q:aḥ adin t:h̄dadžan , lmunada<sup>2</sup> ,  
 lmska<sup>3</sup> , lhlwa . il:a kawkaw<sup>4</sup> , z:bib ,  
 tl:a tini<sup>5</sup> , tl:a tazart , adin t:h̄dadžan  
 ayt iȳrman .

žurž: maša l:an ulad išt:ar̄n din iz:r:in .

mulay lhusayn: l:an išt:ar̄n zilȳrb l:at:asin xiȳyal<sup>6</sup> ,

l:at:asin xisrdan , als:aran<sup>7</sup> , alt:k:n  
 xtudrin . udin ihdadžn ša , l:ayt:awit  
 l:at:awind: idbližn<sup>8</sup> din ntcy:alin l:mika<sup>9</sup> ,  
 l:at:awind: iyr:afn<sup>10</sup> , l:at:awind: lk:isan ,  
 tiṭ:bsilin , tišt:anin<sup>11</sup> , t:rik:uyat ,  
 kul;ši l:at:asint .

- |                                  |                |
|----------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. tḥanut:(f)/tiḥuna/ (pl.)      | shop           |
| 2. lmunada (f)                   | lemonade       |
| 3. lmska (f)                     | chewing gum    |
| 4. kawkaw (m)                    | peanuts        |
| 5. tini (f)                      | dates          |
| Compare A.A. /tigni/             |                |
| 6. ayyul(m)/iyyal/ (pl.)         | donkey         |
| Compare A.A. plural form /iyyal/ |                |
| 7. s:ara VH /s:ara/              | to walk around |
| 8. adbliž(m)/idbližn/ (pl)       | bracelet       |
| 9. lmika (f) (<Fr. 'le mica')    | plastic        |
| 10. ayr:af (m)/iyr:afn/ (pl.)    | pitcher        |
| 11. tašt:ant(f)/tišt:anin/ (pl)  | scarf          |

12. ṭrik:u(m)/ṭrik:uyat/ (pl.) sweater

17.13

at:ay

Žurž: durt:x byix aditinit mism ayt:g:m iwat:ay ?

mılay lhusayn: at:ay , l:ant:g: asidi aman adnwn g:γl:ay<sup>1</sup> .

ad:ay nwn , n:awid: ayl:ay , dlmžmr ,

dlkisan , ḍs:iny:a , dubr:ad , t:ar:bi<sup>o</sup>in ;

išt l:ayt:ili dis s:k:aṛ , išt l:ayt:ili

dis wat:ay , t:ar:bi<sup>o</sup>t nn:enac̣ . day

nx nk:r asidi, nž tamzwarut: . nx nšl:l<sup>2</sup>

abr:ad swaman ihman , nž n:enac̣ , nž

s:k:aṛ , nž at:ay , nkb:xs aman inwin ,

nr:t γl lmžmṛ ihma , nr:d: abr:ad ,

ns:mrara<sup>3</sup> dilkas , zilkas γr ubr:ad ,

nq:as<sup>4</sup> , nuš imid:n at:ay , iwa dayu .

1. ayl:ay(m)/iγl:ayn/ (pl.) kettle
2. šl:l VH /t:šl:al/ to rinse
3. s:mrara VH /s:mrara/ to pour into cups and back into the pot
4. q:as VH /t:q:as/ to taste

17.14                    "mayt:g:n mid:n df:ir umnsi"

žurž:                    byix aditinit durt:x mayt:g:n mid:n

ad:ay yatšn amnsi .

mulay lhusayn:        g:γrm dindi žm<sup>1</sup>nt tudrin , ad:ay tšn  
mid:n amnsi , imq:ran: l:ag:urn adžn: ,  
nx l:ag:urn γr t:alb adz:al:n , adq:ran  
di tmzyida . ilwašun imz:yan: dimisawn<sup>2</sup>  
l:at:f:γn adxm:rn , l:atg:n aħidus ,  
l:aṭ:xm:arṇ adin γrsn nl:eb q:aħ . mš  
didin mumb<sup>3</sup>:adnt tudrin , nx tšn,q:n:  
tiw:uran:sn<sup>3</sup> žn: šafi .

1. žm<sup>1</sup> VH /žm:eb /                    to assemble, to keep, to  
be together.
2. amisa(m)/imisawn/ (pl)            shepherd  
Compare to A.A. /amksa, imksawn/ shepherd
3. taw:urt(f)/tiw:ura/ (pl)           door  
also /lbab (m), lbiban/

17.15                    rnḍan

žurž:                    irnḍan ladžan: mid:n ziš ?

mulay lhusayn:        rnḍan , l:arz:n<sup>1</sup> lmyrb q:imn alyaynin

hada ž:hd , tšn amnsi ʕad lud:inin dax

k:rn adžn: al: lwhda , aha k:rnd: tšn

s:huṛ lud:inin: aha žn: iwa dayu .

žurž:

irndan sixfn:s mism ayt:g:n s:baḥ ad:ay

d:krn . . .

mulay lhusayn: s:baḥ ad:ay d:k:rn , nx s:irdn udmawnn:sn<sup>2</sup>

waʕdn lxdma,urtl:i la lmakla , la lq:hwa ,

la walu . nx šln am:n: zum:n<sup>3</sup> , ul:it:t:n ,

ul:is:n , al: yatd:n<sup>4</sup> lmyṛb . lud:inin

sun lq:hwa , d:fṛt:d:<sup>5</sup> thṛirt , idfṛt:d:

uṛrum , nx f:ṛn šwi dax , tut:n lhawa ,

adq:imn al ʕaynin hada ž:hd , ʕaydnd: dax

adtšn amnsi . im:a l:at:g:n t:ažin ,

im:a l:at:g:n utšu . kul:idž mag:t:g: .

tšn amnsi nx sun at:ay k:rn adžn: al:

ʕatawḍ lwhda nx ž:už y:iḍ dax k:rnd: adtšn

s:huṛ . ad:ay tšn s:huṛ , lud:inin:

žn: ʕawd al s:baḥ . ayu ag:l:an .

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

1. ṛz VH /ṛz: to break
2. udm ; /udmawn/ (pl.) face
3. ẓum: ; VH /ṭ:zum: to fast  
Compare A.A. /aẓum; VH /ṭ:aẓum/
4. d:n VH /ṭ:d:n/ to call for prayer
5. ḍfṛ VH /ḍf:ṛ/ to follow

18.1

bu lman dm:lman

in:aš il:a wag:l:an , alud il:a rb:i fi kul: mšan ,  
 alud il:a idž uryaz t:mt:uṭns zdṽn g:idž w:ansa xas nitni .  
 aryaz l:aysr:h tiṽt:n , tamṽ:ut l:at:qabal taxant . al  
 idž w:as: kul: idž iṽ:ā:adin it:g: , ik:r uryaz in:as  
 "adamq:abl x taxant" . tn:as "wax:a , ulan:tš uhlx  
 stmara ntxant , adrahx atsrhx " . ik:r uryaz iq:abl taxant ,  
 trah tmt:uṭ at:srh . iwa yasidi , zg:a tiwd tmt:ut  
 ʿari , taf adur:u . tq:im alts:brbiš g:xfn:s , alt:ini  
 "is šbhx mad uršbihx ayadur:u " . k:rn ixw:an: awin  
 tiṽt:n kul:ši , ṽṽsn iwmyan amq:ran , žn azl:ifns xidž  
 uzq:ur . nx tṽr tmt:uṭ azl:ifdin , tini is suln q:aḥ .  
 maniš ayaryaz ik:r alis:ndu itad:art , is:ufṽ udi ,  
 tšarnas ifas:n , yamstn itmart . nt:a ibṽa adis:zwa  
 tmart ṽl:ʿafit , tšb:r dis . nt:a ibṽa adt:is:xsi ,  
 iṽah alt:it:ams iwzṽ:a , tšb:r g:zṽ:a . zg:zṽ:a ṽr  
 txant , azg:a urtq:im xas tbarda uṽyul .

tamd:it: , ha tamt:uṭ tɛidd: bla tiyt:n ,  
urtnt:ufi , tafd: aryaz uryrs mayayž . tn:as "awa  
matšk: ayu ?" in:as "ata matšm: ayu ? mayam ižran ?"  
tn:as " ha mag: žran ha mag: žran , išk: ?" in:as "ha  
mag: žran , ha mag: žran ". tn:as " k:rax an:raḥ  
ɣl:ahlinw " . ik:r ižr tbarda iwɣyul ,iny , aližn:i  
adrbaln:s . zix ant:a uris:in isižn:i tbarda dudrbal .  
nt:a ywdn ɣl:ahl ntmt:uṭ , f:ɣnd: lahl ntmt:uṭ at:nid:  
s:idfn , ibya ad:irs zḡ:ɣyul , iq:im yužl , idrd:  
dahz:uḍ , iq:imn: udrbal xtbarada , awinasd: ayt uxam  
maya yird . hatu tzryas . iwa adfn , tšn adin yušu  
rb:i , q:imn ha yfunasn rwhnd: . tk:r tmt:uṭ udg:al  
altz:y . ik:r ɣrs bulman in:a tamt:utn:s in:as "ataha ,  
isdadaxžn aytuxamn:un ša ntmɣrust iḍu mad ihi ?" tn:as  
"axas iž rb:i g:uln:š abulman " . in:a "amat:a tu zix "  
ha tu tzryas dax . q:imn azg:a t:t:n amnsi , in:asn  
udg:al "mumi diwn ifsus unud:m , adihl: tafunast mš  
tn:a at:m:t ?" in:asn bulman "ntš " . iq:im uryaz alam:as y:id



izr tasrdunt l:at:mr:ay , ik:r iyrsas , in:a t:afunast .  
 ha tasrdunt tm:ut , ha tafunast thrm . iq:im alud yuši  
 dlfdaht din ižu , ik:r alit:ašm itmt:ut:n:s , in:as  
 "ha may žix , ha may žix , k:r an:raḥ " . tk:r asidi ,  
 tn:as "ixs:ax maya ntš ḡ:brid " . in:as "wala calik ,  
 ayrum il:a yn:x . l:azrix l:inat idž uql:uš w:udi ,  
 adraḥx ad:z:is asix ša w:udi , an:raḥ " . irah asidi yr  
 uql:uš , yr txabit , yasy idž uyr:af ald:is is:adaf .  
 imi ntxabit , imi uql:al , uris:idf ayr:af , ani iq:mr  
 imi ntxabit . alit:ini maya žx , ma urtg:x , izr išt  
 ntzrut: l:ats:flil:iy , in:a adk:rx adrzx txabitu xuzru  
 yin: . zix ant:a adin in:a dazru , dazl:if udḡ:al  
 ižin amž:ud . ik:r yasi txabit , irah irzt: xixf udḡ:al .  
 zg:a yuši dlfdahtn:s , lfdah tıs:nat , mad tis:tlata ,  
 mad tis:rba , in:a itmt:uṭ "k:r an:rwl " . iwa rahn  
 asidi , yaḷ:ah , yaḷ:ah , f:utnin: ḡ:idž w:ansa l:azr:in  
 dis imisawn . ad:ay dis zrin imisawn , nx tısq: d:uft  
 ḡ:zḡ:ar . tn:as tmt:uṭ "k:rax an:žm , an:lq:d taduftu

q:ah , adt:nz:nz , adz:is žx tašdift , an:z:nz  
tašdift , nsy tafunast , adaxtarw aynduz , ad:anq:n  
tafunast , nq:n da aynduz " , in:as "ihi . da adi  
ya nq:n aynduz , nq:n da tafunast ". tn:as "td:in  
awrit:ilin . da adi ya nq:n aynduz , da adi ya nq:n  
tafunast ". iwa yasidi , am:in , k:rn da adi ya nq:n  
tafunast , da adi ya nq:n aynduz . ik:r in:as rhlnam .  
yasy azru , iwtt: , irzas azl:if , tm:t tmt:uṭ: . zy  
lfdaht ḡl:fdaht , ik:r irwl , yawdn: idž iṣrm . yawd  
ṣr iṣrm alit:sal mid:n . in:a ma ya žx ma wr t:g:x ,  
alit:sal mid:n , n:anas "awd:i tl:a da išt ntadžalt ,  
im:utas uryaz , ixṣ:as ša uryaz adxsixdm , adxsišarf ".  
in:as "wax:a ". irah isalxs , is:qrqbx , tf:ḡd: ṣrs ,  
in:as " ha kif uha kif ". tn:as "wax:a , iwa k:r  
dutša at:raht ad:tsyt ša lxdrt , ša w:i sum srb:i ".  
in:as "mš l:an lflus bla rb:i ". tn:as "nəl š:iṭan  
abulman . isil:a ša din it:mug:an bla rb:i ". in:as  
"ata mš l:an lflus , aṣ:atnid: bla rb:i ". iwa ik:r

s:baḥ , tušas lflus , tn:as "sir srb:i " . in:as  
 "ḍurtx zg:a l:an lflus , bla r̄b:i " . iwa irah alig:ur ,  
 alig:ur , inyt fad . yaf idž w:anu , iraby adisw .  
 nt:a iraby , uḍanasn: lflus g:anu . in:a mat:a lfḍaḥtu .  
 lflus uḍani g:wanu . ik:r ik:s iḥban: , idr g:anu  
 ad:ižbd lflus . nt:a idru , asinas lxt:ar lḥwayž ,  
 asinas lxt:ar iḥban: . yalid: , la lflus , layḥban: .  
 iḥidd: l:a yrg:l yr tad:art , yadf , if:r df:ir l:bab ,  
 t:rf iyš:uḍn trahḍ: tmt:uḥ tn:a at:s:hma lḥafit , taftid ,  
 tn:as "amad šk: ayu abulman , mat:a lfḍaḥtu " . in:as  
 "rahx s:a srb:i , inyi fad srb:i , afx idž w:anu srb:i ,  
 huḍrx adsux srb:i , uḍanin: lflus srb:i " . tk:r tz:ḥt ,  
 tn:as "ḍzrit maš t:inix " . iwa tk:r tz:ḥt asidi ,  
 tqḍa ḥažit: ula q:ḍan yirdn t:mzin ula ntšt dams:as .

lman (m)

peace

wag:l:an

who is

alud

until

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

amšan	place (Notice correspondence of /š/ in A.S. and /k/ or /k:/)
g: idž (<y + idž)	in one
ansa (m)	place
xas	only (A.A. /γas/)
srh VH /sr:h/	to tend sheep
tiγt:n	goats (f.)
q:abl ; VH /t:qabal/	take care of
taxant (f) /tixamin/ (pl)	house (A.A. /taxamt/)
ε f:a ; VH /t:ε f:a/	to dislike, be disgusted.
adin	that which (A.A. /ayn:a/)
it:g:	he does, he is doing
adamq:abl x taxant	I'll take care of the housework for you (f.s.)
ulan:tš (</ulad ntš/)	even me (Notice that /-d/ + /n-/ --> /-nn-/ or /-n:-/ in A.S.)
stmara	with pain
rah	to go (This is the simple verb stem that corresponds to A.A. /d:u/ which is not used in A.S.)

atsrhx ( adsrhx)	I'll tend sheep.
iwa yasidi....	then... (speaking to some one)
zg:a	when
adur:u	a plant used on the face for make-up
alts:brbĩš	she started coloring: /al-/ denotes an in- choative aspect, i.e., a verbal aspect in which the action is considered at its start or commencement.
brbš	to color /s:brbš/ causa- tive form
alt:ini	saying
sbh ; VH /t:sbih/	to be pretty
a	vocative 'oh you'
axw:an (m) /ixw:an:/ (pl)	thief
γrs	to slaughter
amyān (m)/imyān:/	billy goat
amq:ran (m)/imq:ran:/	big
azl:if (m)/azl:ifn/	head
xidž	on one

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

azq:ur(m)izȳran/	tree trunk
zr ; VH /z:ar/	see, (hear)
-din	that (demonstrative)
is-	that (conjunction)
q:ah	all
maniš	meanwhile
ndu ; VH /nd:u/	to be shook, causative
s:ndu	to shake milk in order to separate butter
alis:ndu	he began to shake the milk
f:ȳ ; VH /t:f:ȳ/	to go out
s:ufȳ ; VH /s:ufuȳ/	causative (her: to extract)
tšar ; VH /t:tšar/	to make dirty
ams / VH /t:ams/	to paint, to wipe off
itmart	to the beard
bȳa ; VH /t:ibȳa/	to want (A.A. /iri/)
zwa ; VH /zg:a/	to be dry, to dry
šb:r ; VH /t:šb:ar/	to cling, to catch

dis	to him, in him
xsy ; VH /xs:i/	put out a fire
azt:a / izdwan	loom
tamd:it:	evening (A.A. /tadg:at:/
bla	without
urrs	he does not have
maγa yž	what he will do (/ma/ what; /maγa/ what will)
matšk:	is it you (m.s.) (</madšk:/ Notice correspondence of /šk:/ A.S. and /šg:/ A.A.)
ayu	this (/aya/ A.A.)
matšm:	is it you (f.s.) (</mad šm:/)
ata	oh you (f.s.)
an:rah	we will go (notice /-d/ + /-n/ --->/-nn-/ or /-n:-/ in A.S.)
žr ; VH /g:ar/	to throw
ny ; VH /t:nay/	to mount(a horse)
žni ; VH /žn:i/	to sew
adrbal / idrbaln	rag
zix	whereas

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

---

is ižn:i	that he was sewing
adf ; VH /t:adf/	enter, go in
s:idf ; VH /s:adaf/	causative of /adf/
rs ; VH /rs:/	to descend (from a horse)
ažl ; VH /t:ažl/	to hang
ḍr ; VH/t:ar/	to descend
ahz:ud (m)/ḥz:udn	naked
tahz:ut:(f)/tihz:udin/	naked
xtbarda ( xf tabarda)	pack saddle, on the pack saddle
maḡa	what (fut.)
ird ; VH /t:irad/	to wear
zry ; VH/zr:y/	to pass
uš ; VH /tšitš/	to give (A.A. /š/ ; VH /ak:a/)
adḡ:a1 (m) /idulan/	in-law
z:y ; VH /t:z:y/	to milk
in:a	here: he thought
isdadaxžn	are they going to make for us



Unit 18

idu	today (A.A. /as:a/)
madihi	or not? (A.A. /mad uhu/)
ul	heart
tu	this (f.) one
wu	this (m.) one
dax	again (A.A. /diɣ/)
amnsi (m) /imnsiwn/ (pl)	dinner
mumi	to whom
diwn	among you
fsus; VH /t:ifsus/	to be light
anud:m (m) /inud:umn/	sleep
hl: ; VH /t:hl:a/	to slaughter an animal according to the accepted manner
m:t ; VH /t:mt:a/	to die
mr:ɣ ; VH /t:mr:aɣ /	to wallow (especially in the dust)
hrm ; VH /t:hrim/	to die (for an animal) without being slaughtered according to law, therefore meat is forbidden as food.
ašy ; VH /t:ašy/	to be aware of

lfdaht (f)/lfdayh /	disgraceful or scandalous act or thing
ašm ; VH /t:ašm/	to push
wala əalik	never mind
l:inat	then, at that time
aql:uš(m)/iql:ušn/	jug
z:is	from it
txabit(f)/tixabyin/	jug
tazrut: (f) /tizra/	stone
s:flil:y ; VH /s:flil:iy/	to shine
rz ; VH /rz:/	to break
amž:ud/ imž:udn/	bald-headed, scabby, scurfy
rwl ; VH /rg:l/	escape, run
f:u ; VH /t:f:u/	to dawn
amisa / imisawn/	shepherds
lsq:;VH /ls:q/	to stick
tađuft (f)	wool
azg:ar (m)	thorny plant
žm ; VH /žm:ə/	collect

lq:d ; VH /t:lq:ad/	gather, pick up, collect
tašdift (f)/tišdifin/	rug
aynduz (m)/iynduzn/	calf
q:n ; VH /t:q:n/	to tie
mid:n	people (/md:n/ in A.A.)
tadžalt / tadžalin/	widow
šarf ; VH t:saraf/	to spend money
qrqb ; VH /t:qrqab/	to knock at
in:as ha kif uha kif	he told her all his story
dutša	tomorrow
lxdṛt	vegetables (A.A.=/lxudrt/)
aysum	meat (A.A = /aksum/ Also notice A.S. above, /imisawn/ and A.A. /imksawn/ 'shepherds' and A.A. /iks:īdn/, A.S./iysudn/ 'wood' below.
ṇl š:ītan	shame on you (A.A /š:īdan/ /t/-/d/correspondence.
it:mug:an	to be done (passive)
ar:a	give me

sir ; VH /g:ur/	go! (imperative of /rah/- remember dialect does not use /d:u/)
durt:x	now
alig:ur	he kept going
fad	thirst
inɣt fad	he was thirsty
raby ; VH /t:rabay/	to lean over
uda ; VH /uɣ:a/	to fall
k:s ; VH/t:k:s/	to take off (clothes)
žbd ; VH /žb:d/	to pull out
lxt:ar (mp)	passers-by
lhwayž (mp)	clothes, things
aly ; VH /t:aly/	to climb
f:r ; VH /t:f:r/	to hide
df:ir	behind
t:rf	near
iyš:udn	wood (A.A. /iks:ɨdn/ - compare /amisa/ and /aysum/ above)
s:hma lɛafit	build a fire

s:a	from here
z:ɛ ; VH /t:z:ɛ/	to dismiss
thažit: (f) /tɪhiža/ (pl)	the story
ams:as (m) /ims:asn/ (pl)	bread (without salt)

18.2

tqunbət t:ždit:

in:aš il:a wag:l:an alud il:a r̄b:i fi kul: mšan , alud  
 tl:a tždit:<sup>1</sup> t:qunbət<sup>2</sup> žint timd:uk:al , al idž w:as: ,  
 thw:zas<sup>3</sup> tažlmust<sup>4</sup> itqunbət . tn:as "ata wši taqnbustinw<sup>5</sup>".  
 tn:as "uramtšitšx ša , mš tbyit taqnbustn:m , arah  
 awyid: aḥbub w:aḍil " . tn:as " wax:a " . in:aš trah  
 yr d:ilit<sup>6</sup> , tn:as , "aha d:ilit ušiyid: ša uḥbub w:aḍil " .  
 tn:as " may t:urt<sup>7</sup> ? " tn:as "at:ušx itždit: is ithw:z  
 taqnbustinw " tn:as " iwa arah awyid: ša w:aman zilcin " .  
 twaɔd aɣbal tn:as "ayaɣbal<sup>8</sup> ušid: ša w:aman " . in:as  
 "may turt aman ?" tn:as "at:nušx id:ilit " . in:as  
 "may turt d:ilit ?" tn:as "adituš aḥbub w:aḍil " . in:as  
 "mayturt aḥbub w:aḍil " tn:as "at:ušx idždit: " . in:as  
 "may turt taždit: "tn:as "is ithw:z taqnbustinw" . in:as

"iwa sir awyid: imdyazn adxfixm:rn ". twaɛd imdyazn tn:asn  
 "rwahm xm:rmi xlɛin adiyuš aman , at:nušx id:ilit ,  
 adituš aħbub w:adil , at:ušx itždit: , adituš  
 taqnbustinw ". n:anas "iwa sir awyaxd: aħuli ". traħ  
 ɣr imisawn tn:asn "ušmi aħuli at:awix iymdyazn , adxm:rn  
 xlɛin , lɛin adiyuš aman , aman at:nušx id:ilit ,  
 d:ilit adituš aħbub w:adil , aħbub w:adil at:ušx itždit:  
 taždit: adituš taqnbustinw ". n:an:as "sir awyaxd:  
 bubuš<sup>9</sup> ". twaɛd taydit: tn:as "uši bubuš ha kif uha  
 kif ". tn:as "sir awyid: timat:in<sup>10</sup> ntažmart ". traħ  
 ɣr tažmart , tn:as "ha kif uha kif ". tn:as "iwa sir  
 awyid: tawlwin<sup>11</sup> xitxalim , xinmžar<sup>12</sup>". traħ ɣr inmžar ,  
 tn:asn "ušmi tawlwin , ha kif uha kif ". n:an:as "sir  
 awyaxd: imžran<sup>13</sup> xumzil<sup>14</sup>". twaɛd amzil adasyuš imžran .  
 in:as "sir ɣr itxalim adamd:ušn utšu ". twaɛt:n , tn:asn  
 "ušmi utšu ". n:an:as "iwa asi ayd:id<sup>15</sup>". tk:r tɛm:r  
 ayd:id w:lɣm , tr:as tiwa , in:aš uras tzmir<sup>16</sup> . in:aš  
 tzri tsiwant<sup>17</sup> , tn:as "s:uf<sup>18</sup> ɛaq: , s:uf ɛaq: , s:uf

ʕaq: ". in:aš tk:r tkb: aman , ts:uf ayd: id , tṛahd:  
 tṛg:l , ts:rstid ʕr ubud uxam. tn:asnt "iwa ušntid:  
 utšu " n:antas "iwa ʕm:rḏ aman bʕda ". tn:asnt "awa  
 ušntid: adṛahx , amzil l:ayt:rža , adṛahx abridinw  
 xlas: ". iwa in:aš ʕm:rntas taḥb:iyt<sup>20</sup> swutšu , in:aš  
 tawit:d: iwmzil . in:aš tk:r tsmyt<sup>21</sup> ad:tž aman , iqṛqbx<sup>22</sup>  
 n:fs<sup>23</sup> iʕmat: . iwa in:aš tawid: utšu iwmzil , yušaš  
 imžran , tušt n iymžar , ušnas tawlwin , tuštnt itžmart ,  
 tušaš timat:in , tuštnt itq:zint , tušaš bubuš , tušt  
 iymisawn , ušnas aḥuli , tušt iymdyazn , xm:rnas  
 xuṛbal , yušaš uṛbal aman , tawitn id:ilit , tušaš  
 aḥbub w:adil , tušt itždit: , tṛ:as taqnbuʕtn:s . iwa  
 urq:imnt t:imd:uk:al . tqḏa<sup>24</sup> tḥažit: ula qḏan yirdn  
 t:mzin ula ntšt dams:as .

- |                            |         |
|----------------------------|---------|
| 1. aḣdīd / iḣdad (pl.)     | bird    |
| taḣdit: (f.) /tiḣdad (pl.) |         |
| 2. tqunbuʕt                | lark    |
| 3. ḥw:z / t:ḥw:az/         | to grab |

A Course in Spoken Tamazight

4.	ažlmas / ižlmas/	cap, hood
5.	taqnbuṣt	"cap of the lark"
6.	d:ilit	vine
7.	may turt ar (u-)	what do you want? to want
	<u>N.B.</u> This verb occurs only in the affirmative past tense forms referring either to past or present tense.	
	e.g.: mag:ur ?	what did (does) he want?
	may urn ?	what did (do) they want?
8.	aṣbal	spring
9.	bubuš /ibubušn/ (pl.)	puppy
10.	timat:in	placenta
11.	tadlwīn	chopped wheat plants
12.	anmžar / inmžar/ (pl.)	harvester
13.	amžr / imžran/ (pl.)	sickle
14.	amzil / imziln/ (p..)	blacksmith
15.	ayd:id / iyd:idn/ (pl.)	goatskin for water
16.	zmr; VH /zm:r/	to be able to
17.	tsiwant	kite (animal)
18.	s:uf ; VH /s:uf:u/	to blow



19. bud bottom
20. taḥb:iyt / tiḥb:iyin/ (pl.) plate
21. ismγ/ ismγan / (Pl) Negro  
tismγt / tismγin (f.p.)
22. qṛqb / t:qṛqab/ (pl.) to throw at,  
to shoot
23. n:fs air, breath
24. qda ; VH /qṭ:a/ to be finished

18.3.                    žha l:mγrib džha l:mšriḡ<sup>9</sup>

in:āš il:a wag:l:an alud il:a rb:i fi kul: mšan ,  
alud l:an snat m:id:n , idž ism:n:s žha l:mšriḡ<sup>1</sup> , idž  
žha l:mγrib<sup>2</sup> - iwa asidi myus:an: , žn imd:uk:al .  
idž w:as: , waʿdn s:uq: , isγ idž tazrbiyt , isγ  
wis:nat taγyult . iwa asidi , xwas:<sup>3</sup> nx iny bu tγyult  
idži butḥlast , xyid<sup>4</sup> nx ižn butḥlast , idl<sup>5</sup> , idži  
butγyult . iwa idž w:as: ik:rd: butγyult , is:ind<sup>6</sup>  
taḥlast , ir:ast: q:ah dixba <sup>7</sup>. iwa zi lud:inin mš ižnu ,  
alit:hasab<sup>8</sup> itran <sup>9</sup>. iwa ik:r , maγažγ mawrt:g:x ,  
ik:r iby:as<sup>10</sup> ihnfifn<sup>11</sup> itγyult . ik:r idž w:as: iwaʿdtid

butɣyult in:as "aʒha q:l əad təhlastn:s ɣrs al:n iɖu<sup>12</sup>"

in:as wis:nat "y:ih ? zix adin ax tɖs: tɣyultn:š ?"

1. lmɣrɪb (m) the Occident
2. lmšriq (m) the Orient
3. xwas: during the day
4. xyid during the night
5. dl ; VH /d:al/ to cover
6. s:ind ; VH /s:inad/ to burn (transit)
7. axbu (m)/ixba/ (pl.) holes
8. ɣasb ; VH /t:ɣasab/ to count
9. itri (n) /itran/ (pl.) star
10. b:y ; VH /t:b:y/ to cut
11. ahnfif (m)/ihnfifn/ (pl.) lip

19.1                      ṣlugi bidn l:ah

in:aš il:a wag:l:an , azg:a il:a r̄b:i fi kul: mšan ,

azg:a l:an snat w:awmatn , idž γrs ešra ntšir:atin ;

idž γrs sbca l:wašun . ik:r butš:ir:atin iwaɔd lxla<sup>1</sup> ,

ižn . irahd: yizid<sup>2</sup> ižnxs . in:as "hz:<sup>3</sup> ayayu xfi

ižnin , adašušx tiyt:n ". in:as "yužrtnt baba ibabaš ".

in:as "hž:xfi adašušx ifunasn ". in:as "yužrtnt baba

ibabaš ". in:as "k:r adašušx lbhaym ". in:as "yužrtnt

baba ibabaš ". "k:r adašušx tad:art ". "yužrtnt baba

ibabaš". "k:r adašušx išt zg:s:i ". in:aš ik:rxs .

in:as "mism ayažx ?" in:as "iwa ižn: ibrduzn<sup>4</sup> ,

tžtn: imsci<sup>5</sup> al tad:artinw , td:in n:γrš γahz:x zg:s:i ,

tasitt: ". in:as "wax:a ". in:aš iq:im , iq:im alud

ižu , in:aš irahd: , ižd: imsci , išl it:sa , išl

it:sa al tamd:it , iwaɔdd: udin . in:as "k:r alal:a

wahd uš šaymndi iwyin: imsci ". tn:as "ababa inyi

wdađ ". in:as "k:r alal:a tnayn ". tn:as "ababa

inyi wzl:if ". "k:r alal:a tlata ".

tn:as "ababa l:at:hṛ:ayi<sup>6</sup> d:ist ", "k:r  
alal:a rḃa " . "ababa l:at:hṛ:ayi tiwa " "k:r  
alal:a xmsa " . "ababa l:at:hṛ:ani ifadin". "k:r  
alal:a st:a " . "ababa l:atnyī išt ntymst" . "k:r  
alal:a sbca " . "ababa l:athṛ:anti tinzar<sup>7</sup> ". "k:r  
alal:a tmnya " . "ababa l:ayt:hṛ:ayi uq:mu " "k:r  
alal:a tsca " . "ababa l:ayt:hṛ:ayi uzl:if " . "k:r  
alal:a šra " , tk:r . nt:a tušas imndi , nt:a yasit: ,  
l:ant:at: laymndi , yawḍn: awn: isbḃ bhur<sup>8</sup> . awn:  
isbḃ bhur ayt:l:a tad:artn:s . in:aš ižas tamṛa . idž  
w:as: , in:as idž m:m:is ncm:is ntrbat: , in:as "ababa  
huyzx<sup>9</sup> il:is ncm:i , adraḥx " . in:as "maniṛ yatṛaḥt ,  
daš:itš yizid " . in:as "dadraḥx uxlaš:<sup>10</sup>" . in:aš  
iraḥ , yafn: il:is ncm:is l:atsum:r<sup>11</sup> n:iž<sup>12</sup> ntad:art .  
nt:a tzrut , m:žrn iyal:n<sup>13</sup> , nt:at t:ru , nt:a yt:ru .  
in:aš tn:as "q:im " . tadf , ts:uždas , tžas aṛum ,  
tn:as "awru " , in:aš is:ird ifas:nn:s , itšu alud  
itšu , in:aš if:γd: , q:imn alt:žum:uḃn , tn:as "mr

tzrit amm:is ncm:i ad:ay d:irw:h , in:q:lbd:xfi<sup>14</sup>

slxmužiyt<sup>15</sup> , aha asixd: timndut<sup>16</sup> alasfr:nx<sup>17</sup>

tiymas , aha q:ah adin it:t: ilxla , alastidfr:nx

stmdut . iwa q:imn t:mžum:uēn , t:m:lhan azg:a žin ,

k:rn žn: . s:bah in:as "k:r z:ry mm:is ncm:im " . tn:as

"mid:n z:ruyn mid:n , tiy:alin z:ruynt tiy:alin " .

ik:r imun ak:ids al mani urt:z:ar , in:aš išlqmt<sup>19</sup> .

ik:r wis:nat in:as "ababa byix adrahx adzrx il:is

ncm:i " . in:as ib:as "maniyr yatraht , urd:idhir<sup>20</sup>

umaš , l:an:<sup>21</sup> istitšu . q:im abridn:š " . in:aš

irah , yafn: tismyt l:atzd:m , in:as "lahicawn " ,

tn:as "l:aysl:m " . tn:as "aš:abab<sup>22</sup> , mani yr ?

daš:it's yizid din yr tl:a lal:a . laytšu idž ya<sup>23</sup> " .

in:as "adin ižu rb:i at:žx " . irah dax am:n: , l:ats:um:r ,

dax q:imn , dax yadf alast:awad<sup>24</sup> lxbar , tn:as "ad:ay

asfr:nx , adasd:t:k:sx idarn iq:zin:<sup>25</sup> , yiy:ilfan<sup>26</sup>

yintyal:in , yil:ēbd<sup>27</sup> . zg:a d:irw:h , yaftid .

dax tfrnas , ts:rsasd: sbca ndžiwaw<sup>28</sup> w:utšu , tšn

nitni džhɔn:sn , q:imn alt:mžum:uɛn , dax k:rn žn:  
s:bah dax , ižas adin ižu iwɔmzwaru , irahd: wis:tlata  
itšt , itštn q:aḥ , azg:a iq:im xas wis:bɛa . in:aš  
wis:bɛayu , iɣlb iq:rin:n:s <sup>29</sup> g:mlasay<sup>30</sup> , g:mnɣi ,  
itšurt<sup>31</sup> , ikul:ši . in:aš l:aytšat tašurt , iz:ryasnt: ,  
dax r:nast:d: , dax iḥat:ras , dax iz:ryasnt: , is:uḥltn .  
n:anas "ma ɣanž arb:i ilxliqiytu<sup>32</sup> , ma wrasnt:g: ?"  
n:anas rβet:<sup>33</sup> "ts:nm masɣanž ? an:raḥ ad:nɣaca ša  
ntfq:irt din ɣr tl:a txant , adasnq:awl<sup>34</sup> lḥq:n:s  
mawrxt:s:xsay". in:aš raḥn alt:ɟurn<sup>35</sup> , alud t:ufn ,  
n:anas "ha kif uha kif ". in:aš s:rḥlnt:d: ɣr ulmu <sup>36</sup>.  
nx iwtasn tašurt , iz:ryasnt: , ihdm<sup>37</sup> taxant , dax tbnat:  
dax iz:ryasnt: , ihdm taxant , dax tbnat: tfq:irt ,  
ališt l:mrt: iz:rit: itxant , iwaɛdtn imlasay ak:idsn ,  
iɣlbtn . n:anas "may sašiburz<sup>38</sup> dil:is nɛm:iš tl:an:awn:  
isbɛ bḥur ɣr yizid ?" in:aš umnbɛd irahd: "ayazl:ifinw ! "  
ayazl:ifinw ! " yadf taxant , tn:as "may š:yuɣn amm:i ?"  
in:as "ntš m:utx suzl:if ". in:as "iži tazult<sup>39</sup> adirunt<sup>40</sup>

wəl:n , tšd:ti<sup>41</sup> azl:if tadlti adhmix ". tn:as "wax:a  
 amm:i ". tžas adin , ižn azg:a idžiwn anud:m ,  
 ik:rd: , tn:as "yušlaš<sup>42</sup> uzl:if amm:i ?" in:as "yušli "  
 tn:as "mašyažx ? adašžx aγrum ?" in:as "ihi "  
 "adašžx tahrirt ?" in:as "ihi " , "adašžx utšu ?"  
 in:as "ihi ". "adašžx lmsm:nat<sup>43</sup>?" in:as "ihi ".  
 "adašžx hr̥tiṭa<sup>44</sup> ?" in:as "ihi " tn:as "adašžx aγrum  
 ufr:an ?" in:as "ihi " tn:as "adašžx winbuwγrum ?"  
 in:as "ihi " tn:as "imašyažx ?" in:as "iži ahrir  
 ibrayn ". tn:as "wax:a amm:i , mṛḥba ". in:aš  
 tk:r , tž aħdir<sup>45</sup> l:əafit , ts:ird taq:nušt<sup>46</sup> , tžt:  
 xləafit , tž dis tisnt , tž dis tadunt<sup>47</sup> dlq:d:īd<sup>48</sup> ,  
 dlḥuṃ:z , dlmḥm:sa<sup>49</sup> , dš:əriy:a<sup>50</sup> , dlmaqaruniya<sup>51</sup> tž  
 dis kul:ži , tdžit alit:trtur<sup>52</sup> azg:a inwu , tasiy tq:as ,  
 tasid: ša ntby:əst<sup>53</sup> təm:r sibrayn , k:ud t:g: , t:xrwad  
 stynžayt<sup>55</sup> alud təm:r taq:nuštdin , alt:trtur , tasid:  
 tq:as , tafn: ixs:as šwi itnawit: . traḥ ad:tawy šwi  
 isyarn . in:aš yasid: išt nthb:iyt , alit:raša alit:raša

azg:a yuf išt ntby:at l:hn:i<sup>56</sup> , ik:b:d: lhn:i ithb:iyt ,  
yasid: aman , is:r:wi<sup>57</sup> lhn:i , if:rt:<sup>58</sup> , if:r  
taɣnžayt . tɛidd: alt:t:raɣa , tsalt in:as "urs:inx ,  
mani mzrix , mani t:ts:rst ?" tn:as "da ayt:s:rsx  
g:tbsil , maystntitšu wuš:n ? maystntttšu tmurt ?"  
in:as "ay hay atafq:irt tahrarašt<sup>59</sup> , tanršut:<sup>60</sup> , taɣrdurt<sup>61</sup> ,  
raɣa mani t:tdžit urxstɛq:ilt " . tn:as "mas ɣaxɣudx  
ɣurt:x tahrit , dat:lsq ?" in:as "xɣud sufusn:m ."  
tn:as dadšndx ." in:as "s:ud , txɣudt " . in:aš  
ts:ud , txɣud , tšnd . tawd tazd<sup>62</sup> wis:nat , tšnd ,  
it:fastnin: . alts:ɣuy:u slhr: . in:as "uramrz:mx xas  
ma tnet:i<sup>63</sup> il:is nɛm:i mani n:tl:a . ulid: ist:mt:ix .  
xas isamžix t:abrɛun<sup>64</sup> " . ik:sasd: ifas:n , ižastn  
ilhn:i , brdn<sup>65</sup> . tn:as "amm:i is urn:ix adašinix mani  
n:tl:a , g:dx aš:itš lušš<sup>66</sup> y:izidn ." in:as "netit:  
hl:i , mam dyi idaɛn<sup>67</sup> ?" iwa tnetas , tn:as "aytmaš  
itšutn , šk: adaš iɛawd " . in:as "mam dyi il:an ?  
iži lɛwin<sup>68</sup>" . tžas lɛwin . in:aš irah , alig:ur ,



alig:ur , alig:ur , alud izri sb̄a ntmizar , yafn: idž  
 y:izm , dubrhuš<sup>69</sup> , dlbaz<sup>70</sup> , dušt:uf<sup>71</sup> ; l:an̄yin idž  
 uwtul<sup>72</sup> , q:imn q:ablnt , ulad idž uris:in adibdu .  
 in:asn "s:alamuḥlikum " . n:anas "s:alam urḥmatl:ah " .  
 nt:a is:urf<sup>73</sup> am din: , iḡrasd: yizm , alit:ržiži<sup>74</sup> ,  
 in:a mawlid: is in:a at:itš . iḡrasd: in:as "ahnini<sup>75</sup> ,  
 nḡraš ir̄b:i mawraxtb̄t:ut ayu" . in:as "wax:a " ,  
 ibduyasn kul: idž slḡq:n:s , is:šayd<sup>76</sup> iyizm , iḡ:d<sup>77</sup>  
 at:itš . nt:a is:urf am din: , iḡrasd: dax yizm ,  
 in:as "at:g:urt at:g:urt , al ašḡayay<sup>78</sup> yid: iša w:ansa ,  
 tinit "sb̄a bidn l:ah " . ašt:uf in:as "ad:ay tzrt ša  
 l:xt:ar<sup>79</sup> , at:init urš:z:ar̄n , at:init "nmla bidn  
 l:ah " . abr̄huš in:as "ad:ay šit:z:ḥ<sup>80</sup> ḡd: , at:init  
 urš:it:t:f , at:init "ḡlugi bidn l:ah " . lbaz: ,  
 in:as "aday: tg:urt altg:urt , at:awt: ša wmalu at:aft  
 isiran , tinit "lbaz: bidn l:ah " . in:as "wax:a " ,  
 ir̄ah .  
 in:aš alig:ur azg:a asyuy yid , in:as "sb̄a bidn l:ah " ,

ins alizh:r<sup>81</sup> , alizh:r al s:baḥ , iʿid dbnadm . in:aš  
alig:ur , alig:ur , alig:ur , azg:a iqd<sup>82</sup> dax sba  
ntmizar , izr ša l:xṭ:ar , ig:dasn in:as "nmla bidn  
l:ah ". iʿid dašt:uf . r:bn<sup>83</sup> mid:n din , n:anas  
"manis ik:u uryaz din ? isttšrd<sup>84</sup> tmurt mad mat:a ?"  
azg:a zrin , zrn̄t df:irasn , ʿidnd: yrs . nt:a t:fnt  
zg:ʿban , in:as "slugi bidn l:ah ", iʿid dabrhuš ,  
is:nsrtn<sup>85</sup> , irah̄ irg:l xas azg:a asntl<sup>86</sup> , iʿid  
dbnadm , irah̄ azg:a yiwd̄ , yafn: tismyt , tn:as  
"aš:ababu , urtstahl:t<sup>87</sup> aš:itš ". in:as "adin ižu  
rb:i ". in:aš irah̄ yafn: isiran<sup>89</sup> g:malu , iʿid dlbaz  
ixlatn , išnftn<sup>88</sup> , itš išt ntsk:urt , yawy adin iq:imn  
iyl:is n̄m:is . yawd̄t: , m:žrn iyal:n , tn:as aš:f:rx ,  
tf:rt . zg:a d:yiwd̄ yizid , tq:im dax alastfr:n tiymas ,  
alud: tžbd txatnt nma:is n̄m:is, tn̄tt: iwmas , alit:ru .  
in:aš zg:a astfrn tiymas , žn: . iwa idž w:as: , in:as  
mm:is n̄m:is ha masyatinit , ha mas yatinit . tn:as  
"wax:a ". idž y:id , tn:as "a yaryaz , ur̄mri itn:it

mani ašil:a r:uḥ , adn:yršžx winw , isnmz:a , tiwitid:  
mz:ix , nmwalaf , nmz:a ". in:as "la , la .  
uramt:inix ". tn:as "xas neti . mamu tg:t: ? ar:a  
nəm:i ttšit:n . mamu tg:t: ?" alt:tšat azg:a astinet .  
in:as "r:uḥinw il:an: g:ilf asimud<sup>90</sup> . ilf asimud il:an  
awn: isbḥ bḥur , adirah ḥd: adxs it:ad:r at:ižm:r<sup>91</sup> ,  
al:yahl , adz:istafru<sup>92</sup> tsk:urt . dax adxs yadr al  
tahl , adz:istafru tml:alt . hašadin mani il:a r:uḥinw ".  
iwa irah asidi mm:is nəm:is , iḥid dašt:uf alud yiwd  
sbḥ bḥur , iḥid dlbaz yafrw irsn: awn: isbḥ bḥur , iḥid  
dbnadm , yafn: ilf asimud l:ayhd:a<sup>93</sup> . iḥid dabrhuš  
alxsit:adr azg:a yuhl , tafru z:is tsk:urt , iḥid dlbaz  
alit:adr xtsk:urt , tafru z:is tml:alt<sup>94</sup> , iḥid dbnadm  
yasi taml:alt . in:as "lbaz bidn l:ah " , yafrud: awrd<sup>95</sup>  
isbḥ bḥur irahd: .  
in:as "ata ḥd: is:yd<sup>96</sup> ḡn:x , irah ižmr buḥblinw<sup>97</sup>".  
tn:as "hd: urd:ḡn:xirah ". in:aš yawdd: mm:is nəm:is ,  
yadf . in:as "yiwyid: rb:i dax ma yatšx ". in:as "durt:x

an:zr " in:aš iq:im it:xm:am xas al:ud ižu , ižbdd:  
 taml:alt , in:as "mad r:uhn:š ayu ? mani aš ya trs  
 durt:x ?" in:as "aditrs žar wal:n ." iq:qbxs žar  
 wal:n , im:t , in:as "urš:is:rbah rb:i , ula is:rbh  
 waštin:an ." in:aš iq:im dis , q:imn dis šhr , wis:nat  
 irzm itlata ntsrdan duyis , i:m:r snat sr:yal<sup>98</sup> , is:ny  
 il:is n:m:is t:smyt xyišt , ini nt:a xuyis , r:n snat  
 ntsrdan din žarasn , xas azg:a k:in yr tudrin ald:iq:aṛ  
 "aha baba , aha baba " . k:rnd: q:aḥ vardnasnd:<sup>99</sup> .  
 tawy il:is n:m:is išt ntsrdunt nr:yal , yawy nt:a išt .  
 in:aš ik:r is:ustrast: , yušast: , ižas tamṛa tak:swat:<sup>100</sup> ,  
 tqda thažit: ula qdan yirdn t:mzin ula ntšt dams:as .

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. lxla                     | wilderness                                 |
| 2. izid / izidn/ (pl.)      | ogre                                       |
| 3. hz: ; VH /t:hz:a/        | to carry, to send some<br>one on an errand |
| 4. abrduz(m)/ibrduzn/ (pl.) | rag  |
| 5. imṣi(m)/imṣan/ (pl.)     | beggar                                     |

- |     |   |                               |
|-----|---|-------------------------------|
| 6.  | ħr: ; VH /t:ħr:a/   | to ache                       |
| 7.  | tinzrt(f)/tinzar/ (pl.)<br>Compare A.A. (tignzrt/tignzar) | nostril, nose (pl.)           |
| 8.  | lbħr(m)/lbħur/ (pl.)                                      | sea, ocean                    |
| 9.  | ħuyz ; /t:ħuyuz/ (pl.)                                    | to miss something or somebody |
| 10. | uxlas:  | anyway                        |
| 11. | s:um:r ; VH /s:um:ur/                                     | to be sitting in the sun      |
| 12. | n:iž  | above, over                   |
| 13. | aγil /iγal:n/ (pl.)                                       | arm                           |
| 14. | n:q:lb ; VH /t:n:qlab                                     | to turn over                  |
| 15. | xmž ; VH /t:xmiž /<br>lxmužiyt (f)                        | to stink<br>stench            |
| 16. | timndut(f)/timdwin/ (pl.)                                 | a piece of the loom           |
| 17. | frn ; VH /fr:n/   | to pick teeth, to clean out   |
| 18. | lha ; VH/ lh:a/   | to keep busy, to entertain    |
| 19. | šlqm ; VH /t:šlqam/                                       | to eat up                     |
| 20. | đhr ; VH /đh:r/   | to appear, show up            |
| 21. | l:an:   | maybe                         |
| 22. | š:abab (m)  | a youth                       |

23. ya	already
24. ⵏⴰⵎⴰⵔ ; VH /t:ⵏⴰⵎⴰⵔ/	to tell
25. aq:zin (m) / iq:zin: / taq:zint (f) / tiq:zinin /	dog
26. ilf (f) / ilfan / (pl.)	pig, boar
27. lⵏⵔⵔ (m)	human being
28. ḍziwa (f) / ṭiziwaw / (pl.)	plate (big) for couscous
29. aq:ṛin (m) / iq:ṛin: /	of the same age
30. amlasay (m) mlasay ; VH /t:mlasay/	wrestling to wrestle
31. tašurt (f) / tišurin / (pl.)	ball
32. lxliqiyt (f)	human being, person
33. ṛḅt:	some
34. q:awl ; VH /t:qawal/	to promise
35. ḍur ; VH /t:ḍur/	to turn (around)
36. almu (m) / ilmutn / (pl)	sort of field
37. hdm ; VH /hd:m/	to make fall
38. burz ; VH /t:buruz/	to take pride in
39. tazult (f)	antimony, kohl

40.	ru ; VH /t:ru/	to weep
41.	šd: VH /t:šd:a/	to tie
42.	ašl ; VH /t:ašl/	to recover
43.	lmsm:n (m)	kind of food (strudel-like)
44.	hrtiṭa (f)	kind of food (pancake)
45.	aħdir (m)/iħdirn/ (pl)	big fire
46.	taq:nušt(f)/tiq:nušin/ (pl.)	pot
47.	tadunt (f)	fat (N.)
48.	lqd:id (m)	dried meat
49.	lmhm:sa (f)	noodles
50.	š:riy:a (f)	thin spaghetti
51.	lmaqaruny:a	macaroni
52.	t:rtr ; VH /t:trtur/	to boil
53.	aby:aḥ(m)/lby:aḥn/ (pl.)	bag
54.	xrwḍ ; VH /t:xrwad/	to stir
55.	taṣnžayt(f)/tiṣnžayin (pl)	spoon
56.	lhn:i (m)	henna
57.	r:wy ; VH /t:r:way/	to stir (itself)

- |     |  |                                  |
|-----|--|----------------------------------|
| 58. | f:r / t:f:r/   | to hide                          |
| 59. | ahraraš (m)/ihrarašn/ (pl.)<br>tahrarašt (f)/tihrarašin/ (pl.) | decrepit<br>(for people)         |
| 60. | anršu (m)/inrša/ (pl.)   | dirty (people)                   |
| 61. | aḍḍur (f)/iḍḍurn/ (pl.)  | deaf                             |
| 62. | azḍ ; VH /t:azḍ/   | to reach for, to stretch<br>hand |
| 63. | nət ; VH /t:nət/<br>Compare A.A. snət, VH /snət/               | to show                          |
| 64. | t:abṛun (m)   | playing a trick                  |
| 65. | brd ; VH /t:brid/  | to be cold                       |
| 66. | luḥš (m) /luḥuš/ (pl)  | monster, wild animal             |
| 67. | daḥ ; VH/ t:daḥ/   | to be spoiled, ruined            |
| 68. | lwin (m)   | provisions                       |
| 69. | abṛhuš (m)/ibṛhaš/ (pl.)                                     | greyhound                        |
| 70. | lbaz (m)/itlbaz:/ (pl.)  | falcon or eagle                  |
| 71. | ašt:uf (m)/išḍfan/ (pl.)                                       | ant                              |
| 72. | awtul (m)/awtlan/ (pl.)  | hare                             |
| 73. | s:urf ; VH /s:uruf/  | to step                          |
| 74. | ržiž; VH /t:ržiži/   | to tremble                       |



75.	hnini (m.) hn:a (f.)	dear
76.	šayd ; VH /t:šayad/	to be spare
77.	g:d ; VH/t:g:d/	to be afraid
78.	aγ ; VH /t:aγ/	to light, here: /aγ yid/ = night falls
79.	lxt:ar (pl)	passers-by
80.	z:č ; VH /t:z:č/	to chase
81.	zhr ; VH /zh:r/	to roar
82.	qdč ; VH /qt:č/	to cross
83.	rčb ; VH /rč:b/	to be arranged
84.	srd / VH /sr:d/	to swallow
85.	s:nsr ; VH /s:nsar/	to snatch
86.	ntl ; VH /nt:l/	to hide away
87.	stahl: ; VH / t:stahl:	to deserve
88.	šnf ; VH /šn:f/	to grill
89.	ask:ur (m)/isiran/ (pl.) task:urt(f)/isiran/ (pl.)	partridge
90.	ilf asimud (m)	an imaginary wild animal
91.	žmr ; VH /žm:r/	to hunt

92. afrw ; VH /t:afraw/ to fly
93. hda ; VH /hd:a/ to graze
94. taml:alt(f)/timl:alin/ (pl.) egg
95. awrd on this side of  
awn: beyond
96. s:ɣd ; VH /s:ɣad/ to listen
97. buhbl soul
98. r:yal money, gold
99. ɣard ; VH /t:ɣarad/ to meet with
100. ak:swat (m)/ik:swatn/(m.p.) big  
tak:swat: (f)/tik:swatin/(f.p.)

19.2 hdidan

in:aš il:a wag:l:an , azg:a il:a rb:i fi kul:  
mšan , azg:a il:a idž w:ryaz l:an ɣrs sbca l:wašun .  
in:aš kul:šī l:ays:qratn , kul: arba stal:waht<sup>1</sup> . in:aš  
rahn , rhln<sup>2</sup> , in:aš rahn , alg:urn , alg:urn , mani  
yayah<sup>3</sup> idž , yiniyas "ayb:a bnayi tad:art ad:aq:imx " ,  
ibnayast: in:aš azg:a iq:im idž alast:inin hdidan . zg:a  
yuhl , in:ayas "ayb:a bnayi tad:artinw t:rf ntržu<sup>4</sup> " .

in:as "amm:i daš:ttš tržu ", in:as "hl:i bnayit: maš  
 il:an ". in:aš ibnayast: , ibnayast: stšili<sup>5</sup> din  
 stsm:ar<sup>6</sup> isrdan , swuz:al<sup>7</sup> . in:aš iq:im dis ,  
 maniš atržu , tl:a γrs xas išt iyl:is l:atk:al tšr:h  
 ša ntγyult tl:a γrs . in:aš alit:γma hdidan alasit:haṭ:ar<sup>8</sup> ,  
 alt:itšat , alasit:k:s tayyult din , alt:it:nay , al  
 γatž alts:γuy:u<sup>9</sup> γy:m:as , dax tadrxs tržu , dax irwl ,  
 dax idžit: al γatadf , dax išid γr trbat: . in:aš kul:  
 as: dam:in: . tənq: tržu . idž w:as: in:as "anan:a<sup>11</sup>  
 tržu , b:i taydit:n:m , adb:ix tinw , an:zr wiγayzwarn<sup>12</sup>  
 adižni<sup>13</sup> tin:s , ad:yažm ". tn:as "wax:a ". nt:a  
 xas is tbya at:tt:f . in:aš idžit: azg:a tb:i tin:s ,  
 irah nt:a yažmd: tin:s , iq:im . zg:a tžni tin:s ,  
 tn:as "yal:ah amm:i ". in:as "wahwa ayžnix tinw ,  
 ažmxt:d: ". idž w:as: dax in:as "b:i asγunn:m adb:ix  
 winw . adin xnbr:m<sup>14</sup> q:ah , an:mun q:ah ad:nzdm "  
 tn:as "wax:a ". tb:i win:s , nt:a urib:i ša , irah  
 izdmd: dγya<sup>15</sup> , išidd: . tn:as "yal:ah amm:i ". in:as

"ntš l:azdmxd: wahwa , alšmt:ržix azg:a uhlx ". in:as  
 "anan:a , idž w:as: adn:raħx ɣrtazartn:m adtšx ša ".  
 tn:as "wax:a , arahn: at:tšt ". in:aš ttžit azg:a  
 yuli itazartn:s alit:t: , hašt: trahd: th̄talas<sup>16</sup> , tn:a  
 hl:i ad:ihw:d at:tt:f . in:as "an:ana adamn:žrx ša , tɛdl  
 tazartu ". tn:as "žrid: ". alasd:ig:ar , alasd:ig:ar  
 alud ižu , ižrasd: išt ntmxy:rt<sup>17</sup> itrža w:am:an . in:as  
 "aha nan:a , ahanan:a hašadin tamxy:rt iwint: waman ,  
 dfrt: ". in:aš tqdfrt: . adin xt:d:f:r , idrd: dyya ,  
 yadf tad:artn:s . iwa tk:r twaɛd lmžr:b<sup>18</sup> , tn:as "ha  
 kif whakif . ša ntrbat: dša ntɣyult ayɣri , is:uhli .  
 durt:x , iniyi masyažx ". in:as "ižas al:i<sup>19</sup> uqž:i<sup>20</sup>  
 xtiwa ntɣyult , adxsyaly ind̄d<sup>21</sup>". tn:as "uril:i ša  
 uqž:iɛ bla šk: ". tk:r tut: , tsdiq:s<sup>22</sup> azl:ifn:s ,  
 tamst itɣyult , haš udmawn . in:aš han: hdidan iwaɛd  
 taɣyult . yutu il:is azg:a t:iwtu, inq:z xtɣyult . in:aš  
 hašn: tržu trah ɣrs . nx yasi tamṣ:at:u<sup>23</sup> , tnd̄das tis:n:at ,  
 ihz: tu , tnd̄das tis:nat . iwa tt:ft . in:as "iwa ma

ɣattšt g:ɣzbaru<sup>24</sup>? urdyi ma ɣattšt . ɣasa mani iɣatžt  
 aditɕlft<sup>25</sup>al ɣaq:wix<sup>26</sup>, lud:inin ttšti ". in:aš tk:r ,  
 tžrt itsylt<sup>27</sup> nz:bib dlhum:z , in:aš aliɕl:f . kul:  
 lmr̄t: twar̄t: tinyas "may tžit ?" yinias "anan:a ,  
 hl:i lqd: ntsarut:<sup>28</sup> tamz:yant aydiyzaydn ". tɕidd:  
 dax ɣrs , yinias "iwa anan:a ɕlahal adžx lqd: uzduz<sup>29</sup>".  
 tɕid ɣrs , in:as "iwa ɕurt:x q:wix . ixɕ:am ɕurt:x  
 adtraht ad:tɣrt ilahl:n:m , tdžit il:im adityrs ,  
 tinitas mism ayiɣatž adittž ". iwa tuɕ:a<sup>30</sup> il:is ,  
 tn:as " ad:ay astɣrst , tžbr̄ti<sup>31</sup> tsa , ntš adrahx  
 ad:ɣrx isuyt xaltim , adtšnt aɕdaw asm:ad ". tn:as  
 "wax:a ". in:aš trah ald:tq:ar̄ ilahl:n:s . in:aš ha  
 ɕiša ik:r hdidan iɣrsas , iž tidbližinn:s , iž  
 tašk:ušt:n:s<sup>32</sup>, yird iɕban:n:s , ižbr̄as tsa y:l:is ,  
 ižasnt utšu . ha tržu tiwd̄d: dlahl:n:s , tn:as "il:i ,  
 il:i istɣrst iwɕdaw ?" tn:as "ɣrsxas "! tn:as  
 "imani adin amn:ix žbr̄it ?" tn:as "žbr̄xamt ". in:aš  
 yušas tsa din . in:aš mš t:tžru ilɕafit at:nw tnq:zasd:

g:žiwāl . tn:as "ah .... maymi id:t:nq:az tsayu  
g:žiwāl<sup>33</sup>?" tn:as "ani ak:ids nwal<sup>34</sup>, ns:ur<sup>35</sup> ak:ids  
ak:d uɣdaw , itšt: aym:a am:in t:azizawt ". in:aš ttšt  
t:azizawt . in:aš q:imnt am:in: , frhnt , in:aš q:imnt  
alt:m:rzunt<sup>38</sup> br:a . in:aš in:as "adrahx aym:a adlɣ:bx  
xtad:art uɣdaw ". tn:as "g:ur ayl:i , g:ur ". in:as  
"adasix ayu iyl:is nxalti ". tn:as "asit: ayl:i, asit:"  
in:aš yasit: alafl:a ntad:art , infdt:<sup>37</sup>, in:aš alasntd:it:ini  
"acaw!acaw!acaw! td:in itšin il:is , acaw!acaw!acaw!  
td:in itšin il:is ". in:aš ik:sd: tidbližin , ik:sd:  
tišnbaš ižrasntnt . q:imnt als:ɣuy:unt , in:asnt "atihyaḍ  
atihyaḍ , isurts:in:t maɣatžnt adn:uḍix adm:tx ?" n:antas  
"maɣanž ?" in:asnt "sirnt zdmnt adin q:aḥ stl:ant ,  
tšɣ:ln̄t lɣafit itad:art , at:tš lɣafit tad:art adn:uḍix .  
ayu ašnt dyi ɣaybr:dn ul ". in:aš raḥnt q:aḥ awintd:  
isɣarn<sup>39</sup>, dfɛnt<sup>40</sup> lɣafit itad:art . k:ud it:ihma  
lh̄did , inf:stid<sup>41</sup> nt:a swaman zidaxl , azg:awhlnt .  
in:asnt "iwa tẓrint , iwa mludufntd: ifas:n , aha tžntd:  
ddd<sup>42</sup> aṭ:uḍa tad:art , adn:uḍix ". in:aš az:ln̄td:

q:ahntnt , ndht<sup>43</sup> lhid , m:tnt q:ah , yusnt<sup>44</sup> , iwa

şafi , tqda tħažit: ula qdan yirdn t:mzin ula ntšt dams:as .

1. tal:waht ; VH /tal:wahin/ (pl.) writing board
2. rhl ; VH /t:rhal/ to move
3. ahl ; VH /t:ahl/ to be tired
4. tržu (f) ogress
5. tsili (f) horse-shoe
6. sm:r ; VH /t:sm:ar/ to pound
7. uz:al (m) iron
8. hat:r ; :VH/ t:hat:ar/ to meet with (intentionally)
9. s:γuy: ; VH /s:γuy:u/ to shout, scream
10. enq ; VH /en:q/ to get tired
11. nan:a grandma (term of address)
12. zwar ; VH /zg:ar/ to be first
13. žni ; VH /žn:i/  
Compare A.A. /gnu/ ; VH /gn:u/ to sew
14. brm ; VH /br:m/ to braid

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 15. dɣya  | quickly                              |
| 16. htal ; VH /t:ht:al/                                       | to lie in wait for                   |
| 17. amxy:r ; / imxy:rn/ (pl.)<br>tamxy:rt ; /timxy:rin/ (pl.) | the best                             |
| 18. lmžr:b (m) /itlmzr:b/ (pl)                                | A man supposed to<br>have experience |
| 19. al:i (m)  | brain                                |
| 20. aqž:i° (m) /iqž:i°n/ (pl)                                 | scruffy                              |
| 21. ndd ; VH /nt:d/   | to stick                             |
| 22. d:iq:s ; VH /t:diq:is/                                    | to burst                             |
| 23. tams:at:(f)/timsdin/ (pl.)                                | thigh                                |
| 24. aɣzbur (m)/iɣzbar/ (pl.)                                  | thin branch                          |
| 25. °lf ; VH /°l:f/   | to feed (esp. animals)               |
| 26. q:wa ; VH /t:iqwa/  | to be healthy                        |
| 27. asyl (m)/isyln/ (pl.)                                     | big basket to keep<br>the grain      |
| 28. tsarut:(f)/tisura/ (pl.)                                  | needle                               |
| 29. azduz(m)/izduzn / (pl.)                                   | pestle                               |
| 30. uš:a ; VH /t:uš:a/  | to advise, guard against             |
| 31. žbr ; VH /žb:r/   | to keep                              |



32. ašk:uš(m) /išk:ušn/ raised up hair
33. ažiwal(m) / ižiwaln/ lap
34. walf ; VH /t:walaf/ to be used to
35. s:ar ; VH /s:ar/ to share  
Compare: A.A. /š:ar/ ; VH /t:š:ar/
36. rzu ; VH /rz:u/ to look for  
(Here: to delouse, search for lice)
37. nfd ; VH /nf:d/ to fling
38. ašnbuš(m)/išnbaš/ (pl) head cover (funny term)
39. asγar (m) /isγarn/ (pl.) wood
40. dfs VH /df:s/ to push
41. nfs VH /nf:s/ to sprinkle
42. d:d:d:d stamp, stamp, stamp
43. ndh ; VH /nt:h/ to bump against
44. γus ; VH /t:γus/ to burn

19.3 tγat: dwuš:n

il:a wag:l:an , alud il:a rb:i kul: mšan , alud il:a  
idž wr:yaz , ik:r idž w:as: in:a adirḥl . iwa asidi ,  
alig:ur alig:ur al idž w:ansa , taḥlas tγat: , idžit:  
dis . zix ant:a dṭ:rf ntad:art w:uš:n ayt:idži . tk:r

tɣaɛː , tɛna taɛ:art , n:anaš tq:im l:atl:a sd:ist ,  
 tq:im alt:arw , in:aš tarw tišniwin<sup>1</sup> . l:at:ɣima al  
 s:bah , tsrɛ . mš tsrɛ al tamd:it , traɛd: al  
 taɛ:art , tinias "ayis:i ayis:i , rzmnti lbab adn:adfx  
 aɣi itif:atin<sup>2</sup> , aman itanɓuzin<sup>3</sup> tuža<sup>4</sup> it:aš:awin<sup>5</sup> " ,  
 rzmntas lbab , dax t:dnt<sup>6</sup> , sunt , tšnt tuža , dax  
 žn:tas , išt s:a , išt sa ald:yali was: , tk:r ,  
 traɛ dax tsrɛ . dax tɛidd: ɣr tmd:it: .  
 in:aš iraɛd: idž w:as: wuš:n , ibd:d: sidž y:iri<sup>7</sup>  
 muzur , in:asnt "ayis:i ayis:i , aɣi itif:atin , aman  
 itanɓuzin , tuža itaš:awin , rzmnti lbab adn:adfx " .  
 n:antas "iɛin:x, iɛin:x, ulid: im:atnx ayin: ." iwa iq:im  
 azg:a iɛnq: , iraɛ abridn:s . iwa tamd:it: tɛidd: tɣaɛː ,  
 rzmntas lbab . dax s:bah traɛ at:srɛ , iraɛd: wuš:n  
 aldisntitšat azg:a iɛnq: , n:antas "iɛin:x, iɛin:x ,  
 ulid: im:atnx ayin: ." . ik:r wuš:n iwaɛd lmžr:b , in:as  
 "hakif uha kif , mism aɣažx ?" . in:as "sir ɣasa

axbu išďfan , aha tm:t dis slčžb , adašt:adfn išďfan ,  
 adašt:f:γn , xas al asγayž yiri am win tγat: " . in:as  
 " wax:a " . in:aš irah alit:raa axbu išďfan , alud  
 tyuf , im:t slčžb , alast:adfn išďfan alast:f:γn , alud  
 asičid wawal am win tγat: , irahd: , in:asnt adin  
 asntin:a , rzmntas , inq:zxsnt , isrt:nt . nt:a  
 trwhd: , altq:ar, altq:ar azg:a tčnq: , trz lbab ,  
 tafn: walu , altzq:a<sup>9</sup>, altzq:a qah urdžni alud d:yuli  
 was: tčid tsrh dax altamd:it , dax trwhd: ~~dax~~ tns tzq:a.  
 dutšan:s, trah γr wadžarn:s , uš:n , tn:as "ačm:i t:alb  
 čli " . in:as "nčam " . tn:as "af:γd: adašinix " .  
 in:as "adžiyi zix , l:aq:arnid: ša inužiwn mayibyan ,  
 mayiurn " . nt:a is it:ğ: lγis<sup>10</sup> . dax tq:im , tq:im ,  
 tq:im tn:as "af γ ačm:i t:alb čli " . in:as "arža  
 ha l:as:uxasn " . nt:a is ims:l<sup>11</sup> tiš:aw . dax tq:im  
 tq:im tn:as "af:γ ačm:i t:alb čli " . in:as "arža  
 hahy:atn l:as:n at:ay " . nt:a istnt is:γara<sup>12</sup> . dax tγras ,  
 in:as "hahy:atn l:at:t:n t:ažin " . nt:a istnt is:qud:ud<sup>13</sup> .

in:aš tq:im tas:art , if:γd: alt:msxlan xas azg:a  
 strzu tiš:aw , trzas tiš:aw , tadrxs , tut: γr d:ist  
 tbčžt<sup>14</sup> , uđantd: z:is is:is , tq:im tq:ablnt , sk:rnt .  
 nt:at: tq:ablnt , tẓr snat ntzlmm:a<sup>15</sup> lat:m:nyant , tut  
 išt išt tsk:rt: , traḥ tawid: ša ntuža , ts:šduyast:<sup>16</sup> ,  
 tk:r trwl . nt:at traḥ tiwid: adin ntuža ts:šdu: iys:is ,  
 yašlasnt usk:r . iwa in:aš q:imnt alsr:hnt ak:d im:atsnt ,  
 alt:arw xas azg:a tẓu aq:dič<sup>17</sup> ak:swat . idž w:as iwačdt:d:  
 babas , in:as "rwaḥ " , tn:as "lalal " , lud:inin: zg:a  
 r:zx tdžimi da , durt:x zg:a g:urx g:qdič iys:i ayitbyam " .  
 in:aš alt:itšat alud z:is ičnq: , irah in:aš iq:im alud  
 ižu , irḥld: γrs , ibna dis tadart: tis:nat: . l:ayk:al  
 umisa isr:h ak:ids , nitnti walu , l:adamnt<sup>18</sup> xidis<sup>19</sup> .  
 iwa tqda tḥažit: ula qđan yirdn t:mzin ul:a ntšt dams:as .

1. išniwn (m) /tišniwin/ (f) twins
2. if: (m)/if:an/ udder, breast
3. anḥuz (m)/anḥuzn/ (pl.) chuck
4. tuža (f) grass

5. iš(m)/aš:awn/ (pl.)	horn
6. t:d ; VH /t:t:d/	to suckle
7. iri(m)/irawn/ (pl.)	voice, neck
8. iʕi~ iʕinw	I refuse
9. zʕa ; VH /zq:a/	to bleat
10. lʕis (m)	mud
11. msl ; VH /ms:l/	to apply, e.g. apply paint
12. q:ar; VH /t:ʕara/	to be dry
13. q:ud:d ; VH /t:qud:ud/	to burn, be grilled
14. bʕž ; VH /bʕ:ž/	to burst, puncture
15. tazlmm:uyt (f) /tizlmm:a/ (pl)	lizard
16. šdu ; VH /št:u/	to smell
17. aq:diʕ(m)/iq:diʕn/ (pl.)	group, flock
18. dam ; VH /t:dām/	to be always
19. idis(m)/idisan/ (pl.)	side



## 20.1

Lexical Differences

tamaziyt tžu išt maša kul: taq:bilt swawaln:s .

am durt:x mš asn:ix azl:if i ša wyusi nxd: ša zğ:adžar:n:sn

imkn adašyini "mag:žin azl:if ? urs:inx mag:žin azl:if " .

alasyatinit ixf yiniyaš "xyar " . l:an imaziyn din muřatinit

azl:if, it:s<sup>1</sup> yiniaš "mag:žin azl:if ?" alasyatinit swawal

ntmurtn:s<sup>2</sup> ixf , nxd: agay:u , nxd: uxsas , nxd: aqš:a ,

nxd: aqr:u .

iwa ixf ařlas kul:ši l:at:inin ixf , ayt yusi . . .

aq:r:u , l:at:inint zm:ur , agay:u l:at:inint isusiyn ,

uxsas ayt řt:a , ayt hđid:u . . . axšaš imřmušn .

yilin ismawn it:bd:aln<sup>3</sup> zitq:bilt yr tq:bilt am

ibuš:ar . řbřt: l:asnt:inin ibuš:ar , řbřt: l:asnt:inin

askarn , řbřt: as:šar: .

am lhažt tawhđiyt<sup>4</sup> řbřt: l:ast:inin ředl , tfulki ,

tzil , trwa , thla . iwa ředl l:at:inint ayt sřruš:n ,

trwa ayt řt:a , tfulki isusiyn , tzil ayt yusi .

abr:an kul:idž l:asit:inj ism:s . ayt sřruš:n l:atinin

abr:an , ayt yusi l:at:inin abx:an , isusiyn l:at:inin  
asg:an. ilin idin it:inin abršan , aḥrḥdan , abx:uš ,  
aḥbšan ntšni uryn:x fadma tl:a yn:x mam:a adin munt:ini  
araḥ , sir , l:ast:inin imaziyn dnin d:u , zayd .  
ul:int:ini l:ayt:d:u; l:ant:ini l:ayg:ur .

dax l:an yismawn am yism uyis , dusrdun , dufunas ,  
duyyul , t:ažmart din imbd:aln .

ntšni ayt syruš:n l:ant:ini yis , ayt sy:aš l:at:inin  
iyis . l:an ilqbayl l:anžiri idin asit:inin ayis . mš  
tn:it iwsusi yis , nxd: ayis , nxd: iyis , urit:fham  
alasyatinit akidar . ulad lqbayl l:anžiri , bḍun  
g:awaln:sn . l:an idin asit:inin iwiyis aḥudiw , l:an  
idin asit:inin aždun , ilin idin asit:inin agmar .  
ntšni yn:x ažmar dša uyis aws:ar<sup>5</sup>.

adin mu nt:ini tažmart , l:ast:inin ayt sy:aš  
tagmart , alast:inin isusiyn tagmart .

am ufunas , ntšni yn:x ismn:s afunas . ulad ayt  
warayn , dr:if afunas ast:inin . l:an dax idin asit:inin  
azgr, ilin idin asit:inin ayug . isusiyn l:at:ininas izgr ,



siwa funas .

imaziyn , dišlhiyn nsus , dirifiyn , q:ah

l:at:inin ayyul . ismu uryrnsn imfr:aq: maša yr iqbayliyn

l:an idin asit:inin aħwir . mštn:it iša wmaziγ aħwir

nxd: dab urš:it:fham walayn:i aħwir , d:ab , duyyul

kul:ši didž y:ism . siwa dax l:at:ininas izid . am

usrdun dax kul:ši l:ayt:iniyas asrdun maša tl:a am tqbilt

nbni mnašr yr iq:bayliyn l:at:ininas abyli .

am uq:zin , ntšni l:ant:iniyas aq:zin, ayt sy:aš

dayt myilt l:atininas aydi ulan:tšni l:ant:ini aydi maša

il:a γn:x ulad uq:zin . iwa šafi .

1. t:s ; VH /ds:/ to laugh
2. tamurt (f)/timizar/ (pl.) country, earth
3. bd:l ; VH /t:bd:al/ to change
4. awhdi(m)/iwhdiyn/ (pl) good  
tawhdiyt(f)/tiwhdiyin/ (pl)
5. aws:ar(m)/iws:ura iws:arn/(pl) old  
taws:art(f)/tiws:ura tiws:arin/ (fem.)  
(pl)

20.2

tiḥiža 'Riddles'

1. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: lul:u g:ḥfuḥ .
2. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: aly aḥiša k:sid: ayin: .
3. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: may tšbḥt ayl:is uḥl:id amr tlit taq:mut:
4. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: iṣbḥ ul:iyt:watša .
5. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n iṣbḥ ml:i it:wuḍuf .
6. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n il:a ylmart il:a ylxla .
7. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: zg:ad:a daysum zg:afl:a dixsan .
8. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: ay tzyrt: aḥli urtiwt: taḥlalt iwyḡyul .
9. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: tk:u ḥisan, tk: bisan, tk: mani wrt:k:n  
iysan: .
10. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: tk:u musa tk:u aḥisa tk:u mani urt:k:n  
iysan .
11. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: ik:ud awn:aš iq:lbš .
12. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: šan šwi ušt:uf yuzin alym .
13. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: aq:diḥinw w:ul:i izdin susḡun azg:ay .
14. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: ismḡinw yuḥ h zy tzlut: .
15. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: tašniftinw isn:dn xumadl .
16. - ḥaḥiḥašt:n: dḡiwanw din di ul:i tḥt:n xas irum:in  
dwudayn .

17. ھاژیخاښت:n: iwdnt iyZR stħant
18. ھاژیخاښت:n: taždirTinw bu sbca ixba .
19. ھاژیخاښت:n: tndu urtbzy
20. ھاژیخاښت:n: yurw b:x m:l: yaru m:l: b:x
21. ھاژیخاښت:n: yusy wim:utn wid:rn, yasi wid:rn wim:utn,  
 yasy wim:utn wid:rn, yasy wid:rn wim:utn,  
 yasy wim:utn wid:rn .

Vocabulary

tħazit: (m) /tiħiža/ (pl)	story (here: "riddle")
ھاži	to tell riddles
ini tiħiža	to tell stories
ھاžix	I say a riddle
ھاژیخاښت:n:	I tell you (m.s.) a riddle ( /-n:/ denotes remoteness i.e. directional)
1. lul:u	nursery language de- noting something cute
2. k:s ; VH /t:k:s/	take out
3. sbħ ; VH /t:sbħ/	to be pretty

taq:mut: (f) /tiq:ma/ (pl)	little mouth; kiss
4. t:watš	to be eaten (passive VH /t:watsa/)
5. ml:i	if (impossible) must be followed by VH
t:f ; VH /t:t:f/ t:wuduf	to catch VH passive of /t:f/
6. l◀mart (f) lsla (m)	inhabited places wilderness
7. zg:ad:a (< /zy ad:a/)	from the bottom
aysum (m) zg:afl:a (</zy afl:a/) ixsan (/iγs/ sg)	meat from above bones
8. ay zyrt ; VH /t:zirit/ awd ; VH /t:awd/ urtiw:t tažlalt (f) /tižulal/ (pl)	Exclamatory expression to be tall, long to reach you (s) did not reach tail
9. tk:u hisan and bisan	it (f.) passes don't have any actual meaning; they are just salt fillers in the rythm of the riddle.
10. lysan	horses
11. awn:aš q:lb; VH /ql:b/	from behind you to turn over

- |                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 12. ašt:uf (m) /išdfan/ (pl)    | ant                                |
| azy ; VH /t:azy/                | to skin an animal                  |
| alɣm (m) /ilɣman/ (pl)          | camel                              |
| 13. aq:diɣ (m) /iq:diɣn/        | flock                              |
| ul:i (fp)                       | sheep                              |
| zdy ; VH /zd:y/                 | to tie, link                       |
| asɣun (m) /isɣwan/ (pl)         | rope                               |
| 14. aʒl ; VH /t:aʒl/            | to hang                            |
| tazlut: (f) /tizla/ (pl)        | braid                              |
| 15. tašnift (f) /tišnifin/ (pl) | loaf                               |
| sn:d ; VH /t:sn:ad/             | to lean                            |
| xumadl                          | on the cheek - here:<br>on a slope |
| 16. dziwa (f) /tiziwaw/         | platter (for couscous)             |
| din                             | which                              |
| di                              | in                                 |
| ul:i                            | does not                           |
| tt:n                            | they eat                           |
| xas                             | only                               |
| irum:in                         | Christians                         |
| udayn                           | Jews                               |
| 17. iɣzr (m) /isaf:n/           | river                              |
| sthant                          | they (f.) are shy                  |
| 18. taʒdirt (f) /tiʒdirin/      | log                                |
| axbu (m) /ixba/                 | hole ( pl. /ixba/)                 |
| 19. ndu ; VH /nt:u/             | cross a river                      |
| bzy ; VH /bz:y/                 | get wet                            |

## A Course in Spoken Tamazight

20. b:x (<abx:an)	black
m:l: (<aml:al)	white
21. asy	to carry
m:ut	to die
wim:utn	a dead thing
d:r ; VH/t:d:r/	to live
wid:rn	a living thing

### Answers

1.	lɛafit	Fire
	Fire is a nice glittering thing	
2.	tamšt:	Comb
	A comb takes dirt off the head	
3.	taml:alt	Egg
	He sees the egg as very pretty and wished it had a mouth.	
4.	s:abun	Soap
	Soap is pretty but one can't eat it.	
5.	ifiɣr	Snake
	A snake is beautiful if one can catch it.	
6.	aq:zin dwuš:n	The dog and the jackal
	Dogs are jackals of cities, towns and villages.	
7.	izɣran (/azq:ur/)	Wooden beams
	Wooden beams appear in the roof of a building like bones	
8.	abrid	Road
	This shows how long roads (trails) are.	
9.	tar:sast	Bullet
	Bullets pierce everywhere, even in places where horses can't run.	
10.	tit:	the eye
	The eye can look everywhere.	

11. anud:m sleep  
One may fall asleep without noticing it.
12. aluq:id a match  
One match can cause a fire.
13. tiymas the teeth  
Teeth are white, linked together by the gums.
14. azitun abr:an black olives  
Olives hang down from trees.
15. amz:ur the ear  
The ear is on the side of the head.
16. rndan Ramadan  
Moslems are not supposed to eat during the month of Ramadan
17. s:b:ayd shoes  
People usually take their shoes off before crossing a river.
18. azl:if the head  
There are seven openings in the head.
19. tili a shadow  
A person's shadow can't get wet.
20. haq:ar t:ml:altn:s a raven and its egg  
A (black) raven lays (white) eggs.
21. amnay xuyis a horse man  
[here: the iron shoes (dead) carry the body of the horse (alive) on which the saddle (dead) is put; the rider (alive) (riding on the saddle) carries a gun (dead) out of which fire (alive) comes].

20.3

izlan

SONGS

I. Refrain

at:rbhd adur tk:at: lbab

awi il:a ubrid išyl maytrid

Song

awa ayulinw ayasy:ad  
ata m:anw afud urɣuri yl:i

awa nufa timl:alin swas:  
atam:anw afad<sub>n:m</sub> t sasy:a .

awa niɣ iy:is niɣ asrdun  
ata m:anw šuf abr:m l:awqat .

awa ygrid z:man iwɣyul  
ata m:anw igrid uɣyul iwašal .

Vocabulary

rbh; VH/t:rbah/	to succeed (here 'please')
w:t ; VH /k:at/	to hit
šɣl	to be busy
ul (m) /ulawn/ (pl)	heart
asy:ad (m) /isy:adn/	hunter
ata	vocative (fem.)
m:anw	my mother
afud (m) /ifad:n/ (pl)	knee (pl.:/ifad:n/)
tamlalt (f) /timl:alin/	gazelle (pl. /timlalin/)
swas:	during daytime
afad	a wishful form, optative
t:sasy:a (f)	a kind of gun
ny ; VH/t:nay/	to ride



asrdun (m) /isrdan/ (pl)	mule
šuf	look ! (<Arabic)
gr ; VH /g:ar/	to throw
ašal (m)	the earth

II. Refrain

axuyanw hatin ləarnš aymanw

axuyanw iq:ima diyi .

Song

k:iyd tama nəari sly iwtbir awi

yas imuray usmun asit:uhw:al awi .

sal šwi saly awaydriy awi

mɣar iyz:if ubrid aər:im tyit: awi .

urdat:uyag:a lhn:a yas iwtbir awi

uma yahaq:ar maniyas it:dhar .

Vocabulary

axuyanw	oh brother !
diyi	in me
tama	near, by
sly	I heard
atbir (m) /itbir:/ (pl)	pigeon (pl. /itbir:/)
amary (m)	love
asmun (m) /ismun:/	companion
hw:l ; VH /t:hw:al/	to be worried

asit:uhw:al (passive)	with which he is worried
waydriγ	love, darling
iγz:if	it is long
tyit:	you are it (<tyidt)
urdat:uyag:a	it is not being done
uma	but
ahaq:ar: (m) /ihaq:ar:/	raven
maniyas	where to him

III.

iya wsmun am; ɣari war ibrdan  
win:a urtis:in: dadasd:un iɣban: .

atamd:ut: l:mskin adur g:an  
adur sɣawan tamara suq:ždim .

abu lhwa t:awy idan adur g:an  
han ahr:az ak:yan:ay adaš dɣun .

amur tgim idmar:inw t:iydrin  
adas bnuy iwmdak:l žaž g:ul .

iga usmun aγbalu gγ tirg:in  
in:aš umazan nk: adgγ aylzim .

ayasmun aγd:ar: ityal:an s:adat  
isul ṛb:i ak: is:iwd igar amazir .

asmin (m)	beloved one
war	without
dadasd:un	they will go to him
adurg:an	do not sleep!.
tamara (f)	misery
aq:ždim (m)	sitting
t:awy	energeting imperative 'bring ! do bring!'
ahr:az (m) /ihr:azn/	the one who prevents (probably a husband or relative)
ak:yan:ay	he will see you
adašd:un	they will sue you
amur (m)	a wishful form
admr (m) /idmar:/ (pl)	breast (pl./idmar:/)
tad:art (f)/tiydrin tad:rwin/(pl)	houses
žadž	inside
ul (m) /ulawn/ (pl)	heart
g:ul	in the heart
aybalu (m)	spring
tarwa (f) /tirg:in/ (pl)	canal
amazon (m) /imazan:/	messenger
aylzim (m) /iylzimm/	pick axe
s:iyd(pl. /s:adat/)	saint
awd (caus. /s:iwd/)	to reach
gar	here: 'bad', 'unimportant'

IV.

aw ha waw k:inγ umarg<sup>1</sup> ʕad awa  
ayasmun<sup>2</sup> ayn:a kižran if:γ digi  
mšrdul<sup>3</sup> am:i tnbda slmizan<sup>4</sup>

awaydiga rb:i dizm<sup>5</sup> adit:d:u g:id  
ak:idyasy zitisin:š<sup>6</sup> awa ynhub:a<sup>7</sup>

ayasmuninw han: amut:ln:k<sup>8</sup> if:γ digi  
awa tgit tams:umant<sup>9</sup> igit: umazan<sup>10</sup>

ad:ay slγ iwawal usmuninw sadžar<sup>11</sup>  
tamzi<sup>12</sup> ayma tawla<sup>13</sup> n:a wrdigi .

- |                               |                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. amarg (m)                  | love              |
| 2. asmun (m) /ismun:/ (pl)    | beloved           |
| 3. mšrdul (m)                 | pain              |
| 4. lmizan (m) /itlmizan/ (pl) | scales            |
| 5. izm (m)/izmawn/(pl.)       | lion              |
| 6. tisi (f)                   | couch             |
| 7. inhub:a                    | beloved           |
| 8. amut:l (m)                 | guilt, punishment |
| 9. tams:umant (f)             | warning           |
| 10. amazan (m)/imazan:/ (pl.) | messenger         |
| 11. adžar (m)/adžarn/ (pl.)   | neighbor          |
| 12. amz VH/t:amz/             | to catch          |
| 13. tawla (f)                 | fever             |

V.

aymanw ayma aymawn anš:ar<sup>1</sup> axubn:k<sup>2</sup>ima yaṭ:r:h<sup>3</sup>walutata k:iy afl:a nṭy:alin uhr:az<sup>4</sup>altsuyuy<sup>5</sup> mays yifitžr:bt<sup>6</sup> amarg<sup>7</sup> atafq:irt<sup>8</sup>mad is tt:ut alay<sup>9</sup> nari<sup>10</sup>

adurt:inin mēna awaynhub:anw

an:bdu<sup>11</sup> stmara<sup>12</sup>wn:a dax ira wul wax:a adt:rx<sup>13</sup>

adasnak; ayn:a yt:ini

- |           |                               |                        |
|-----------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. š:ar   | VH/t:š:ar/                    | to share               |
| 2. axub   | ixuban/ (pl.)                 | pain                   |
| 3. aṭ:r:h | (m)                           | rest                   |
| 4. ahr:az | (m)/ihr:azn/ (pl.)            | jealous                |
| 5. sɣuy   | ; VH/sɣuyu/                   | to scream              |
| 6. žr:b   | ; VH/t:žr:ab/                 | to experience          |
| 7. amarg  | (m)                           | love                   |
| 8. afq:ir | (m)/afq:irn/ (pl.)            | old person             |
|           | tafq:irt (f)/tifq:irin/ (pl.) |                        |
| 9. alay   | (m)                           | action of ascending    |
| 10. rari  | (m)                           | mountain               |
| 11. bdu   | ; VH/bṭ:u/                    | to divide, to separate |

- |     |                  |        |
|-----|------------------|--------|
| 12. | tamara (m)       | pain   |
| 13. | t:r ; VH /t:t:r/ | to ask |

VI.

mš iy<sup>1</sup>ma<sup>1</sup> ba<sup>2</sup>ada<sup>2</sup>hamanu  
 in:ayi w<sup>3</sup>dbib<sup>3</sup> amanu xas z:in<sup>4</sup> de<sup>4</sup>ari  
 irayi wul ab<sup>5</sup>hir<sup>5</sup> i<sup>5</sup>yrm urtgix  
 twalf<sup>6</sup> inw a<sup>7</sup>ra<sup>7</sup>ca<sup>7</sup> ntizizut<sup>8</sup>  
 s:ny isuril:i r:bh<sup>9</sup> dik: awaydrix  
 xas is urufiy maya hz:ay<sup>10</sup> g:ul  
 ma<sup>11</sup>d agrtil<sup>11</sup> usmun ayul aytgit  
 dak:atn yifi ymura<sup>12</sup> gnak: aq:ždim<sup>13</sup>  
 k:an n:igi<sup>14</sup> yhm:amn<sup>15</sup> day zrin  
 am:i wrdak:at<sup>16</sup> am:i gi<sup>16</sup> adryal<sup>16</sup>  
 bt:u<sup>17</sup> wsmuninw am:i b:iy idudan  
 tarkyaš<sup>18</sup> alhm:<sup>19</sup> makun it:g:an  
 tas:a<sup>20</sup>t uqš:r<sup>20</sup> adas nš aq:ždim<sup>21</sup>  
 wn:a širan alhm: ask:a igiš .

- |    |  |               |
|----|--|---------------|
| 1. | ema ; VH /t:i:ema/   | to be blind   |
|    | ema ; VH /em:a/  | to blind      |
| 2. | ba <sup>2</sup> ada <sup>2</sup> (m)   | love          |
| 3. | ad <sup>3</sup> bib <sup>3</sup> (m)/id <sup>3</sup> bib <sup>3</sup> n/ (pl.) | doctor        |
| 4. | z:in (m)   | beauty        |
| 5. | ab <sup>5</sup> hir (m)/ib <sup>5</sup> hirn/ (pl.)                            | garden        |
| 6. | walf ; VH /t:walf/   | to be used to |

7. arasa (m)	watching
8. tizizut (f)	greenness
9. r: bḥ (m)	usefulness, gain
10. hz:a ; VH /t:hz:a/	to carry
11. agrtil(m)/igrtal/ (pl.)	mat
12. amur (m)/imura / (pl.)	protection, exhortation
13. aq:ždim (m)	sitting
14. n:ig	over
15. ahm:am(m)/ihm:amn/ (pl.)	pigeon
16. adryal(m)/idryaln/ (pl.)	blind
17. bt:u (m)	separation
18. tark	to let
19. lhm: (m)	concern, anxiety
20. aq:s:r (m)	fun

## VII.

tudrt iwal:nn:k awid: ḥšuma<sup>1</sup>  
 ur rdiy<sup>2</sup> aditgt aya .

uritd:i tit: nk:in yr awd yuk:  
 ad:a wrd:iḥadr<sup>3</sup>wn:a riγ iwgraw

sγiy stit: urql:ibγ siḍudan  
 ziy atayat: γas ilis<sup>4</sup> aytga

mami tt:iniγ yif at:q:im g:ul  
 adits:γus<sup>5</sup> iḥban: afl:a ydmar:<sup>6</sup>

muγays:ufuγ wul ag:u<sup>7</sup> γr br:a  
adi hḃšun: iḃban: afl:a ydmar:

tuy lḃafit g:iminw tay g:ul  
usiγd: at:as<sup>9</sup> siminw dayzwi<sup>10</sup>

yiγ anbgi sasmun aray is:xdam  
urdik:s walu nḃaḃaḃ ira lhmum

x:išt:<sup>11</sup> ayul haš ayn:a tzrit  
l:ig art:abaḃt<sup>12</sup> wn:a γayiyzrin .

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. hšuma                   | shame                     |
| 2. rḃu                     | to be satisfied, to bless |
| 3. ḃadr ; VH /t:ḃaḃar/     | to be present             |
| 4. ilis (m)                | fleece                    |
| 5. γus ; VH /t:γus/        | to burn                   |
| 6. idmar: (mp)             | chest                     |
| 7. ag:u (m)                | steam                     |
| 8. aγ ; VH /t:aγ /         | to light                  |
| 9. aḃ:as (m)/aḃ:asn/ (pl.) | bucket                    |
| 10. zwi                    | to dry                    |
| 11. x:išt:                 | you got it!               |
| 12. tabḃ ; VH /t:abaḃ/     | to follow                 |



## VIII.

awra saxam at:gnt ayma

awra saxam urkik:at uzar<sup>1</sup> i'ari

mur imq:ur ž:wa<sup>2</sup> n:a giγ itbrat:<sup>3</sup>

at:akm<sup>4</sup>al:irzm γifi waydrix

at:ir<sup>5</sup> lhur:<sup>6</sup>urdašinq: aq:d yuk:

urdayt:isin hd: mani dayg:an

am:a riγ adas ariγ lužab<sup>7</sup> iwaydrix

t:ut:in z:gi imt:awn<sup>8</sup> hy:dγas

adindm<sup>9</sup> wn:a ynγan azgza ydmar:

mad is uril:i lγlmi<sup>10</sup> γr agz:ar<sup>11</sup>

al:iyd yusi l'enzi l:atiz:nza .

- |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. azar (m)                    | sunshine, dog days                  |
| 2. ž:wa (m) /idž:wa/ (pl)      | envelope                            |
| 3. tabrat: (m)/tibratin/ (pl.) | letter                              |
| 4. akm; VH /t:akm/             | to enter                            |
| 5. t:ir (m)/t:yur/ (pl.)       | bird (here /t:ir<br>lhur: = falcon) |
| 6. lhur: (m)                   | pure                                |
| 7. lužab(m)/lužabat/ (pl.)     | reply                               |
| 8. imt:awn (pl.)               | tears                               |
| 9. ndm ; VH /t:ndam/           | to regret                           |

- |                             |           |
|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 10. lɣlmi (m)               | mutton    |
| 11. agz:ar(m)/igz:ar:/ (pl) | butcher   |
| 12. lɛnzi (m)               | goat meat |

IX.

awa tɛɣiti awa tɛmiti ad:ud ayma ɣuri

awa yalit:az:la<sup>1</sup> lk:ar al:ig asiwɔ was: is:ig:<sup>2</sup> ixɣ im:rbiɣ<sup>3</sup> hah

awa alit:awɣ<sup>4</sup> uhm:am al:ig asiwɔ was: is:ig: ixɣ iluɣur<sup>5</sup> hah

awa ɣawn<sup>6</sup> arb:i wn:a miɣran<sup>7</sup> irumin adirz isl:i<sup>8</sup> slmaɣ:a<sup>9</sup>

awa yabu t:aksi<sup>10</sup> snyi tamazirta urdigs mag:t:ɣima ša .

snya sazru<sup>11</sup> snya simuz:ar<sup>12</sup> ɣin l:uħ<sup>13</sup> is iga lɛasima<sup>14</sup> .

- |                                 |                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. az:l ; VH /t:azl:a/          | to run              |
| 2. s:ig:                        | to fall off a slope |
| 3. m:rbiɣ                       | name of river       |
| 4. awɣ ; VH /t:awɣ/             | to peck (for birds) |
| 5. luɣur / luɣur/ (pl.)         | precipice           |
| 6. ɣawn ; VH /t:ɣawan/          | to help             |
| 7. ɣr ; VH /q:ar/               | to call             |
| 8. isl:i(m)/isl:iwn/            | stone               |
| 9. lmaɣ:a(f)/lmaɣ:at/ (pl.)     | sledge hammer       |
| 10. t:aksi (f) /t:aksiyat/ (pl) | taxi                |
| 11. azru                        | name of a town      |
| 12. imuz:ar                     | name of a town      |
| 13. ɣin l:uħ                    | name of a town      |
| 14. lɛasima                     | capital city        |

**V. Glossaries**

## V. Glossaries from Ayt Ayache and Ayt Seghrouchen

The alphabetical order in which these two glossaries are compiled is:

a b b: d d: đ đ: f f: g g: ğ ğ: h ḥ ḥ:  
i k k: ḳ ḳ: l l: ḷ ḷ: m m: n n: q q: q̣ q̣:  
r r: ṛ ṛ: s s: ṣ ṣ: š š: t t: ṭ ṭ: u w w:  
x x: x̣ y y: z z: ž ž: ʿ γ γ: γ .

The abbreviations used in these glossaries are the following:

n	noun
s	singular
p	plural
f	feminine
fs	feminine singular
fp	feminine plural
m	masculine
ms	masculine singular
mp	masculine plural
VH	habitual form of the verb
I.O.	indirect object
D.O.	direct object
mo	mother
fa	father
br	brother

so	son
si	sister
trans	transitive
Fr.	French

Both singular and plural forms of a noun, if they exist, are presented, the plural form following the singular by a single slash (/). If a noun has both a masculine and a feminine form, both are given, the feminine form immediately following the masculine. A verb is followed by a double slash (//) and its habitual form (VH).

A. Ayt Ayache

A \* preceding a word indicates that the word occurs in Ayt Seghrouchen as well.

- a -

*a-	vocative particle
abaṛiq:(m)/ ibaṛiq:n	slap (on the face)
abḷiṣ̣(r)/ ibḷiṣ̣n	piece of old cloth
abn:ay(m)/ ibn:ayn	mason
abrḍi(m)/ ibrḍiyn	saddle-maker
*abrid (m) / ibrdan	way, road
abr:ah(m)/ ibr:ahn	town crier
abr:šan (m) / ibršan:	black
tabr:šant (f) / tibr:šanin	
abulisi(r)/ ibulisiyn	policeman
abx:an (m) / ibx:an:	black
tabx:ant (f) / tibx:anin	
*ad-	future prefix
adl:al (m) / idl:al:	wandering salesman
tadl:alt (f) / tidl:alin	
adž // t:adž	to let
*ad:ay	when (conjunction)
ad:ud	to come
aḍaḍ(r)/ iḍuḍan	finger
aḍar (m) / iḍar	leg, foot
*adbib(m)/ iḍbibn	doctor

*adḡ:al (m) / idulan	in-law
tadḡ:alt (f) / tidulin	
adil (m)	grapes
aḍyar <sup>(e)</sup> / iḍyar:	place
af // t:af	to find
*afl:a	upstairs, up over, above
afl:ah (m) / ifl:ahn	farmer
afraw // t:afraw	to fly
*afr:an (m) / ifr:an:	oven
aft:ix (m)	melon
aful:us (m) / iful:usn	cock
aful:us w:aman (m) / ifl:usn w:aman	duck
afus (m) / ifas:n	hand, arm
agl:id <sup>(e)</sup> / igl:idn	sultan, king
agm //t:agm	to bring water
agz:ar <sup>(e)</sup> / igz:ar:	butcher
ag:d	even, also
ag:ḍhah	nothing
ag:r: (m)	flour
ahiv	a vocative expression
ahd:ad <sup>(m)</sup> / ihd:adn	blacksmith
ahfur (m) / ihfurn	hole
*ahidus (m) / ihidas	dance
ahuli (m) / ihuliyn	sheep, ram
ahyud (m) / iḥyaḍ	crazy, fool
tahyut: (f) / tiḥyaḍ	
ahz:ar <sup>(m)</sup> / ihz:arn	servant

ahž:am <sup>(m)</sup> / ihž:amn	barber
aksum (m)	meat
akšid <sup>(m)</sup> / ikš:idn	wood
akz // t:akz	to recognize
ak:mayil:a	wherever it is
aknbusš <sup>(m)</sup> / iknbaš	scarf (decorated)
aknn:ay (m) / iknn:ayn	rock
almsir <sup>(m)</sup> / ilmsirn	tanned sheep skin
altu	again
alus (m)	husband's brother
*aly // t:aly	to go up
al:	until
al: //t:al:a	to cry
al:n (fp)	eyes
*-am	to you (fs); I.O.
ama...ama...	either...or...
amalik:ani (m) / imalik:aniyn	American
tamalik:aniyt (f) / timalik:aniyn	
*aman (mp)	water
amaq:an (m) / imaq:an:	sieve with small holes
amaziγ (m) / imaziγn	Berber (person)
tamaziγt (f) / timaziγin	
amd:ak:l (m) / imd:uk:al	friend
tamd:ak:lt (f) / timd:uk:al	
amhđar <sup>(m)</sup> / imhđar:	student, pupil
amkašf (m) / imkašfn	foreteller
tamkašft <sup>(f)</sup> / timkašfin	



amksa (m) / imksawn	shepherd
tamksawt (f) / timksawin	
aml:al (m) / iml:al:	white
taml:alt (f) / timl:alin	
amn //t:amn	to believe
amq:abl (m) / imq:abln	caretaker
tamq:ablt (f) / timq:ablin	
ams:utr (m) / ims:utr:	beggar
tams:utrt (f) / tims:utar	
amšis:	like that (thus)
amxilaf (m) / imxilafn	disagreement
amxzni (m) / imxzniyn	soldier of the makhzen
amzil (m) / imzil:	blacksmith (mainly small jobs)
amz // t:amz	to catch
amzda (m) / imzdatn	weaver
tamzdawt (f) / timzdawin	
*amz:uγ (m) / imž:an	ear
amz:yan <sup>(n)</sup> / imz:yan:	small
amyar (m) / imyar:	head of a village, husband's father, old man
am:i	like
am:as	among, between
anbdu (m)	crop
anbyi (m) / inbyawn	guest
tanbyiwt (f) / tinbyawin	
ang:aru (m) / ing:ura	last
*anrar (m) / inurar	threshing ground

anslm (m) / inslmn	Moslem
tanslmt (f) / tinslmin	
anšuš (m) / anšušn	lip
anš:ad (m) / inš:adn	poet, singer
anu (m) / una	well
anzar (m)	rain
anž:ar(°) / inž:ar:	carpenter
an:a	which
an:a xf	when (as soon as)
an:ay //t:an:ay	to see
aq:ayn (mp)	beads
*aq:hwi (m) / iq:hwiyn	brown
taq:hwiyt (f) / tiq:hwiyin	
*aq:mu (m) / iq:ma	mouth, face
aq:raf (m)	the cold
aq:šmir(°) / iq:šmir:	rocks
aq:ždim (m)	sitting
ar-	inchoative particle
araw (m)	offspring
argaz (m) / irgzn	husband (man)
aru // t:aru	to write
arw // t:arw	to give irth to
arhab (m)	welcome
arumy (m) / irumin	European
*-as	to him, to it (m); I.O. to her, to it (f); I.O.

asfl (m)	colorful, decorated cord
asg:as (m) / isg:asn	year
ash:ar (m) / ish:ar:	magician
tash:art (f) / tish:arin	
asif (m) / isaf:n	river
asklu (m) / iskla	tree
asksu(ʔ) / isksutn	top part of the couscous pot
ask:a	tomorrow
ask:ak(ʔ) / isk:akn	goldsmith
ask:ans	the next day
aslm (m) / islman	fish
*-asn	to them (m); I.O.
*-asnt	to them (f); I.O.
asnwi (m)	cooking
asq:n (m)	rope
asrdun (m) / isrdan	mule
tasrdunt(f) / tisrdan	
asy // t:asy	to carry
as: // t:as:a	to tie
*as: (m) / us:an	day
as:a	today
*asy:ad (m) / isy:adn	hunter, fisher
*-aš	to you (ms); I.O.
ašabar (m) / išabarn	caravan
ašt:ah (m) / išt:ahn	dancer
tašt:aht (f) / tišt:ahin	

ašw:al <sup>(n)</sup> / išw:al	harvester (person)
*ašy // t:ašy	to be aware
stay (m)	tea
atfl (m)	snow
atf:as (m) / itf:asn	long shirt
atri (m) / itran	star
at:ar:u (m) / it:ar:uṭn	a can
awal (n) / iwaliwn	speech, talk
awd:i	so and so, such and such (vocative "oh you")
*awd // t:awd	to reach
awl // t:awl	to marry
*-awn	to you (mp); I.O.
*-awn t	to you (fp); I.O.
awnul (m)	importance
awraṣ (m) / iwraṣn	yellow
tawraṣt (f) / tiwraṣin	
*awy // t:awy	to take away (in A.S. also means 'to marry')
axatar (m) / ixatar:	great, big
taxatart (f) / tixatarin	
axb:az (m) / ixb:azn	baker
axd:am (m) / ixd:amn	worker, laborer
taxd:amt (f) / tixd:amin	
axnfuf (m) / ixnfufn	face (derogatory usage)
axs	wishful form
axy:aḍ (m) / ixy:aḍn	tailor
aya	this is

ayaʕrinw	gee!
ayt	the people of
azd:am (m) / izd:amn	wood gatherer (collector)
tazd:amt (f) / tizd:amin	
azgza (m) / izgzawn	blue/green
tazgzawt (f) / tizgzawin	
*azg:ay (m) / izg:ayn	red
tazg:ayt (f) / tizg:ayin	
*azn // t:azn	to send
azry (m) / izryn	mill
azwu (m)	the wind
azyr (m) / izyrn	ox
azn:ar (m) / izn:ar:	cloak, cape
azalim (m)	onion
azum // t:azum	to fast
aʕmud / iʕmudn	a stick
*aʕrab (m) / aʕrabn	Arab
taʕrabt (f) / taʕrabin	
aʕsk:ri / iʕsk:riyn	soldier
aʕs:as (m) / iʕs:asn	guard
taʕs:ast (f) / tiʕs:asin	
*aʕs:ab / iʕs:abn	band
aʕt:ar (m) / iʕt:ar:	wandering salesman
aʕž:i (m) / iʕž:iyn	calf
taʕž:iyt (f) / tiʕž:iyin	
-ay	us; D.O. to us; I.O.
ay // t:ay	to reach

aṛṛda (m) / iṛṛdayn	mouse
taṛṛdayt (f) / tiṛṛdayin	
aṛṛum (m)	bread
aṛyul (m) / iṛyal	donkey
taṛyult (f) / tiṛuyal	
aṛ:u	milk

- b -

*baṛak:a	enough
baṛata	potatoes
baynahwa	that (arabic)
bdr // bd:r	to mention
bḍu // bḍ:u	to divide, to share
bibi (m) / id bibi	turkey
bk:ri	once upon a time, a long time ago
*bla	without
bla aḡmil .	Don't mention.
*bl:ṛ // t:bl:aṛ	to make reach
bnadm	persons, people
bnu // bn:u	to build
br:h // t:br:aḡ	to announce
br:a	outside
bs:ḡa	congratulations
bu lbuḡta(m) / idbulbuḡta	postman
bu lḡm:am (m) / idbulḡm:am	public bath attendant
bu lq:hwa (m) / idbulq:hwa	coffee shop owner

bu š:fnž (m) / idbuš:fnž	doughnut maker
bu tarda (m) / idbutarda	washerman
bu thanut: (m) / idbuthuna	shopkeeper
bu tiyni (m) / idbutiyni	tailor
bu tuymas (m) / idbutuymas	dentist
bu carı (m) / idbusari	forest guard
büşy:ar (m) / idbüsy:ar	sieve
buwırum (m) / idbuwırum	clay tray
büwida (f)	pear
*bz:af	much (a lot)
böd // t:böad	to be far (which is far)
böda	first of all
b:a	my father
b:aql:u	my grandfather (term of address)
*b:y // t:b:y	to cut

- d -

*d	with, and
d	particle of proximity
da-	present tense prefix
*da	here
dawa // t:dawa	to cure
day	then
db:r // t:db:ar	to manage
*d:ilit(t)/ d:ilyat	vine
din:	there
dis:	there
diy	again

ḍṛṣ // ḍṛ:ṣ	to study
ḍṣu // ṭ:ḍṣu	to sue (/ṃ:ṣḍṛa/ = reciprocal)
ḍṛi	now
ḍ:aw	under
ḍ:hb (m)	gold
ḍ:l:aḥ (m)	watermelon
ḍ:u // ṭḍ:u	to go
ḍ:unit (f)	world
*ḍ:užanbir (m)	December
ḍ:z // ṭ:ḍ:z	to beat
ḍ:ɕut (f) / ḍ:ɕwat	case

- ḍ -

ḍhṛ // ṭ:ḍhaṛ	to appear
ḍḷ:ɕ // ṭ:ḍḷ:aɕ	to knead (flatten bread)
ḍmn // ṭ:ḍman	to guarantee
ḍṛ // ḍ:aṛ	to go down
ḍṛ:g̣ // ṭ:ḍṛ:ag	to hide
ḍ:alḅ (m) / iḍḍ:alḅ	religious teacher
ḍ:ažin (m) / ḍ:wažn	stew of clay pot in which stew is cooked
ḍ:ra (m)	corn
ḍ:ɕam (m)	couscous



- f -

*fad	thirst
fafa // t:fafa	to wake up
farina (f)	flour
fdṛ // fd:ṛ	to take breakfast, to lunch
fimṛ:a	at once, immediately
frans	France
fṛd // fr:d	to sweep, to clear up
fṛh // fr:h	to be happy
ftl // ft:l	to roll
ft:š // t:ft:aš	to search
f:γ // t:f:γ	to go

- g -

g // t:g:a	to do
gmr // gm:r	to hunt
gn // g:an	to sleep
gr // g:ar	throw (here: to put)
g:any // t:gan:ay	to wait
g:ar:u (m)	cigarette

- h -

han	here are, here
haš	here he is
hat	here
hatin	emphatic form
hayaš	here are
hayi:	here I am

hbl // t:hbal	to become crazy, silly
hm:a // t:hm:a	to concern
- h -	
hada // t:hada	to touch
hadr // t:hadar	to be present
hars // t:haras	to prevent
hašaš	a restricted thank you expression said, for example when someone pours water for you to wash your hands before or after dinner
hkm (~ hšm) // hk:m	to govern
hl:q: // t:hl:aq	to dress up (for women)
hma	in order to
hmd // t:hmad	to praise
hmu // t:hmu	to be hot
hn:d // t:hn:ad	to hug
hr:f // t:hr:af	to carry
*hšuma	shame
huf // t:huf	to jump on
hz:m // t:hz:am	to wear a belt

- i -

*i	and (utterance initial)
*-i	me; D.O.
ibawn (mp)	beans
ibril	April
iburksn (mp)	shoes
id (m)	night

idmar: (mp)	chest
iduša (mp)	sandals
id:-	interrogative particle
igr (m) / igran	field
*ihi	no
ikzin (m) / ikzin:	small dog, puppy
ilazm	must
*ili // t:ili	to be
il:i	my daughter
il:is nxali (f)	my cousin mo br da
il:is nxalti	my cousin mo si da
il:is nyma	my niece
il:is nɔm:i (f)	my cousin fa br da
il:is nɔt:i	my cousin fa si da
imndi (mp)	grain
imnsi (m)	dinner
imrɣan (mp)	sauce
imšin:a	just about, like that
imšli (m)	lunch
*ini // t:ini	to say, to intend
-inw	mine
inyan (mp)	tripod, trivet
iq:šušn (mp)	teapot and glasses
irdn (mp)	wheat
iri // t:iri	to want
*is-	question particle of the "do - will" type
*is	that
isignu(w) isignaw	cloud

isin // t:išin	to know
isl:i(ʎ)/ isl:iwn	stone
*ism (m) / ismawn	name
*ismγ (m) / ismγan	negro servant
tismγt (f) / tismγin	
iswi (m)	straw platter
-is,-	with it
išdif(ʎ) / išdifn	rug
*iwa	well, then
iwl (m)	marriage
ixf (m) / ixfawn	head
iydi (m) / iydan	dog
iy:is (m) / iy:isan	horse
*izm (m) / izmawn	lion
izriri (m) / izriran	face decoration - painting
izyar: (mp)	cattle
iγd (ms)	ashes
iγir(ʎ) / iγirn	shoulder
iγiy // t:iγiy	to be able to
iγnša	illness
iγrm (m)	village

- k -

kašf // t:kašaf	to foretell
kmu ~ šmu // šm:u	to smoke
kžm // kž:m	to enter
*k: // t:k:a	to pass, to visit
k:r // t:k:r	to get up
k:ram...	let us (dual f)

k:ratay ...	let us (mp)
k:ray ...	let us (dual m)
k:rntay ...	let us (fp)
*k:s // t:k:s	to take out, to take off, to take away
k:u	each, every
k:u yun	everyone

- ḳ -

ḳbrayr (m)	February
-ḳn	you (mp); D.O.
ḳul:ṣ̌i	all, everybody, everything
ḳ:nt	to you (fp object)

- l -

*la, lalal, ihi	no
*labas	fine
ladn (m)	permission
ladrisa(ʔ)/ ladrisat	address
lahl (mp)	parents, family
*larḅe (m)	Wednesday
*lbab (m) / lbiban	door
lbanan (m)	banana
*lbaṛak:a (f)	blessing
lbhint (f) / lbhaym	beast
lbiru (m) / lbiruyat	office
*lbni (m)	building
lbṛma (= taqduht) (f) /lbṛmat	pot
lbṛquq (m)	plum

lfilaž <sup>(w)</sup> / lfilažat	village
lflaha (f)	agriculture
lfn:i (m) / lfn:iyin	technician
lfq:ih (m) / itlfq:ih	a learned man
lfurara (f) / lfurarat	scarf
lg:ayz (m) ~ lbitrun (m)	kerosene
lhri (m)	warehouse
*lhal (m)	weather, state
lhašt (f)	thing
lhdiyt (f) / lhdiyat	story
*lhd: (m)	Sunday
lhfa (m)	bare-footed
lhimz (m)	chick peas
lhkma (f)	wisdom
lhlib (m)	milk
*lhmdul:ah	fine
lhm:am <sup>(w)</sup> / idlhm:am	bathroom
lhn:a (m)	henna
lhuk:uma (f)	government
lhzam (m)	decorated belt
libzar (m)	black pepper
lidasa (f) / lidasat	broadcasting, radio station
lik:ul (f) / idlikul	school
limam (m) / idlimam	prayer leader
*linasaš lwaṭ:ani (m)	"National Promotion Agency"
listidasa (f) / listidasat	calling
lizar (m) / lizawr	sari-like robe
lk:amun (m)	cumin
lk:as (m) / lk:isam	glass

lk:if (m)	kif
lk:rm (m)	cabbage
*lmak:la (f) / lmak:lat	food
lmal (m)	sheep
lmalik: (m) / lmuluk	king
*lman (m)	peace
lmhk:ama (f)	the court (here refers to power, authority)
*lmizaniy:a (f) / lmizany:at	budget
lmlk:ya (m) / lmlky:at	kingdom
lmswak (m)	particular bark used for cleaning teeth (nut tree)
*lmšlaḥa(m) / lmšlahat	the good
lmšmaš (m)	apricot
lmuhandiz (m) / idlmuhndiz	engineer
lmuhim:a (f)	the importance, responsibility
*lmɣrib (m) ~ lmɣrib	Morocco
lmxzn (m)	government
lmsilq:a (f) / lmsilqat	spoon
lmsq:ul (m)	reason
lq:adi / idlq:adi	cafi
*lq:amiža (f) / lq:amižat	shirt
lq:ayd(m) / lqy:ad	caid
lq:aʿida (f) / lq:aʿidat	custom, habit
lq:fɗan (m) / lq:fɗn	Kaftan (decorated robe)
lq:hwa (f) / lq:hawi	caffae, cafe
lq:ist (f) / lq:isat	story
lq:dra (f)	the will (power)
ls // ls:a	to wear
*ltlata	Tuesday

*ltnayn (m)	Monday
luq: id (m)	matches
luq: t (f) / lawqat	time
lwašun (p)	boys, children
lwašun nil: i	my grandchildren
lwazir (m) / lwazara	minister
lwhda (m)	one o'clock
lxdiyt(š) / lxdiyat	failure
lxlift (m) / lxlifat	administrative job
*lxmis (m)	Thursday
lxmsa (f)	five o'clock
lxrif (m)	fall
lxuṭbt (f) / lxuṭbat	Friday Prayer
lxux (m)	peach
lxyar (m)	cucumber
lžimusa (f)	Friday
lʿaml (m) / lʿm: al	governor
lʿds (m)	lentils
lʿib (m) / lʿyub	shame, shameful
*lʿid (m) / lʿyad	feast
lʿil / išir: an	boy
*lʿmr (m)	age
lʿnayat (f)	fashion
lʿšra (f)	ten o'clock
*lʿwin (m)	food
*l: a	present tense prefix
l: iy	since, when (conjunction)
l: tam (m) / idl: tam	veil (covering face below eyes)
l: ubya (f)	green beans



*ḷaz (m)	hunger
lṃuḍa(f)/ lṃuḍat	fashion
*ḷ:a yẓ̌el lbarak:a	a thank you expression said to your host after tea or a meal
*ḷ:ahicawn	hello (to or by a woman)
*ḷ:ayhn:ik:	goodbye (to me)
*ḷ:aysl:m	response to "hello"

*ma ?	what?
*mad	or
maḥd:	so long as
malik:an (m)	America
mand:yid	which (one of)?
*mani ?	where?
mani luq:t ?	when?
*maṛs (m)	March
maṣr (m)	Egypt
maša	but
*mat:a ?	what, which?
matiša (f)	tomato
max ?	why?
max al:iy ?	why ... ?
*may	who, what
may	where
*may:u (m)	May

*maγr	where to
md:n (mp)	people
mḍašar // t:mḍašar	to consult
*mi ?	who, what
milan ?	whose?
*milmi ?	when?
mimš	how is? what is?
*mism	how?
mm:i	my son
mm:is nil:i	my grandson da so
mm:is nmm:i	my grandchild so so
mm:is nut:ma	my nephew
mm:is nxali (m)	my cousin mo br so
mm:is nxalti	my cousin mo si so
mm:is ncm:i (m)	my cousin fa br so
mm:is ncm:is nb:a	my father's cousin
mm:is nct:i	my cousin fa si so
mnyir	except
mr	if (for past of impossible)
mrid:	if (it were)
mr:t // t:mr:at	to torture
*mrhba	welcome (said by a host)
*mslxir	"good evening" or response to "good evening"
mš	if (possible)
*mun //t:mun	to accompany
muš: (m) / imaš:un	cat
myus:an // t:myus:an	to get acquainted

mziy // t:mziy	to be small
m <sup>o</sup> na	that is, let us say
m:a	my mother
m:l <sup>h</sup> m:am (f) / idm:l <sup>h</sup> m:am	public bath attendant
*m:t // t:mt:a	to die
m:tarda / idm:tarda	washerwoman

- n -

nitni (m)	they
nk:	I
nk:intis	me and him
nk:n:it	I myself
nk:ni	we
-ns	his (of him), possessive
ns // ns:a	to spend the night, to wear
-nsn (m)	their
-nsnt (f)	their
ns:	half
-nš (ms)	your, possessive
*nša <sup>o</sup> l:ah	If God wills.
nt:a	he
nt:a	but
nw // ng:a	to be cooked
nwanbir (m)	November
nzy // nz:γ	to pull out
*n <sup>o</sup> am	yes (in response to someone calling your name)
*net // t:n <sup>o</sup> at	to show

-ny	our
nyd // t:nyad	to grind (very fine)
n:a	which
-n:a	that
*n:ahiya(t)/ n:awahi	region
n:ay	in which, where (conjunction) (n:a + y 'which in')
n:ayr (m)	January
n:ay // t:nay	to fight
n:it	indeed
-n:knt (fp)	you
*-n:m (fs)	your
-n:un	yours
n:ɛnaɛ (m)	mint
-n:ɣ	our (pronominal affix)

- q -

qbl	before
qbl // t:qbal	to accept
qdɛ // qd:ɛ	to register a marriage
ql:b // t:ql:ab	to check
*qr:b // t:qr:ab	to be near
qr:r // t:qr:ar	to decide
q:dr // t:qdar	to be able to
q:im // t:ɣima	to stay
q:is // t:q:is	to tell stories
q:la // t:q:la	to fry
q:l:	less
*q:n // t:q:n	to close

- q -

qm:r // t:qm:ar

to gamble

- r -

rar // t:rar

to go back

\*rbh // t:rbah

to gain, to succeed

ru // t:ru

to cry

\*rwl // rg:l

to run away

\*rzu // rz:u

to ask

- r -

raa // t:raa

to see, to look for,  
to look at

rbā

four

rb:a // t:rb:a

to learn

\*rb:i

God

rhb // t:rhab

to welcome

ruh // t:ruh

to reach

rẓm // rẓ:m

to open

r:ays (m) / idr:ays

president (head)

r:bad (m)

rabat

r:bā (f)

four o'clock

\*r:m:an (m)

pomegranat

r:st (f)

turban

r:uz (m)

rice

*s	to (prep) - before nouns that have initial vowels
sa	the other way
sal // t:sal	to ask
*samh // t:samah	to forgive
samhi	excuse me
sba	seven
sig:r	look!
sin (m)	two
siwl // s:awal	to speak
sl: // t:sl:a	to hear
sl:k // t:sl:ak	to be acceptable, to be reasonable (for price)
sl:m (xf) // t:sl:am	to greet (on)
smut:r // s:mut:ur	to collect
snat (f)	two
snin	years (< Arabic)
sny	to put on
snya // t:snya	to sign (< Fr. "signer")
snat // snat	to show
srm // sr:m	to peel
srs // s:rus	to put
srut // srwat	to thresh
st:a	six
st:awil	slowly
sul	not yet
sw // s:a	to drink
swas:	during daytime

sw:q // t:sw:aq:	to go to the market, to shop
sxu // sx:u	to be generous
sx:n // t:sxan	to warm couscous with melted butter
sya	this way
*sγ // s:ay	to buy
sγuy: // sγuy:u	to shout
svunfa // s:γunfa	to rest
*s:alamuɣlik:um	hello (to a man by a man)
*s:ara // s:ara	to take a walk
s:aɣ	but
s:bt (f)	Saturday
s:bɣa (f)	seven o'clock
s:if: // s:ifif	to sift
*s:ird // s:irid	to wash
s:itrun (m)	lemons
*s:iyd / s:adat	holy man
s:k:r (m)	sugar
*s:lam (m)	peace - greeting
s:lf // s:luf	to caress
s:mida (f)	semoulina
s:rwal (m) / s:rawl	trousers
s:t:a	six o'clock
s:u // t:s:u	to make the bed or spread something on the floor
s:uq: (m) / laswaq:	market
s:utr // s:utur	to ask for
*s:γd // t:γad	to hear

- š -

*safi	finished, o.k., all right
*sah:a	thank you
*sbahlxir	"good morning" or response to "good morning"
shu // sh:u	to be healthy
sy:f // t:sy:af	to harvest summer crops
s:abun (m)	soap
*s:aḥt (f)	health
s:aṇtr (m)	the center
s:iṇit (f) / s:wany	tray
s:nduq: (m) / s:nadq	box
s:ufit:ma (m) / its:ufitma	undershirt
s:x̣ḍ (m)	curse

- ṣ̌ -

-ṣ̌ (ms)	you; D.O.
ṣ̌ // ak:a	to give
ṣ̌a	some
ṣ̌al // t:ṣ̌al	to buy grain
*ṣ̌b:r // t:ṣ̌b:ar	to cling
*ṣ̌du // ṣ̌d:u	to be small
ṣ̌f (~ ṣ̌) // ak:a	to give
ṣ̌g: (ms)	you
ṣ̌g:n:it	you yourself
ṣ̌hạl ?	how many ? how much?
ṣ̌iy:an	much



ṣ̌k:a // t:ṣ̌k:a	to doubt
*-ṣ̌m (fs)	you; D.O.
ṣ̌m:l // t:ṣ̌m:al	to finish
ṣ̌nʕ	to be prevalent
ṣ̌rad (m)	three
ṣ̌rat: (f)	three
*ṣ̌tanbir (m)	September
ṣ̌tka // t:ṣ̌tka	to complain
ṣ̌tubr (m)	October
ṣ̌wi	little
ṣ̌:ahd (m) / ṣ̌:hud	witness
ṣ̌:awniy:a (f)	red pepper
ṣ̌:ifṛun (m)	cauliflower
*ṣ̌:ix / ṣ̌:yuz	sheikh
ṣ̌:qf (m) / itṣ̌:qf	pipe (for smoking)
ṣ̌:rṭ (m) / ṣ̌:uṛut	condition
ṣ̌:ṛab (m)	alcoholic drinks
ṣ̌:ṛžm (m) / ṣ̌:ražm	
ṣ̌:wi (m)	roast
- t -	
-t (m)	it; D.O.
ta (f)	this
tabibit: (f)	turkey
tabuq:st (f) / tibuq:sin	silk decorated cord
tadawt (f) / tadawin	back
tadg:at: (f)	evening

tad:art (f) / tad:rwin	house
taḍut: (f)	wool
tadw:art (f) / tiḍw:arin	tripe
tafg:ayt (f) / tifg:ayin	small piece of wood
tafriwt (f) / tafriwin	wings
tafunast (f) / tifunasin	cow
tafušt (f)	sun
taglayt (f) / tiglay	egg
tagmart (f) / tiyalin	mare
tagrst (f)	winter
tagust (f) / tigusin	peg
tahiturt / tihiturin	sheep skin
tahanut: (f) / tihuna	shop
tahm:amt (f) / tihm:amin	pigeon
talust (f) / tilusin	husband's sister
talxatmt (f) / tilxatmin	ring
talyaq:ut: (f) / tilyaqutin	sapphire
tal:f:in (f)	turnip
tama	besides
tamanil:ah	response to "good bye"
tamazirt (f) / timizar	country
tamaziḡt (f)	Berber language
tamd:ut:	woman, wife
tamg:rt: (f) / timg:raḍ	collar
tamizart (f) / timizarin	cape-like coat wrapped around shoulders and tied in front
tamnt (f)	honey
tamsriyt (f) / timsriyin	palace
tamzgida (f) / timzgidawin	mosque

tamyart (f) / timyarin	husband's mother, old woman
*tamyra (f) / timyriwin	wedding
tamyrust (f) / timyras	slaughtered animal, sacrifice
taqb:ut (f) / tiqb:a	djellaba
taq:bilt (f) / tiq:bilin	tribe
tarbat: / tišir:atin	girl
targa (f) / tirg:in	canal
tarwa (f) / tirg:in	canal
tasa (f)	love (liver)
tasarut: (f) / tisura	key
*tasbniyt (f) / tisbniyin	head cover for women
tasynst (f) / tisynas	pin
tas:ast (f) / tas:asin	watch
tašaš:it(f) / tišaš:yin	hat
tašna (f) / tašniwin	here step-mother (usually 'second wife')
tawada (f)	going, departure
tawriq:t: (f) / tiwriq:in	piece of paper
taxamt (f) / tixamin	tent
taxmirt (f)	yeast
taxnšiyt (f) / tixnšiyin	bag
*taxršt (f) / tixršin	earrings
taytš:in (fp)	women (co-wives)
tazart (f) / tazarin	fig
tazlaft (f) / tazlafin	large wooden or clay plate
tazult (f)	eye make-up
tavišt (f)	life
tayamust (f) / tiyamusin	lid

taɣbalut: (f) / tiɣbula	spring
taɣɣarɛt (f) / taɣɣarin	sack
taɣɣrit (f) / tiɣɣyin	stick
taɣt:ayt (f) / tiɣt:ayin	lid
tfɛ // tf:ɛ	to distribute, to push
tiflflɛt (f) / tiflflin	green pepper
tigni (f)	dates
tignut (f) / tignaw	storm
tignzar (fp)	nose
til:as (fp)	darkness
timiŝ:ut (f) / timaŝ:iwin	cat
tin (f)	of (belonging to)
*tin mi ?	whose (object is (f))
tin:a (f)	those
tir:a (fp)	the writing
tisirt (f) / tisira	mill
tisnt (f)	salt
tixsi (fs)	sheep
tixsi (f) / ul:i	ewe
tiydit (f) / tiydiyin	dog
tizi (f)	a pass
*tlata	three
*tlatin	thirty
*tmanya	eight
*-tn (m)	them; D.O.
*tnayn	two
*-tnt (f)	them; D.O.
*tssa	nine

tš // t:t:a	to eat
tšamir (m) / idtšamir	long, closed robe worn under other clothes
tutliwin (fp)	liver and fat kebab
tuymst (f) / tuymas	tooth
*-t:	her; D.O.
t:afad	in order to
t:aman (f)	price
t:asi° (f)	room, place
t:fina (f) / t:fayn	a robe, open in front, worn over /t:samir/
t:f:ah (m)	apple
t:l // t:t:l	to roll
*t:lata (f)	three o'clock
t:lawt (f)	poem
*t:mnya (f)	eight o'clock
*t:na°š (f)	twelve o'clock
*t:sa ~ t:saad	nine o'clock
t:s // t:s:a	to laugh
t:swira (f) / t:sawr	photograph
t:uma (f)	garlic
t:ut:y // t:ut:uy	to fall

- t -

tanbaršt:	congratulations
tařsayt (f) / tiřsayin	squash
tař:at (f) / tiřd:n	goat
tfar // t:tfar	to be in debt
tiđ: (f) / al:n	eye

ṭimẓin (fp)	barley
ṭ:aṛix (f)	the date
ṭ:awa (f) / ṭ:awat	metal pot
ṭ:bla (f) / ṭ:bali	

- u -

u ~ w	and
ubḷḥq:	but
*uday (m) / udayn	Jew
tudayt (f) / tudayin	
udi (m)	butter
ufdir (m)	unleavened bread
uhu	no
*ul (m) / ulawn	heart (refers to stomach)
*ul:i (fp)	sheep
umlil (m) / umlil:	white
un:a	that one
*ur-	negative particle (prefixed to verbs)
ur ... ula	neither ... nor
urdžin	never
urin:	over there, beyond
urta-	not yet
usu	bedding
uš:n (m) / uš:an	jackal
utši (m)	food
ut:ma / istma	my sister
*uz:al (m)	iron
uždid (m) / uždidn	new

w-	and
wa (m)	this
*wahd	one
walayn:i	but
*walf // t:walf	to get accustomed to
*walu	nothing
wan:	that, that one
warya // t:warya	to dream
*wax:a	all right
whdut (m)	alone, by himself
whdut: (f)	alone, by herself
whl // t:whal	to get tired
wil:i	those
win (m)	of
*win mi	whose (object is (m))
win:a (m)	those
ws:x // t:ws:ax	to make dirty
*ws:a // t:wṣ:a	to advise
wuayflan	such and such
wžd // t:wžad	to be ready
wər // t:uṣir	to be heard
w:t // k:at	to beat

xali	my uncle	mo	br
xalti	my aunt	mo	si

xatr // t:xatar	to grow old
xdm // xd,m	to work
xf	on - before nouns
xiz:u (m)	carrots
xlu // xl:u	to destroy
xl:s // t:xl:as	to pay
xmsa	five
xmsin	fifty
xs (~ yas)	just
xulf // t:xuluf	to be different
xwu // t:xwu	to empty
xzn // xz:n	to keep
x:u // t:x:u	to be bad, to be mean

- y -

y	in
yadn	other
yadnin	others
yak:	vocative
yak: ~ yaš	question introducer
yał:ah ...	let us (general)
yidr (m) / iyidrn	huge animal
yyun	oxen
yma / aytma	my brother
*yulyuz	July
yun (m)	one
*yunyu	June



yut (f)	one
y:ih	yes

- z -

*zdm // zd:m	to collect wood
zdγ // zd:γ	to dwell
zl // zl:a	to lose
*zry // zr:y	to pass
*zy	from
zɤf // t:zɤaf	to be mad at someone
z:bib (m)	raisins
*z:in (m)	beauty
z:it (f)	oil
*z:itun (m)	olive
z:nbus (m)	orange
z:nz // z:nza	to sell

- ẓ -

ẓd // ẓ:aḍ	to grind
ẓil // t:iẓil	to be nice
ẓy:ṛ // t:ẓy:aṛ	to tighten
ẓ:aḷ: // t:ẓaḷ:a	to pray
*ẓ:ɤ // t:ẓ:ɤ	to dismiss

- ž -

žbṛ // žb:ṛ	to come back, to be kept
žru // žr:u	to happen

ž:rda (f) / ž:radi	garden
ž:uqt (f) / ž:uq:at:	gathering (of people), crowd
ž:už	two o'clock
ž:užd // ž:už:ud	to get ready, to prepare
ž:y // t:ž:y	to be cured

- 8 -

ʕad:r // t:ʕad:ar	to meet
ʕahd // t:ʕahad	to promise
*ʕam	year (in connection with age)
ʕari (m) / lʕwari	mountain
*ʕawd // t:ʕawad	to repeat
ʕawn // t:ʕawan	to help
ʕayd // t:ʕayad	to return
ʕbr // ʕb:r	to measure, weigh
*ʕd:b // t:ʕd:ab	to torture
ʕd:u // t:ʕd:u	to be abundant
*ʕlahq:	because
ʕlihal	almost
*ʕlik:ums:alam	response to "hello"
ʕm:i	my uncle fa br
ʕm:r // t:ʕm:ar	to make tea
ʕnq: // t:ʕnaq	to get tired
ʕnu // t:ʕnu	to undergo
ʕnwa	on purpose
ʕq:d // t:ʕq:ad	to tie
ʕrm // t:ʕram	to know of
*ʕšrin	twenty

*čšra	ten
čt:i	my aunt      fa   si
čt:ṛ // t:čt:aṛ	to be late
čz:a // t:čz:a	to be dear
*čz:k:ḷ:ah	don't mention, excuse me
čžb // t:čžab	to please

- γ -

γal // t:γal	to think
γas	just
γd:	or
γif	on (before pronouns)
*γir	less
γms // γm:s	to cover
γr	to
*γṛ // q:aṛ	to call
γṛs // γṛ:s	to slaughter
γuṛ	at, to (French 'chez')
*γus // t:γus	to burn
*γušt	August
γz // q:az	to dig

## B. Ayt Seghrouchen

Also see items preceded by \* in the Ayt Ayache Glossary.

- a -

abḥir <sup>(n)</sup> / ibḥirn	garden
abrbur <sup>(n)</sup> / ibrburn	face cover
abrduz <sup>(m)</sup> / ibrduzn	rag
abrḥuš <sup>(n)</sup> / ibrḥaš	greyhound
abr:an (m) / ibr:an:	black
tabr:ant (f) / tibr:anin	
aby:a <sup>(n)</sup> / iby:a <sup>n</sup>	bag
adbliž <sup>(n)</sup> / idbližn	bracelet
adf // t:adf	to enter
adfl (m)	snow
adin	what, that, which (relatives) (followed by a verb)
admr <sup>(n)</sup> / idmarn	chest; breast (only for pl)
adr // t:adr	to chase, to hide, to bury, to make descend
adrbal <sup>(n)</sup> / idrbaln	rag
adžar <sup>(n)</sup> / adžarn	neighbor
ad:a	bottom, below part
adrdur <sup>(n)</sup> / idrdurn	deaf
adryal <sup>(m)</sup> / idryaln	blind
adw:ar <sup>(n)</sup> / idw:arn	village (part of a village)
afq:ir (m) / ifq:irn	old person
tafq:irt (f) / tifq:irin	

afrw // t:afraw	to fly
aftis <sup>(m)</sup> / iftisi	big garden
agz:ar (m) / igz:arn	butcher
ag: // t:ag:	to refuse
aha	and then
ahdir <sup>(m)</sup> / ihdirn	big fire
ahlaš	illness
ahnfif <sup>(m)</sup> / ihnfifn	lip
ahraraš (m) / ihrarašn	decrepit (for people)
tahrarašt (f) / tihrarašin	
ahl // t:ahl	to be tired
ahm:am <sup>(m)</sup> / ihm:amn	pigeon
ahr:az <sup>(m)</sup> / ihr:azn	the one who prevents (probably "husband" or "a relative")
ahz:ud (m) / ihz:udn	naked
tahz:ut: (f) / tihz:udin	
ak:d	with
ak:mani	wherever
ak:swat (m) / ik:swatn	big
tak:swat:(f) / tik:swatin	
al-	inchoative particle
alay (m)	action of ascending
almu (m)	sort of field
alud	until
alyman (m) / ilyman	camel
talynt (f) / tilyntin	
al:i (m)	brain
al:un (m) / al:un:	tambourine

am	like
amanl:ah	response form for "goodbye"
amarikani (m) / imarikaniyn	American
tamarikaniyt (f) / timarikaniyn	
amary (m)	love
amazon(ᵐ)/ imazan:	messenger
amdyaz(ᵐ)/ imdyazn	singer
amhr:f (m) / imhr:fn	Berber ornament worn by women
amisa(ᵐ)/ imisawn	shepherd
amlasay (m)	wrestling
aml:al (m) / iml:aln	white
taml:alt (f) / timl:alin	
amnsi(ᵐ)/ imnsiwn	dinner
amny:ri(ᵐ)/ imny:ran	fight
ams // t:ams	to paint, to wipe off
amslm (m) / imslmn	Moslem
tamslmt (f) / timsmlin	
amšan(ᵐ)/ imušan	place
amšli(ᵐ)/ imšliwn	lunch
amur (m)	a wishful form
amut:l (m)	
amxy:r (m) / imxy:rn	the best
tamxy:rt (f) / timxy:r:in	
amyan(ᵐ)/ imyan:	billy goat
amzil(ᵐ)/ imziln	blacksmith
amžr(ᵐ)/ imžran	sickle
amž:uđ (m) / imž:uđn	bald-headed, scabby, scurfy
tamž:uđ: (f) / timž:uđin	

am <sup>o</sup> quli (m)	reasonable
am:in	like that
am:u	like this
anbuz(ʳ)/ anḅuzn	cheek
anfif(ʳ)/ infifn	funnel
ani	because
anmžar(ʳ)/ inmžar	harvester
anršu (m) / inrša	dirty
tanršurt:(f) / tinrša	
anud:m (m) / inud:umn	sleep
anuži (m) / inužiwn	guest
tanužiyt (f) / tinužiwin	
aq:l:uš / iql:ušn	jug
aq:s:r (m)	fun
aq:diʳ(ʳ)/ iq:diʳn	group, flock
aq:r̄in(ʳ)/ iq:r̄in:	of the same age
aq:zin (m) / iq:zin	dog
taq:zint (f) / tiq:zinin	
aq:ž:iʳ(ʳ)/ iqž:iʳn	scurfy
ar	to want
ari // t:ari	to write
arn (m)	flour
arw // t:arw	to give birth
ar:a	give me
asid: (m)	light
ask:ur (m) / isiran	partridge
task:urt (f) / isiran	

aslhām(m) / islhām	Berber cloak
asli (m) / islitn	bridegroom
tasl:it (f) / tislitin	bride
asmun (m)	companion
asm:īd (m)	cold
asnin ~ asinin	the day after tomorrow
asyl(m) / isyln	big basket to keep grains
asḡar(m) / isḡarḡn	wood
asḡun(m) / isḡwan	rope
as:u	presently
ašk:uš(m) / išk:ušn	raised up hair
ašl // t:ašl	to recover
ašlḡi (m) / išlḡiyn	Berber
tašlḡiyt(f) / tišlḡiyn	Berber (language, too)
ašm // t:ašm	to push
ašnbus(m) / išnbaš	head cover (funny term)
ašt:uf(m) / išdḡfan	ant
ata	vocative (to a woman)
atbir(m) / itbirn	pigeon
atr:as(m) / itr:asn	young man
at:aḡ(m) / at:aḡn	bucket
at:ay (m)	tea
aḡ:r:h (m)	rest
awa	vocative (to a man)
awḡdi (m) / iwḡdiyn	good
tawḡdiyt (f) / tiwḡdiyn	
awn:	beyond
awrd	on this side of



aws:ar (m) / iws:ura ~ iws:arn	old
taws:art (f) / tiws:ura ~ tiws:arin	
awtul(ᵐ)/ iwᵗlan	hare
awγ // t:awγ	to peck
-ax	us; D.O. to us; I.O.
axbu(ᵐ)/ ixba	hole
axm:as / ixm:asn	share cropper (gets 1/5 of crop)
axtam (m)	last day of the wedding
axuya	oh brother
axw:an(ᵐ)/ ixw:an:	thief
ay	exclamatory expression
ayd:id(ᵐ)/ iyd:idn	waterskin
aynduz (m) / iynduzn	calf
aysum (m)	meat
ayš:ud(ᵐ)/ iyš:udn	wood
ayz:im(ᵐ)/ iyz:am	pick ax
azduz(ᵐ)/ izduzn	pestle
azg:a	until
azg:ar (m)	a thorny plant
azirar (m) / izirarn	long, tall
tasirart (f) / tizirarin	
aziza (m) / izizawn	green, blue
tazizawt (f) / tizizawin	
azl:if(ᵐ)/ izl:ifn	head
aznbil(ᵐ)/ iznbiln	bag made of
azq:ur(ᵐ)/ izγran	tree trunk

azt:a(m) / izdwan	loom
azw:iq:(m) / izw:iq:n	messy design
azy // t:azy	to skin an animal
az:l // t:azl:	to run
azd // t:azd	to reach for, to stretch hand
azru	name of a town
azru(m) / izra	stone
aždıđ (m) / iždıđ	bird
taždıt: (f) / tiždıđ	
ažiwal(m) / ižiwaln	lap
ažl // t:ažl	to hang
ažlal (m) / ižulal	tail
ažlmas (m) / ižlmas	cap, hood
ažm // t:ažm	to bring water
ažmil (m) / ižmiln	favor
ažrtıl (m) / ižrtal	mat
açl:uř / içl:uřn	lamb
açq:a / içq:ayn	beads
açt:ar(m) / içt:arn	peddler
aç // t:aç	to light - here /yuç yıđ/ 'night falls'
açbal(m) / içbaln	spring
açi (m)	milk
açıl(m) / içal:n	arm (body)
açır(m) / içırn	shoulder
NB. also used in phrases:	
zç: çırı	from this side
zç: çırın:	from that side

aγl:ay(m) / iγl:ayn	kettle
aγrm ~ iγrm(m) / iγrman	village
aγr:af(m) / iγr:afn	pitcher
aγyul (m) / iγyal	donkey
taγyult (f) / tiγyal	
aγzbur / iγzbar	thin branch

- b -

badad (m)	love
bariq (m) / ibariqn	palm of the hand
baw (m) / ibawn	fava bean
bd: // t:bid:id	to stand up
bd:l // t:bd:al	to change
bdu // bt:u	to divide, to separate
brd // t:brid	to be cold
bril (m)	April
brm // br:m	to braid
bs:if	by force
bs:lama	goodbye
bt:u (m)	separation
bubarš	congratulations
bubuš (m) / ibubušn	puppy
tbubušt (f) / tibubušin	
budxšam (m)	cold, flu
bud(m) / ibudn	bottom
buhbl (m)	soul
burz // t:buruz	to take pride in
by:n // t:by:an	to show, to prove

bzayd	more than
bzy // t:bzy	to get wet
bčž // bč:ž	to burst, puncture
b:rbě // t:brběš	to be colored

- d -

dad:a	grandfather (term of address)
dam // t:dam	to be always
dax	again
daymn	always
df☉ // df:☉	to push
df:ir	after, behind
din	that, which, who
dis	in it (s)
dl // d:al	to cover
drus // t:durs	to be rare
dutša	tomorrow
dutšan:s	the following day
džhd (m)	force
dži // t:dži	to leave, to let
džum:☉ // t:žum:u☉	to talk, chat
drya	quickly
d:k:a (f) / itd:k:a	trousers inner belt
d:n ~ wd:n // t:d:n ~ t:wd:an	to call for the prayers
d:r // t:d:r	to be alive

d:r:iyt (f)	offspring
d:sa // t:d:sa	to pray for

- d -

ḍad (m) / iduḍan	finger
ḍar(ᵐ) / idarn	foot, leg
ḍas // t:ḍas	to be spoiled
ḍfr // ḍf:r	to follow
ḍhr // ḍh:r	to appear, to show up
ḍr // t:ar	to descend, fall
ḍurt:x	now
ḍziwa / tiziwaw	big plate for couscous
ḍ:d:	against
ḍ:iq:s // t:diq:is	to burst

- f -

fbrayr (m)	February
fḍr // ft:r	to take breakfast
fḍ:a // t:fḍ:a	to finish
fl // f:al	to start the loom
frn // fr:n	to pick teeth, to clean out
fr:q // t:fr:aq	to differentiate, to divide
fr:ž // t:fr:až	to look at, to watch
fsus // t:ifsus	to be light
fud (m) / ifad:n	knee
fuli (m) / ifilan	thread, string
fus / ifas:n	hand

f:r // t:f:r

to hide

f:u // t:f:u

to dawn

- g -

g:ir:u (m)

cigarettes

g:ur

VH of /rah/ ' to go'

- g̣ -

g̣: // t:g̣:

to knead

g̣:d // t:g̣:d

to be afraid

g̣:sawn

to the top, to the upper part

- h -

haq:ar (m) / ihaq:aṛn

raven

hda // hd:a

to graze

hdm // hd:m

to make fall

hn:a // t:hn:a

to be peaceful

hw:d // t:hw:ad

to descend

hw:l // t:hw:al

to worry, to be warned

hz: // t:hz:a

to carry, to send someone  
on an errand

hžm // hdž:m

to attack

ħarḅ // t:ħarab	to fight
ħasḅ // t:ħasab	to count
ħat:r // t:ħat:ar	to meet with (intentionally)
ħašak:	
ħdadž // t:ħdadža	to need
ħd: (m)	someone
ħl: // t:ħl:a	to slaughter an animal according to the accepted manner
ħma // t:iħma	to be hot
ħmd // t:ħmid	
ħm:m // t:ħm:am	to bathē
ħnini (m)	dear (form of address)
ħn:a (f)	
ħra	only
ħrtiṭa	kind of food (pancakes)
ħrḡm // t:ħrḡim	to die (for an animal) without being slaughtered according to law; this meat therefore is forbidden as food
ħr: // t:ħr:a	to ache
ħsn (< Arabic)	better
ħtal // t:ħtal	to lie in wait for
ħudr // t:ħudur	to bend
ħum:z (m)	chick pea.
ħuyz // t:ħuyuz	to miss something or somebody
ħw:z // t:ħw:az	to grab

idin (m)	the ones which
idis (m) / idisan	side
idu	today
ifiṽr(m) / ifiṽrawn	snake
if:(m) / if:an	udder, breast
ilf(m) / ilfan	pig, boar
ilf asimud (m)	an imaginary wild animal
ilis (m) / ilisn	fleece
imi(m) / imawn	mouth
ims̄i(m) / im̄san	beggar
imt:awn (mp)	tears
imuz:ar	name of a town
im:a	either
inhub:a	beloved
inin: (m)	those
inu (m)	these ones
ird // t:irad	to wear
iri(m) / irawn	voice, neck
is	do, is ...?
išbr (m) / išbran	long inner shirt
išniwn (m)	twins
tišniwin (f)	
iš: (m) / aš:awn	horn
itri (m) / itran	star
izid (m) / izidn	ogre
ižit // t:ižit	to be abundant



iʃban: )mp)	clothes
iʃi ~ iʃinw	"I refuse"
iʃni (< Arabic)	that is to say
iʃid (m) / iʃaydn	kid (goat)
iʃs: (m) / iʃsən	bone
iʃzr (m) / iʃaf:n	river

- k -

kawkaw (m)	peanuts
kb: // t:kb:a	to pour
kfa // t:kfa	to be enough
kima	as, like
kl:f // t:kl:af	to entrust
kmu // t:kmu	to smoke
km:l // t:km:al	to finish
kn:a // t:kn:a	to be called (to be given a second, i.e. additional name)
ktir (< Arabic)	much, many
kʃubr	October
k:ud	so long as, while

- l -

lal // t:lal	to be born
lantrit (f)	pension
lap:ist (< French "piste")	track
lasl (m)	origin
laʃlaby:a (fs)	the majority

lbabur (m)	samovar
lbaruđ (m)	bullets (here: war)
lbaz:(m) / itlbaz:	falcon or eagle
lbħr / lbħur	sea, ocean
lbic uš:ra (m)	commerce
lbt:ix(ə) abt:ix	melon
lfadur (m)	breakfast
lfdaht (f) / lfdayh	disgraceful, scandalous act or thing
lfdl (m)	donation
lfišta (f) / lfištāt	feast
lfixr (m)	coal
lfq:us(ə) afq:us	cucumber
lfrh (m)	feast
lfžr (m)	dawn
lgudrun (< Fr. Goudron) (m)	paved road
lha // lh:a	to keep busy, entertain
lhidž (m)	pilgrimage
lhm: (m)	
lħasil	in short, briefly
lħd: (m)	the end, edge, limit
lħimaya (f)	protectorate
lħlwa (f)	candy, sweets
lħml (< Arabic) (m)	burden, load
lħm:am (m) / itlħm:am	public bath
lħn:i (m)	henna
lħq: (m)	right
lħrb (m)	war, fight
lħsana (f) (< Arabic)	hair cutting, dressing

lhwayž (mp)	clothes, things
lhžab (m) / lhžabat	amulet
limkany:a(ŋ) / limkany:at	possibility
lin:ahu (< Arabic)	because
lkamanža (f) / lkamanžat	violin
lksb (m)	sheep and cattle
lmaqaruny:a (f)	macaroni
lmas:a (f) / lmas:at	
lmayt (f) / lmay:at	solo singing
lmdrasa (f) / lmadaris	school
lmhm:sa (f)	noodles
lmika (f) (< Fr. lemica)	plastic
lmizan (m) / itlmizan	scales
lmqd:m (m) / itlmqd:m	administrative job in the village
lmqdiyt(ŋ) / lmqdiyat	articles bought at a shop or at the market
lmqraš (m) / lmqarš	kettle
lmska (f)	chewing gum
lmsm:n (m)	kind of food
lms:ak (m) / itlms:ak	pin
lmšriq (m)	Orient
lmunada (f)	lemonade
lmurš:ih (m) / lmurš:ihin ~ itlmurš:ih	deputy
lmuwasaalat (fp)	communications
lmžmr (m) / lmžamr	coal burner
lmžr:b (m) / itlmžr:b	a man supposed to have experience
lmsdn (m) / lmsadn	ore, metal

lm̄išt (f)	life, living
lm̄rb (m)	sunset time
lqamiža(š)/ lqamižat	shirt
lqd:īd (m)	dried meat
lqdr (m)	amount
lquran (m)	Quran
lq:d // t:lq:ad	to collect, pick up, gather
lsq: // ls:q	to stick
lšad (m) / lšwad	paper
lud:inin:	at that time (past), then
luḍa (m)	flat
luḥš (m) / luḥuš	monster, wild
lul:u (m)	nursery language denoting something cute
lužab (m) / lužabat	reply
luṣr (m) / luṣur	precipice
lxdnt (f) / lxdami	work
lxdra (f)	vegetables
lxdrt (f)	vegetables
lxir (m)	good (noun)
lxla (m)	wilderness
lxliqiyt (f)	human being, person
lxmužiyt (f)	stench
lxt:ar (mp)	passers-by
lžamaṣa lqarawy:a	the village council
lṣada (f) / lṣadat	habit
lṣar (m)	shame
lṣasima (f) / lṣasimat	capital city
lṣasr (m)	time of afternoon prayer, around 4:00 p.m.

lɔbd (m)	human being
lɔin (m) / lɔyun	spring
lɔmart (f)	inhabited places
lɔmɔa (f)	Friday
lɔenzi (m)	goat meat
lɔts (m)	lentils
lɔwin (m)	provisions
lɔyabt (f) / lɔwabi	forest
lɔyis (m)	mid
lɔylmi (m)	mutton
lɔyɔs (m)	tree planting
l:am:a (f)	Zawya ceremony
l:an:	maybe
l:ayhn:ik:	goodbye
l:inat	then, at that time
l:un (m) / lalwan	color
l:xɔ // t:l:xas	to get leavened

- 1 -

lanba (f) lanbat	kerosene lamp
------------------	---------------

- m -

madl (m) / imadal	side, cheek
mah ?	why?
mah azg:a ?	why ...?
maymi ?	why ...?
mays:	I don't know

mbruk:	congratulations
mḥa // mḥ:a	to erase, to eradicate
mid:n (mp)	people
misdid (m) / imisdidn	thin
tmisdit: (f) / timisdidin	
mizay (m) / imizayn	heavy
tmizayt (f) / timizayin	
z:ay // t:izay	to be heavy
miždid (m) / imiždidn	new
tmiždit: (f) / timiždidin	
mlasay // t:mlasay	to wrestle
mlih	well, very much
mlš // ml:š	to marry
mluḍuf // t:mluḍuf	to hold one another by the hand
ml:i	if (impossible) - must be followed by VH
mr:a	once
mr:γ // t:mr:ay	to wallow
mšḥal	how much, how many
msl // ms:l	to apply, e.g. apply paint
ms: // t:msis	to need sugar or salt
mšrdul (m)	pain
mšta	how many
muzur (m) / imuzurn	fat
tmuzurt (f) / timuzurin	
myud:u // t:myud:u	to rock
mzyan (< Arabic)	good
mz:y // t:mzy	to be little, small

mžr // mdžr  
m:rbis (m)

to harvest  
name of a river

- n -

nan:a  
ndm // nd:m  
ndu // nd:u  
ndđ // nt:đ  
ndh // nt:h  
ndl // nt:l  
ndu // nt:u  
nfđ // nf:đ  
nfs // nf:s  
nišan  
nq:l // t:nq:al  
  
ns // ns:  
nš:d // t:nš:ad  
ntl // nt:l  
nw // t:naw  
nwanbir (m)  
nx  
nxd:  
ny // t:nay  
ncl // t:ncl  
n:ašat (m) (< Arabic)  
n:đ // t:n:đ  
n:đ:arat (fp)

grandma (term of address)  
to regret  
to be shaken (milk)  
to stick  
to bump against  
to bury  
to cross a river  
to fling  
to sprinkle  
straight, directly  
to transport grains, to  
transplant  
  
to spend the night  
to sing  
to hide away  
to cook  
November  
aorist particle  
  
to ride, to drive, to mount  
to curse  
fun, entertainment  
to turn around, to coil, wind  
glasses

n:fs (m)	air, breath
n:haz // t:n:haz	to be in a fix (esp. financial)
n:iž	above, over
n:qlb // t:n:qlab	to turn over
-n:s	his/her
-n:sn (m)	their
-n:snt (f)	their
-n:š (ms)	your
-n:šnt (fp)	your
n:ubt (f) / n:ubat	turn
-n:x	our

- q -

qd: // t:qd:a	to be able to
qda // qt:a	to be finished
qd <sup>c</sup> // qt: <sup>c</sup>	to cross
qrqb // qrqab	to knock at
qrqb // t:qrqab	to throw at, to shoot
qw:m // t:qw:am	to suffice
q:abl // t:qabal	to take care of
q:ah	here: all of everybody, everything, like - ; even
q:ar // t:yaṛa	to be dry
q:as // t:q:as	to taste
q:awl // t:qawa;	to promise
q:n // t:q:n	to close, to wear
q:ra // t:qra	to read, to study



q:sh // t:qsh	to be solid
q:ud:d // t:qud:ud	to burn, be grilled
q:wa // t:qwa	to be healthy

- r -

raby // t:raby	to lean over
rndan (m)	Ramadan
rs // rs:	to land, to come down
rt:b // t:rt:ab	to organize
ržiž // t:ržiži	to tremble
r: // t:r:a	to give back, put back, vomit
r:if (m) /laryaf	line of dancers
r:wy // t:r:way	to stir (itself)
r:yal (m)	money, gold

- r -

rayb // t:rayab	to approach
rbst: (mp)	some
rhl // t:rhal	to move
rṣ:a // t:rṣ:a	to be stable, quiet
rum:y (m) / irum:in	European
tṛum:it (f) / tiṛum:yin	
rṛw:h // t:rṛw:ah	to go in the evening
rṛz // rṛz:	to break
rṛb // rṛ:b	to be amazed
r:m:an (m)	pomegranate
r:uḥ (m) / larwah	soul
r:zṭ (f) / r:z:at	turban

safr // t:safar	to travel
sb:ʕ // t:sb:aʕ	to reach the seventh day of an occasion, e.g. baby's birth
skn // sk:n	to dwell
sm:a // t:sm:a	to name
sm:r // t:sm:ar	to pound
sn:d // t:sn:ad	to lean against
srh // sr:h	to tend sheep
stahl: // stahl:a	to deserve
stha // t:stha	to be shy
sw (i/u) // s:	to drink
sʔ // s:ar	to buy
s:a	from here
s:andala(f) / s:andalat	sandal
s:ar // s:ar	to mix, to be mixed
s:ara(f) / s:wayʕ	watch
s:flil:y // s:flil:iy	to shine
s:hur (m)	last meal before daybreak during the month of
s:id: // s:idid	to get light
s:ig:	
s:ind // s:inad	to burn (trans.)
s:lant (f)	peace
s:lil // s:lila	to wash, to rinse
s:lilw // s:liliw	to utter trilling sounds as manifestations of joy by Arab or Berber women

s:l:t(ə) / s:l:at	big basket
s:mrara // s:mrara	to pour tea into the cups and back into the pot
s:ṃta (f) / s:ṃati	belt
s:nsr // s:nsar	to snatch
s:rs // s:rus	to put down
s:rut // s:rwat	to thresh
s:uf: // s:uf:u	to blow
s:um:r // s:um:ur	to be sitting in the sun
s:urf // s:uruf	to step
s:usm // s:usum	to stop talking
s:žrt(ə) / s:žṛ ~ s:žuṛ	tree
s:ɣd // s:ɣad	to listen
s:ɣuy: // s:ɣuy:u	to shout, to scream

- s -

ṣalḥ // t:ṣalah	to surrender - this refers to the date a certain tribe surrendered, or in other words, showed acceptance of French occupation; begin- ning of French Protectorate 1912.
ṣarḥ // t:ṣaraf	to spend money
ṣbahlxiṛ	good morning
ṣbh // t:ṣbih	to be pretty
ṣb:h // t:ṣb:ah	to leave early, to see the first thing in the morning
ṣd:q // t:ṣd:aq	to give alms
ṣh: // t:ṣ:ha	to be healthy
ṣitr // t:ṣitar	to dominate

sḷtn // t:sḷtan	to be nominated king
sm:ḍ // t:smid	to be cold
srḍ // sr:ḍ	to swallow
s:f: (m) / laṣfuf	row
s:ifd // s:afad	to send
s:inaʿa	industry

- š -

šayḍ // t:šayaḍ	to be spare
šd: // t:šd:a	to tie
šḍu // šṭ:u	to smell
šhṛ (m) / lašhuṛ	month
šl // k:a:l	to spend the day
šlqm // t:š;qam	to eat up
šl:l // t:šl:a:l	to rinse
šnf // šn:f	to grill
šrz // šr:z	to plow
šr:if (m) / š:ṛfa	descendants of Mohamed the prophet
štab // t:štab	to write; here: to have handy
štha // t:štha	to desire
šṭ:h // t:šṭ:aḥ	to dance
šud:a // t:šud:a	to do the cooking and all the matters concerning the cooking
-šun (mp)	you; D.O.
-šunt (fp)	you; D.O.
šγl // šγ:l	to occupy, to be busy

š:abab (m)	a youth
š:aš(ə)/ š:išan	turban
š:iṭan(ə)/ š:waṭn	satan
š:əb (m)	people (of a country)
š:əriy:a (f)	thin spaghetti
š:γl (m)	occupation

- t -

tabdriy:t(ə)/ tibd riyin	Berber vest
tabrat:(ə)/ tibratin	letter
tabr // t:abar	to follow
tadist(ə)/ tidusin	stomach, tummy
tadlwin (fp)	chopped wheat plants
tadunt (f)	animal fat
tadžalt(ə)/ tadžalin	widow, divorcee
taḍuft (f)	wool
tafl:aḥt (f)	agriculture
taftilt (f) / tiftilin	wick
tafuyt (f)	sun
taf:a (f) / taf:iwin	heap of grain
tahb:iyt (f) / tihb:iyin	plate
tahlast / tihlasin	rug
tahrirt (f)	Moroccan soup
tahṛ:at: (f)	agriculture
tahz:ant (f) / tihz:amin	belt
tal:waḥt / t:al:wahin	writing board
tama	near, by

tamd:it (f)	evening
taml:alt (f) / timl:alin	egg
tamn̄it (f)	riding
tams:umant (f)	effort to convince, piece of advice
tams:at: / timsq̄in	thigh
tamt:uṭ: (f) / tiṣy:alin	woman
tamurt / timizar	country, earth
tamzyida / timzyidawin	mosque
tamṛa (f) / timṛiwin	wedding
tam:ast (f)	the middle
tandut:(t)/ tinuda	platter made of
taqb:ut:(t)/ tiqb:a	djellaba
taqnbuṣt (f) / tiqnbuṣin	"cap of the lark"
taq:nušt (f) / tiq:nušin	pot
taṛ:bṣt (f) / taṛ:bṣin	box (sugar, tea)
taṛ:sast (f) / taṛ:sasin	bullet
tasb:ayt: (f) / tisb:aydin	shoe
tasirt (f) / tisira	mill
tašḍift (f) / tišḍifin	rug
tašmṣiyt (f) / tišmṣiyin	candle
tašnift (f) / tišnifin	loaf
tašt:ant (f) / tišt:anin	scarf
tašurt (f) / tišurin	ball
tawla (f)	fever
taw:urt (f) / tiw:ura	door
taxant (f) / tixamin	tent, house
tazlmm:uyt (f) / tizlmm:a	lizard

tazlut: (f) / tizla	braid
tazyawt (f) / tizyawin	basket
tazult (f)	antimony, kohl
tažmart / tiyal:in	mare
tažrst (f)	winter
tažrurt (f)	first day of the wedding
taɣnžayt (f) / tiɣnžayin	spoon
tbarda / tibardiwin	pack saddle
td:in (f)	the one which
tfant (f) / tifanin	clay tray for baking bread
thanut: / tihuna	shop
thažit: (f) / tihiža	story, riddle
tidin (f)	ones which
tili (f)	shadow
timat:in (fp)	placenta
timɔut (f) / timɔwin	a piece of the loom
timrira (fp)	vomiting
tims:i (f)	fever
tini (fs)	date
tinin: (fp)	those
tinu (fp)	these ones
tinzrt (f) / tinzar	nostril (s), nose (p)
tin: (f)	that one
tira (fp)	writing
tisdnan (p)	women
tisi (f)	couch
tit: (f) / al:n	eye

tiwa (f)	the back
tizdnt (f)	kind of plant
tizizut (f)	greenness
tiymst (f) / tiymas	tooth
tliliwt (f) / tililiwin	trilling sounds of joy, yulyulation
tmart (f) / timira	beard
tqriban (< Arabic)	almost
tnayn	two
tqunbət (f) / tiqunbəin	lark
trit (fs)	saddle
tržu (f)	ogress
tσα (f)	liver
tsarut: (f) / tisura	needle
tsary:a (f) / tsary:at	kind of rifle
tsili (fs)	horseshoe
tsiwant (f)	kite (animal)
tš (i/u) // t:t:	to eat
tšar // 't:šar	to be dirty, to make dirty
tšašiyt (f) / tišuš:ay ~ tišašyin	cap
tu (f)	this one
tuža (f)	grass
txabit (f) / tixabyin	big jug
tɣat: (f) / tiɣt:n	she goat
t:af	in order that
t:burida (f)	fantasia
t:d // t:t:d	to suckle
t:hmiṛa (f)	paprika
t:iṛ (m) / t:yur	bird



t:mš:a // t:mš:a	to go, to function well
t:nhl:a // t:nhl:a	to take care of
t:rik:u (m) / tirik:uyat	sweater
t:risinti (m)	electricity
t:rtr // t:trtur	to boil
t:u // t:t:u	to forget
t:ux	used to
t:ɛd:a // t:ɛd:a	to attack

- t -

ṭs // ḍs:	to laugh
ṭ:aksi(t) / ṭ:aksiat	taxi
ṭ:arix (m)	history
ṭ:ažin (m) / ṭ:wažn	stew
ṭ:f // ṭ:ṭ:f	to catch, to hold under one's authority
ṭ:ṛf	end (side)
ṭ:umobil ~ ṭ:unubil / ṭ:umobilat	car

- u -

udin (m)	the one which
udm (m) / udmawn	face
uda // uṭ:a	to fall
ug:už (m) / ug:užn	dam
ul (m) / ulawn	heart
uləd	even

ul:i	negative prefix used with VH
uma	whereas
urtu (m) / urtan	orchard
uṣ:a // t:uṣ:a	to guard against, to advise
uš // tšit:š	to give
uxlas:	anyway

- w -

wahwa	long ago
war	without
wax:a	all right
wig:ilin ?	whose ?
win: (m)	that one
wq:r // t:wq:ar	to respect
wu (m)	this one
w:t // tšat	to hit

- x -

x	on
xas	just, only
xḍ // t:xḍaḍ	to be subject, to follow
xla // xl:a	to ruin
xlf // xl:f	to grow up again
xmž // t:xmiž	to stink
xm:m // t:xm:am	to think
xrṽḍ // t:xrṽaḍ	to stir

xr:f // t:xr:af	to harvest fall crops
xsr // xs:r	to be put out of order
xsy // xs:y	to be put out (a fire)
xwas:	during the day
xyid	during the night
xy:r // t:xy:ar	to choose
x:as:	special
x:išt:	an expression meaning "hit him where it hurts"

- y -

ya	already
yis / iysan	horse
yn:ayr	January
yur / iyurn	crescent

- z -

zayd	to be born
zdat	before, in front of
zd // z:ad	to grind
zg:a	when
zhr // zh:r	to roar
zid // t:izid	to be sweet (food or drink)
ziš	early
zix	whereas
zl:ə // t:zl:ar	to sprinkle, to scatter

zman ( = wahwa)	long ago
zmr // zm:r	to be able to
zwa // zg:a	to be dry, to dry
zwar // zg:ar	to be first
zw:a // t:zwaq:	to ornament
zyrt // t:zirit	to be tall
zɤma	let us say, i.e. ...
zɣa // zq:a	to bleat
z:awit	religious center
z:až	glass
z:man	time
z:uz:r // z:uz:ur	to winnow
z:waq	designs
z:yarit	donations

- z -

ẓd // ẓt:	to weave
ẓr // ẓ:ar	to see
zum: // tzum:	to fast
ẓ:y // t:ẓ:y	to milk

- ž -

žar	between
žbd // žb:d	to pull out
žmr // žm:r	to hunt
žmɤ // žm:ɤ	to assemble, to keep, to be together
žn' // džan	to sleep

žni // žn:i	to sew
žr // g:ar	to throw
žra // žr:a	to happen
žr:b // t:žr:ab	to experience
ž:wa (m) / itž:wa	envelope

- 8 -

ʕard // t:ʕarad	to meet with
ʕayr // t:ʕayar	to insult
ʕf:a // t:ʕfa	to dislike
ʕid // t:ʕid	to return, to go back
ʕinl:uh	name of a town
ʕiš // t:ʕiš	to live
ʕlf // ʕl:f	to feed (especially animals)
ʕl:m // t:ʕl:am	to teach, to donate (here)
ʕma // t:i:ma	to blind
ʕmru ~ ʕmri	never
ʕna // t:i:na	to undergo
ʕnq // ʕn:q	to get tired
ʕrqab // t:ʕrqab	to celebrate engagement
ʕš:r // t:ʕš:ar	to give tithe
ʕy:d // t:ʕy:ad	to celebrate the feast
ʕžb // t:i:žib	to please

- 9 -

ya	future particle occurring after relative pronouns, question words and conjunctions
----	--

γli // γl:i

to set (sun), to ascend  
(descend)

γmi // γm:i

to grow (grass, trees)



